

Vanuatu National Building Code

(Under the Vanuatu Building Act 2013 as amended 2025)

Approved by the Minister under Order # X of 2025)

2025 Edition



First Draft for Stakeholder Consultation Control Document Revisions

(Note – Table to be removed from the published document upon final approval and Minister's sign off)

Revision	Status - Action	Date	Reviewed by:
DRAFT	Draft issued for PRIF to review	21 Feb 2025	PRIF
DRAFT 2	Draft issued to Vanuatu Building Code Technical Working Group. Integrated comments from PRIF, WASH Specialist, Fire Specialist, and Structural Specialist. Fixed formatting. [NOTE: Still requires graphic design, editing, and copy editing]	17 Mar 2025	RG & MG
	Draft for Stakeholder Consultation. No revisions from Draft 2	15 Apr 2025	

Contents

PREFACE

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

INTRODUCTION

PART 1 – GENERAL PROVISIONS & STRUCTURE FOR ALL BUILDINGS (CLASS 1 to CLASS 10)

SECTION A - GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A1 Interpreting the VNBC
 - A2 Compliance with the VNBC
 - A3 Definitions, Referenced Documents & Standards
 - A4 Acceptance of Design and Construction
 - A5 Classification of Buildings & Structures
 - A6 United Buildings
 - A7 Building Importance Level
 - A8 UXO Survey and Disposal
 - A9 Prevention and Control of Asbestos
 - A10 Health and Safety at Work
- Specifications

SECTION B - STRUCTURE

Performance Requirements

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

- B1 Structure
- B2 Demolition
- B3 Foundation and Ground Conditions
- B4 Durability

PART 2 – DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 & CLASS 10)

SECTION DC - FIRE RESISTANCE

Performance Requirements

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability

SECTION DD - ACCESS AND EGRESS

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Performance Requirements
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DD1 Construction of Exits
- DD2 Access for people with Disabilities

SECTION DE - ELECTRICITY

Performance Requirements
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DE1 Electricity Safety
- DE2 Amenity

SECTION DF - HEALTH AND AMENITY

Performance Requirements
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

- DF1 Damp and Weatherproofing
- DF2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities
- DF3 Room Sizes and Heights
- DF4 Light and Ventilation
- DF5 Water Supply Plumbing
- DF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage
- DF7 Sanitary Disposal
- DF8 Roof Drainage
- DF9 Rainwater Storage

SECTION DG - ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Performance Requirements
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

- DG1 Minor Structural and Components
- DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

PART 3 – PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO CLASS 9)

SECTION NC - FIRE RESISTANCE

Performance Requirements
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

- NC1 Fire Resistance and Stability
- NC2 Compartmentation and Separation
- NC3 Protection of Openings

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Specifications

SECTION ND - ACCESS AND EGRESS

Performance Requirements

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

ND1 Provision for Escape

ND2 Construction of Exits

ND3 Access for People with Disabilities

SECTION NE - SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

Performance Requirements

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

NE1 Fire Fighting Equipment

NE2 Smoke Control

NE3 Lift Installations

NE4 Emergency Lighting, Exit Signs & Warning System

NE5 Inspection, Test & Maintenance of Safety installations

NE6 Electrical Safety

Specifications

SECTION NF - HEALTH AND AMENITY

Performance Requirements

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

NF1 Damp and Weatherproofing

NF2 Sanitary and Other Facilities

NF3 Room Sizes

NF4 Light and Ventilation

NF5 Water Supply Plumbing

NF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage

NF7 Sanitary Disposal

NF8 Roof Drainage

Specifications

SECTION NG - ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Performance Requirements

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision

NG1 Minor Structures and Components

NG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

NG3 Atrium Construction

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PREFACE

2025 Version

The National Building Code is empowered by the *Building Act 2013 – as amended 2025*.

A building permit is required for all construction work unless specifically exempted by the Building Regulations 2025. Building work that are exempt from a building permit must still comply with the National Building Code and other legislative requirements.

Requirements of this **National Building Code** apply to all building structures OTHER THAN:

- Environmental compliance;
- Health and Safety;
- Land development controls in physical planning areas;
- Foreshore Development;
- Municipal / Council bylaws;

and any other structures specifically exempted under the Building Act 2013 regulations.

In addition to this Code, you should be aware of other laws, specifications and guidelines administered by the Ministry of Infrastructure and Public Utilities, the Ministry of the Internal Affairs and other agencies. Your attention is drawn in particular to the following issues:

- Environmental compliance;
- Health and safety;
- Land development controls in physical planning areas.

The National Building Code is freely available via the Vanuatu Government - Ministry of Infrastructure and Public Utilities - Public Works department - website:

<https://pwd.gov.vu/?view=article&id=76&catid=18>



© Ministry of Infrastructure and Public Utilities

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Development of the 'National Building Code – 2025 Edition' was carried out under the auspices of the Vanuatu Government, specifically the Department of Urban Affairs and Planning (DUAP) of the Ministry of Internal Affairs (MoIA) and the Public Works Department (PWD) of Ministry of Infrastructure Public Utilities (MIPU) as instructed by Mr. Leith Varemaito, Director General of the MoIA and Mr. Johson Binaru Johnson lauma Director General of MIPU.

This version of the National Building Code builds upon the original Code published in 1990 and revised in 2000 and incorporates appropriate advances in practice and knowledge. Accordingly, the Government of Vanuatu acknowledges the excellent work of the many stakeholders (refer pages iv to vii in the 2000 edition) who contributed to the creation of the original 1990 version and 2000 revision.

The Ministry wishes to gratefully acknowledge the stakeholders who contributed to the drafting of this document. They include numerous government ministries and agencies led by the Department of Urban Affairs and Planning (DUAP) and the Public Works Department (PWD), non-government organisations, including organisations representing people with disabilities, development partners, state-owned enterprises, the Vanuatu Engineers Association and private sector building industry professionals.

A thorough, inclusive consultation process was carried out during the second half of 2024 and first half of 2025 including the uploading of the draft VNBC 2025 onto the Ministry of Infrastructure Public Utilities website for 4 weeks and a public request for commentary and submissions.

The Vanuatu Government wishes to express sincere appreciation and thanks to all contributing stakeholders for their participation and valuable contributions.

The Vanuatu Government is grateful to the Pacific Region Infrastructure Facility (PRIF) for supporting this project.

Tankyu tumas

Hon. xxxx

Minister for Infrastructure Development and Public Utilities



Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

INTRODUCTION

About this Code

The overall objective of the Code is to ensure that acceptable standards of structural sufficiency, fire safety, health and amenity, are maintained for the benefit of the community now and in the future.

The requirements included in this Code are intended to extend no further than is necessary in the public interest, to be cost-effective, not needlessly onerous in their application, and easily understood.

Format of the Code

The 2025 code format and numbering remain the same as the original 1990 code and 2000 update. This format and numbering replicate the National Construction Code of Australia and most other Pacific Island National Building Codes. It allows for Construction practitioners from Australia and other Pacific Island Countries to easily interpret the code and for Ni-Vanuatu construction practitioners to easily understand building codes in Australia and other Pacific Island Countries when working or studying outside Vanuatu (which many do). This strategy also supports the harmonization of the construction industry across the Pacific and encourages collaboration between Pacific Island Country construction practitioners.

The National Building Code is divided into **3 Parts**:

PART 1: GENERAL PROVISIONS AND STRUCTURE FOR ALL BUILDINGS

Covers Sections A and B

PART 2: CLASS 1 AND 10 DWELLINGS AND OUTBUILDINGS

Covers Single and Small Dwelling Buildings & Non-habitable outbuildings or structures,
Refer to Sections DC, DD, DE, DF, and DG

PART 3: CLASS 2 TO 9 PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP BUILDINGS

Covers Public Buildings and Group Dwellings
Refer to Sections NC, ND, NE, NF, and NG

What is in the Code?

The Code sets down the Performance Requirements and corresponding Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions which apply to the construction of buildings for all classes of occupancy.

A building code cannot cover every issue concerned with the design and construction of buildings. In the case of innovative, complex or unusually hazardous building proposals, or other building work beyond the scope of the Code, legislation may provide for other suitable action.

The Code covers those aspects of buildings that are regulated under the Building Act such as structure, fire resistance, access and egress, fire-fighting equipment, mechanical ventilation, lift installations, and some aspects of health and amenity.

Layout of the Code

The numbering of Sections and Parts has been made on an alpha-numeric system for ease of reference. It provides flexibility to accommodate future additions or deletions, and the future consolidation of building regulations presently contained in other legislation, without undue disruption to the layout.

Other than for common provisions contained in Sections A and B, the Code is divided into two areas - one which covers Class 1 and 10 buildings, and the other which covers all other Classes of buildings.

Performance Requirements

These are described in terms which would allow considerable scope for innovation and the development of new materials and methods of construction. The Requirements are in some cases separated into objectives and the required performance.

Objectives are broad statements of intent and are included at the beginning of each Section to identify the objectives that the provisions of the Section are intended to achieve. They are the basic concepts which apply generally to all buildings and structures.

Required Performance identifies the means by which the objectives can be achieved and are expressed in performance terms. Accreditation certificates, test reports, detailed calculations or other documentary evidence may be used as evidence that a particular material, design or construction method meets the performance requirements of this Code.

Deemed-to-satisfy Provisions

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions have been drafted in sufficiently general terms to allow some flexibility without increasing the need to use administrative discretion. In the absence of national Standards for design, construction and materials, the Standards produced by the Standards Association of Australia and New Zealand have been called up. Detailed specifications have been given where necessary.

The New Zealand Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade have made Zealand and joint New Zealand/Australian standards referenced in the Vanuatu National Building Code freely available to Vanuatu regulatory authorities.

The difference between building codes and building standards

The **Vanuatu National Building Code** sets the minimum requirements for construction and design to protect public safety, health, and welfare.

The **building standards** referenced in the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions provide detailed technical guidelines to support building codes, including:

- Ensuring consistency, quality, and reliability of materials, products, and practices.
- Creating a common language in the industry for a given process.
- Documenting the requirements for products, practices, methods, or operations.

The **Vanuatu National Building Code** is enforced by law, while building standards are legally enforceable only if they are expressly referenced in legislation or legislative instruments such as the Code.

In summary, the key difference between the building code and the building standards referenced in the deemed-to-satisfy provisions are:

- **Codes** tell you what needs to be done.
 - **Standards** give specifics on how to meet code requirements.
 - **Codes** establish minimum standards for construction.
 - **Standards** provide expert, detailed procedures for specialized items' construction, materials, manufacture, testing, or installation instructions.
-

-
- **Standards** serve as a common language for defining quality and often establish performance and safety criteria

Administrative Arrangements

This Code has been brought into effect by enabling building control legislation which prescribes or "calls up" the technical requirements which have to be satisfied in order to gain approval.

The enabling legislation consists of an Act of Parliament and Regulations made under the Act. It empowers the executive government (national, municipal and local) to regulate aspects of the building process and contains the necessary administrative provisions for the work of the Approval Authority. The legislation also imposes responsibilities on the authorities and other persons or bodies, and describes particular administrative procedures.

The following administrative matters are covered in the Building Act or Building Regulations:

- Plan submission and approval procedures.
- Issue of building permits.
- Inspections during and after construction and provision of evidentiary certificates.
- Issue of certificates of occupancy or compliance.
- Accreditation or approval of materials or components.
- Review and enforcement of standards.
- Issue of unfit to occupy notices.
- Fees and charges.

Administrative discretion

The Code is drafted to provide certainty for owners and builders and to minimise the need for the Approval Authority to make discretionary decisions. However, in many cases it is not possible to draft a provision in purely technical terms, and an informed judgement is required on the standard which would be suitable in particular circumstances.

Accordingly, in a number of clauses, the Code requires a particular material or construction method to be "suitable", meaning fit in all relevant respects for its intended purpose and use.

The Approval Authority responsible for the enforcement of building controls has the right to question "suitability." Differences of opinion are open to appeal.

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PART

1



GENERAL PROVISIONS & STRUCTURE FOR ALL BUILDINGS (CLASS 1 TO CLASS 10)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Section

A



GENERAL PROVISIONS

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO ALL BUILDINGS
(CLASS 1 TO CLASS 10)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

A1 Interpreting the Vanuatu Building Code (VNBC)	3
A1.1 Part 1: General Provisions and Structure for All Buildings	3
A1.2 Part 2: Class 1 and 10.....	3
A1.3 Part 3: Class 2 to 9	3
A1.4 Minor Repairs and Exempt Structures	3
A1.6 Safety and Protection of Users and the Public.....	3
A1.7 Interpretation	4
A2 Compliance with the VNBC	4
A2.1 National Compliance	4
A2.2 Compliance.....	4
A2.3 Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution	4
A2.4 Performance Solution	5
A2.5 A Combination of Solutions.....	5
A3 Definitions, Referenced Documents & Standards	5
A3.1 Definitions.....	5
A3.2 Referenced Documents	14
A3.3 Referenced Standards, Etc.....	15
A3.4 Differences Between Referenced Documents and this Code	15
A3.5 Mandatory Provisions.....	15
A3.6 Adoption of Referenced Documents	15
A4 Acceptance of Design and Construction	15
A4.1 Suitability	15
A4.2 Evidence of Suitability.....	16
A4.3 Fire Hazard Properties.....	16
A4.4 Material Durability	16
A4.5 Use of Native Timber.....	17
A4.6 Documentation	17
A5 Classification of Buildings & Structures	17
A5.1 Principles of Classification.....	17
A5.2 Building Classifications.....	17
Class 1 Buildings	18
Class 2 Buildings	18

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Class 3 Buildings	18
Class 4 Part of a building	18
Class 5 Buildings	18
Class 6 Buildings	19
Class 7 Buildings	19
Class 8 Buildings	19
Class 9 Buildings	19
Class 10 Buildings.....	19
Mixed use buildings.....	20
A5.3 Multiple Building Classifications	20
A6 United Buildings.....	20
A6.1 United Buildings	20
A6.2 Alterations in a United Building.....	20
A7 Building Importance Level	21
A7.1 Building Importance Level.....	21
A7.2 Building Design Life.....	23
A8 UXO Survey and Disposal.....	24
A8.1 UXO Definitions	24
A8.2 UXO Risk Assessment, Survey Type, and Clearance	24
A9 Prevention and Control of Asbestos	24
A9.1 Asbestos Definitions	24
A9.2 Prohibition and Prevention of Asbestos.....	25
A9.3 Removal and Disposal of Asbestos Containing Materials.....	25
A10 Health and Safety at Work.....	25

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATION A3.3.1 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

SPECIFICATION A4.3.1 : FIRE-RESISTANCE OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

SPECIFICATION A4.3.2 : EARLY FIRE HAZARD TEST FOR ASSEMBLIES

A1 Interpreting the VNBC

This section explains how the Vanuatu National Building Code (VNBC) must be interpreted and applied; the scope of each VNBC part; and how specific terms are used to understand the technical and legal requirements of the VNBC.

A1.1 Part 1: General Provisions and Structure for All Buildings

The VNBC Part 1 contains the general provisions and mandatory requirements for all construction work on buildings and facilities.

- (1) The VNBC applies to construction work on buildings and facilities in accordance with the Act.
- (2) The VNBC does not apply to existing buildings and structures unless the following is applicable:
 - a. Existing buildings and structures that are designated as Importance Level 4 shall be assessed and upgraded to the degree necessary to comply with all VNBC Performance Requirements by the year 2035.
 - b. Existing buildings and structures shall comply with all VNBC Performance Requirements when one or more of the following occurs:
 - i. Change in Building Class.
 - ii. Change in Importance Level.
 - iii. *Significant alteration* of the structure (refer A4.1 Definitions to determine what a significant alteration comprises).

A1.2 Part 2: Class 1 and Class 10

The VNBC Part 2 contains the requirements for

- a) All buildings in Building Class 1 and Class 10a; and
- b) Certain structures in Building Class 10b.

A1.3 Part 3: Class 2 to Class 9

The VNBC Part 3 contains the requirements for

- a) All Building Class 2 to Class 9; and
- b) Certain structures in Building Class 10b.

A1.4 Minor Repairs and Exempt Structures

This **National Building Code does NOT cover** minor repairs and excluded structures as defined below and exempt structures as defined in the building regulations under the Vanuatu Building Act.

Minor repairs and excluded structures include:

- Minor repairs as defined under A4.1 - Definitions
- Horizontal infrastructure – including sea walls, bridges, wharves, jetties and pipework infrastructure. Guidance on the design of these types of structure are covered by other Ministry of Infrastructure and Public Utilities Standards, Specifications and Guidelines and other Government of Vanuatu ministries and jurisdictions:
- Stand-alone plant and machinery systems and their supporting structures if they are bespoke and supplied with the machinery or plant.
- A mast, pole or radio or television aerial that does not exceed 6 metres in height.
- Any other exclusions designated by the Approval Authority

A1.5 Safety and Protection of Users and the Public

Regardless of whether a building or structure is within the Scope of the National Building Code, under clause A1.1, or is considered a minor repair or exempt structure, under clause A1.4, all buildings and structures constructed in Vanuatu shall adhere to the principles of the National Building Code – namely that they be designed, constructed, maintained, altered, repaired, and/or demolished in such a manner as to ensure the safety, health, and protection of users and the public and prevent injury and death.

A1.6 Interpretation

- (1) The following components of the VNBC are mandatory for all buildings and structures:
 - a. Section A; and
 - b. Performance requirements stated at the beginning of all other Sections.
- (2) The following components of the VNBC are non-mandatory and informative elements:
 - a. "Preface" information;
 - b. "Acknowledgments" information; and
 - c. "Introduction" information.
- (3) Terms in italics must be interpreted in accordance with definitions provided in A3.1, unless otherwise noted, and any additional definitions in national and local laws.
- (4) To "the degree necessary" means that consideration of all criteria in the Performance Requirement will determine the outcome appropriate to the circumstances; and that in certain cases it may not be necessary to incorporate specific measures.
- (5) Figures are for illustrative purposes and should not be interpreted as containing all required design information.

A2 Compliance with the VNBC

This section explains the various compliance pathways within the VNBC and the appropriate steps that must be taken to demonstrate compliance with the VNBC.

A2.1 National Compliance

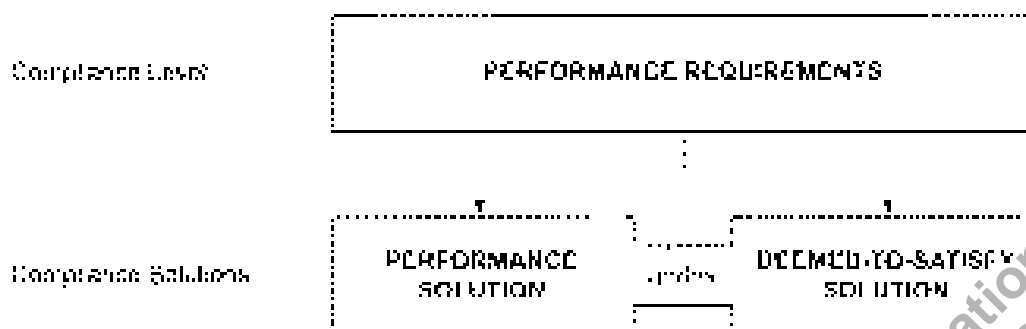
Compliance with the VNBC is required for all buildings and structures in The Republic of Vanuatu.

Other national legislation and regulations that are more stringent than the VNBC shall be used provided that all Performance Requirements listed in the VNBC are complied with or exceeded.

A2.2 Compliance

Compliance with the VNBC is achieved by complying with the General Provisions of the VNBC and the Performance Requirements.

Performance Requirements are satisfied through a Performance Solution, a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution, or a combination of both.



A2.3 Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution

A Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution that complies with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions is deemed to have met the Performance Requirements.

Deemed-to-Satisfy Assessment Methods to demonstrate compliance of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision include one or more of the following:

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Evidence of Suitability in accordance with Part A4.
- Expert Judgement.

A2.4 Performance Solution

- (1) A Performance Solution must demonstrate compliance with all relevant Performance Requirements; OR the solution must be at least equivalent to the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.
- (2) Performance Solution Assessment Methods to demonstrate compliance with the relevant Performance Requirements include one or a combination of the following:
 - a. Comparison with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.
 - b. Evidence of Suitability in accordance with Part A4.
 - c. Expert Judgement.
 - d. Verification Methods provided in the VNBC.
 - e. Verification Methods, accepted by the authority.
- (3) A Performance Solution must clearly identify which Performance Requirement(s) the solution demonstrates compliance with AND if there are any other Performance Requirement(s) that are relevant or are affected by the Performance Solution.
- (4) When a Performance Solution is proposed, the following steps must be taken:
 - a. Prepare a performance-based design brief in consultation with stakeholders.
 - b. Prepare a report that presents the assessment methods, acceptance criteria, analysis, results, details of conditions or limitations, and confirmation that Performance Requirement has been met.

A2.5 A Combination of Solutions

Compliance with Performance Requirements can be achieved using a combination of Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions and Performance Solutions in accordance with the assessment methods listed in Section A2.3 and A2.4.

A3 Definitions, Referenced Documents & Standards

A3.1 Definitions

Some of the words and phrases used in the Code have specific defined meanings. Wherever such meaning is intended the words and phrases are printed in *italics*. The defined meanings are:

Accessible - having features to enable use by people with a disability.

Accessway - a continuous accessible path of travel to, into or within a building.

Alteration, in relation to a building, includes an addition or extension to a building.

Approval Authority - Vanuatu Government Ministry of Infrastructure and Public Utilities (MI&PU), or other body approved by the Minister MI&PU as designated in the National Building Act 2013 as amended 2025 and as relating to the requirements of this code.

Approved Person – An engineer or architect approved by the Vanuatu Government Ministry of Infrastructure and Public Utilities to certify specific works specified in the VNBC.

Amenity - an attribute which contributes to the health, physical independence, comfort and well-being of people.

Assembly building - a building where people may assemble for –

- civic, theatrical, social, political or religious purposes;
- educational purposes in a school, early childhood centre, preschool, or the like;
- entertainment, recreational or sporting purposes; or
- transit purposes.

Atrium - a space within a building that connects 2 or more *storeys*, and –

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

- is wholly or substantially enclosed at the top by a floor or roof (including a glazed roof structure); and
- includes any adjacent part of the building not separated by bounding construction; but
- does not include a stairwell, rampwell or the space within a *shaft*.

Automatic - applied to a fire door, smoke door, fire shutter, smoke and-heat vent, alarm system or the like, means designed to operate when activated by a heat, smoke or fire sensing device.

Baluster – a vertical support for a handrail.

Building - a 'permanent' or 'semi-permanent' or 'mixed traditional-commercial material' building or structure of any kind and includes a temporary building or structure or part of a building or structure but excludes 'traditional' structures.

Building Element - primary structural frame members, load-bearing walls, common and interior walls, fire walls, floor and/or roof construction including secondary members, exit construction, foundations, and windows.

Building Permit - a document issued by the Government of Vanuatu allowing the construction, alteration or demolition of a building, facility, siteworks, site servicing and/or site to proceed according to conditions of the building permit.

Building Regulations - a legally binding set of requirements issued by the Government of Vanuatu Islands the Vanuatu Building Act 2013 as amended 2025 setting out details of the development process including procedures, exemptions, fees and charges and infringement penalties.

Building work – means work of a structural nature to a building, including excavations for foundations, sanitary installations or plumbing.

Certificate of Accreditation - a certificate of acceptable to the Approval Authority stating that the properties and performance of a building material or method of construction or design fulfil specific requirements of this Code.

Certificate of Compliance - a certificate acceptable to the Approval Authority stating that the materials, methodology of construction and workmanship of a completed building, building element or design fulfil specific requirements of this Code.

Charged Dry Riser Main System - one or more *riser mains* in a building complete with all *required* fittings, not permanently connected to a *fire main*. Instead of leaving the system dry, it is charged with water from any convenient domestic supply in order to make it self-monitoring against inadvertently left open *hydrant* valves and leakage.

Cladding - exterior surface of a building attached to external walls, the roof, or any other exterior surface.

Combustible –

- applied to a material – means *combustible* under AS1530.1
- applied to construction or part of a building – means constructed wholly or in part of *combustible* materials.

(See definition of *non-combustible*)

Common Wall a wall that is common to adjoining buildings.

Curtain Wall a *non-loadbearing external wall* that is not a *panel wall*.

Damp-proof Course (DPC) - a continuous layer of impervious material placed in a masonry wall or pier, or between a wall or pier and a floor, to prevent the upward or downward migration of water.

Dead Load - the weight assigned to the building elements of a building, storey excluding people or goods.

Deck - an open platform projecting from an external wall of a building and supported by framing and may be open underneath or partially or fully enclosed.

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision - a provision that is deemed to satisfy the Performance Requirements.

Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution - a method of satisfying the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Design Flood Level (DFL) - hypothetical estimation of the height (elevation) above ground level that would be inundated by flooding as a result of storm surge or rainfall, as determined by an approval authority and/or the Government of Vanuatu.

Design Scenario - the specific scenario of which the sequence of events is quantified, and a fire safety engineering analysis is conducted against.

Design Wind Speed - the design gust wind speed for the area where the building is located, calculated in accordance with AS/NZS 1170.2.

Desludge/Desludging - removal of accumulated sludge and scum from the septic.

Drainage Ditch - an open channel lower in elevation than the surrounding land intended to collect and convey stormwater on private or public property.

Drain - a line of pipes to carry *sewage* or *trade waste*, located within the property boundary, laid above or below ground, and includes all fittings and equipment such as inspection openings, traps and gullies.

- It is a branch *drain* if it is intended to receive the discharge from fixture discharge pipes. Branch *drains* join a main *drain*.
- The main *drain* collects the *waste water* from branch *drains* and/or from fixture discharge pipes and conveys them to the *sewer*.

Durability - the safe performance of a building, facility or site for the designed life expectancy assuming the design and a regular schedule of maintenance activities is conducive with site conditions, and that does not result in unforeseen cost for maintenance and repair

Early Childhood Centre - a preschool, kindergarten or child-minding centre.

Effective height - the height to the floor of the topmost *storey* (excluding the topmost *storey* if it contains only heating, ventilating, lift or other equipment, water tanks or similar service units) from the floor or open *space*. The road or open *space* must be capable of providing unobstructed access to emergency vehicles.

The *effective height* of a stepped or terraced building is the maximum *effective height* of any segment of the building.

Exit- Any, or any combination of the following if they provide egress to a road or *open space*:

- An internal or external stairway.
- A ramp complying with Section ND.
- A fire-isolated passageway.
- A doorway opening to a road or *open space*.
- A horizontal exit or a fire-isolated passageway leading to a horizontal exit
- External Wall an outer wall of a building which is not a *common wall*.

Fire Brigade Booster Connection - a connecting device enabling the fire brigade to pressurize or pump water into a *riser main* or other systems.

Fire Compartment - a part of a building which is separated from the remainder in accordance with this Code to resist the spread of fire and smoke.

Fire-isolated Passageway - a corridor, hallway or the like, of *fire-resisting* construction, which provides egress to or from a *fire-isolated stairway* or *fire-isolated ramp* to a road or *open space*.

Fire-isolated Ramp - a ramp within a *fire-resisting* enclosure which provides egress from a *storey*.

Fire-isolated Stairway - a stairway within a *fire-resisting shaft* and includes the floor and roof or top enclosing structure.

Fire Main - a water supply service pipe located outside a building to supply water at adequate pressures and rates of flow for fire fighting purposes. The *fire main* must be-

- part of a public supply system kept permanently charged with water; or
- privately provided in which case it must either be permanently charged with water from a reliable supply or be provided with adequate on *site* storage and fire pumps.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Fire-protective Covering - inert material applied in such a manner that it protects other materials or building elements from the damaging effects of fire. Acceptable materials are: -

- 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard;
- 12 mm cellulose fibre reinforced sheeting;
- 12 mm mesh-reinforced fibrous plaster in which the mesh is 13 mm x 13 mm x 0.7 mm welded wire located not more than 6 mm from the exposed face; or
- other material not less fire-protective than 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard, fixed in accordance with the normal trade practice for a *fire-protective covering*.

Fire-resistance Level - (FRL) the grading periods in minutes determined in accordance with Specification A5.3, for –

- structural adequacy;
- integrity; and
- insulation,

and expressed in that order.

Fire-resisting - applied to a *structural member* or other part of a building, means having the FRL *required* for that *structural member* or other part.

Fire-resisting Construction - one of the Types of construction referred to in Part NC1

Fire-separated Section - a part of a building which is separated from the remainder by *fire walls* in accordance with Part NC2 and thereby regarded as a separate building.

Fire-source Feature –

- the far boundary of a road adjoining the allotment;
- a side or rear boundary of the allotment; or
- an *external wall* of another building on the allotment which is not of Class 10.

Fire Wall - a wall that divides a *storey* or building to resist the spread of fire and smoke and has the FRL *required* under Specification NC1.1.

Fixture Unit - a unit of measure based on the rate of discharge, time of operation and frequency and use of a sanitary fixture, that denotes the hydraulic load contributed by that fixture to the sanitary plumbing system.

Flammability Index - the index number determined under AS1530.2.

Flight - the part of a stair that has a continuous series of risers not interrupted by a landing or floor.

Flood - an inundation of water on the ground surface above normal levels.

Flood hazard area - the site (whether or not mapped) encompassing land lower than the flood hazard level which has been determined by the approval authority.

Flooding - a rise or overflow of water onto lands not normally submerged typically resulting from a result of heavy rainfall, storm surge, raised groundwater levels, overflow of river channels, increases in runoff from land or blocked drainage systems, among others.

Floodplain - areas adjacent to rivers and coasts which flood during periods of heavy rain from storm surge.

Floor Area -

- in relation to a building: the total area of all storeys; and
- in relation to a *storey*: the area of all floors of that *storey* measured over the enclosing walls (if any) and that part of any *common wall* located within the allotment; and
- in relation to a *room*: the area of the *room* measured within the finished surfaces of the walls, and includes the area occupied by any cupboard or other built-in furniture, fixture or fitting.

Floor Drain - a plumbing fixture installed on the floor of a building that accepts and conveys water piping connected to a suitable discharge area.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Foundation - the ground which supports the building.

Framing - timber or metal members to which lining, wallboard, insulation, cladding, flooring or decking is attached, or which support the structure or resist forces applied to it.

Fuel Supply - pipes and associated fittings that contain pressurized flammable mixtures of hydrocarbon gases to supply energy for heating and cooling in a building facility, including Liquefied Petroleum Gas (propane) and natural gas (methane).

Glazing - a transparent or translucent element and its supporting frame located in the envelope and includes a window other than a roof light.

Going - the horizontal dimension from the front to the back of a tread less any overhang from the next tread or landing above

Habitable Room - a room used for normal domestic activities, and –

- includes a bedroom, living room, lounge room, music room, television room, kitchen, dining room, sewing room, study, playroom, family room and sunroom; but
- excludes a bathroom, laundry, water closet, pantry, walk-in wardrobe, corridor, hallway, lobby, photographic darkroom, clothes-drying room, and other spaces of a specialised nature occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods.

Handrail - a rail to provide support to or assist with the movement of a person.

Hazard - anything with an unreasonable risk of bodily injury or deterioration of health or causes a disaster

Health-care Building -

a nursing home, hospital, convalescent home, infirmary or similar institution or home for sick or disabled persons needing full-time nursing care; or

a clinic or day surgery unit where –

- prescribed surgical procedures are performed on people who do not require overnight care as in-patients in a hospital; and
- the surgical procedures include a potential requirement for general anaesthesia, major regional anaesthesia or intravenous sedation.

Horizontal Exit - a *required* doorway through a *required fire wall* separating two portions of a building with approximately the same floor level so as to establish an area of refuge affording safety from fire and/or smoke in the portion from which the escape is made.

Hydrant - a fire service outlet fitting installed in a *riser main* or a *fire main* which provides a valved outlet to permit a controlled supply of water to be taken from the main for fire fighting. *Hydrants* installed in a *riser main* system within a building are referred to as internal *hydrants* and those installed in a *fire main* outside a building, as external *hydrants*.

Insulation, - in relation to a FRL, means the ability to maintain a temperature on the surface not exposed to the furnace below the limits specified in AS 1530.4

Integrity - in relation to a FRL, means the ability to resist the passage of flames and hot gases specified in AS 1530.4.

Internal Wall - excludes a *common wall* or a party wall.

Junction - a sanitary fitting used to connect one or more branch pipes or channels to a main pipe or channel.

- A square *junction* connects the main pipe at right angles and has an airtight removable cap to facilitate inspection and cleaning.
- An inspection branch is a *junction* with an airtight removable cap to facilitate inspection and cleaning.

Lightweight Construction - see Specification NC1.4.

Landing - an area at the top or bottom of a *flight* or between two *flights*

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Lifespan - the duration of a building facility or site from construction to demolition.

Live Load - the weight of everything temporarily adding load to a structure, such as people or goods in/on a building storey, but not including anything permanently attached to it.

Loadbearing - intended to resist force and moments additional to those due to its own weight.

Marine and River Protection Zone - Zone located within 50 metres of marine or river environment.

Mezzanine Floor - an intermediate floor within a room which is not more than 1/3 of the floor area of the room or 200 m², whichever is the lesser.

Minor repair - a repair that is a like for like replacement of deteriorated elements of a building or the replacement of cladding or non-structural elements following localised damage. Upgrading the structural capacity of existing connections between structural elements without changes to the members is also considered a minor repair.

A repair is not a minor repair if it:

- affects the structural adequacy of the building including underpinning of foundations; or
- is a conversion of a non-habitable space into a habitable space, such as a ceiling space, underfloor space, or a garage, into a habitable room (as defined by the NBC);
- requires specialist design input from a practitioner in an area such as foundations or geotechnical design, engineering, energy efficiency, building services or fire safety; or
- affects the requirements necessary to avoid the spread of fire to or from any adjoining building; or
- is over any third party services or easements; or
- impacts on the protection of any adjoining property; or
- will adversely affect the safety, health or amenity of people using the building; or
- negatively impacts on the functioning of any existing 'Code-required' building elements; or
- would trigger a change in the building's occupancy permit; or
- involves a change of use or a change in the classification of the existing building or of the part being repaired; or,
- includes repair works to greater than 50% of the gross floor area.

Mixed Traditional-Commercial Building Material - These are buildings constructed from a mixture of traditional materials and commercially manufactured materials and may also be known as 'semi-permanent'. These buildings may use commercially manufactured materials for key construction elements such as the building frame and roof and are then in-filled using traditional materials.

Non-combustible –

- applied to a material – means not *combustible* except that the material may have a *combustible* surface finish if the finish is not more than 1 mm thick and the *Spread-of-Flame Index* of the assemblage is 0;
- applied to construction or part of a building – means constructed of *non-combustible* material on all exposed faces.

The following materials though *combustible* or containing *combustible* materials are required:-

- plasterboard
- perforated gypsum lath with a normal paper finish
- fibrous plaster sheet conforming to AS 2185
- cellulose fibre cement sheeting
- any other material not less fire-protective than any of the materials from above.

Open-deck Carpark - a carpark in which all parts of the parking storeys are cross-ventilated by permanent unobstructed openings in not fewer than 2 opposite or approximately opposite sides, and-

- where each side that provides ventilation is not less than 1/6 of the area of any other side; and
- the openings are not less than ½ of the wall area of the side concerned.

Open Garage - a carport or garage with 2 or more sides substantially open.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Open Space - a space on an allotment, or a roof or similar part of a building complying with ND2.12, open to the sky and connected directly with a public road.

Open Spectator Stand - a tiered stand substantially open at the front.

Panel wall - a *non-loadbearing external wall*, in frame or similar construction, that is wholly supported at each storey.

Performance Requirement - a requirement which states the level of performance which a Performance Solution or Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution must meet.

Performance Solution - a method of complying with the Performance Requirements other than by a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution.

Permanent Building - a building complying with all the requirements of the VNBC and constructed entirely from commercially manufactured materials or local including native that comply with the NBC Section A2 - Acceptance of Design and Construction

Piping Junction - a sanitary fitting used to connect one or more branch pipes or channels to a main pipe or channel

Pitch - the maximum angle to the horizontal of a line connecting the nosings of stair treads in a single straight flight of a stairway.

Plumbing - the system of pipes, tanks, fittings, and other apparatuses required for potable water supply, wastewater removal and/or treatment, and ventilation / heating or cooling in a building, facility or site.

Private Garage –

- any garage of a Class 1 building; or
- any single storey of a building of another Class capable of accommodating not more than 3 vehicles, if there is only one such *storey* in the building.

Professional Consultant - a person with appropriate experience in the relevant field, being –

- if legislation so requires – a registered *professional consultant* in the relevant discipline; or
- a Corporate Member of a recognized professional institution.

Public Corridor - an enclosed corridor, hallway or the like which –

- serves as a means of egress from 2 or more *sole-occupancy units* to a *required exit* from the *storey* concerned; or
- is *required* to be provided as a means of egress from any portion of a *storey* to a *required exit*.

Public Carpark - a building that is used for the parking of motor vehicles but is neither a *private garage* nor used for the servicing of vehicles, other than washing, cleaning or polishing.

Qualified Person: Building Inspector or Environmental Health inspector of a Municipality or Provincial Government.

Registered Testing Authority –

- an organisation registered by the Australian National Association of Testing Authorities (NATA) Silverwater NSW AUSTRALIA to test in the relevant field; or
- an organisation registered by the International Accreditation New Zealand (IANZ) Auckland, NEW ZEALAND to test in the relevant field; or
- an organisation recognised by NATA or IANZ through a mutual recognition agreement; or
- alternative testing authorities may be proposed for approval if *required*. Supporting documentation for any alternative testing authority must be submitted. This must demonstrate capability, testing methodology and accreditation as necessary.

Repairs - action taken to restore the structural strength or appearance of a building without making any addition or extension to it.

Required - by this Code.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Resistance to the incipient spread of Fire - in relation to a ceiling membrane, means the ability of a ceiling membrane to insulate the space between the ceiling and roof, or ceiling and floor above, to limit the temperature rise of *combustibles* in this space during the *Standard Fire Test* to 180°C.

Rise - in storeys, means the greatest number of storeys calculated in accordance with NC1.2 at any part of the *external walls* of the building –

- above the finished ground next to that part; or
- if part of the *external wall* is on the boundary of the allotment, above the natural ground level at the relevant part of the boundary.

Riser - Main a pipe to convey water for fire brigade use to all floors of a building and where appropriate to the roof. A *riser main/system* must consist of either a *wet riser main system* or a *charge dry riser main system*.

Riser - the height between consecutive treads and between each *landing* and continuous tread.

Runoff - amount of rainfall that does not percolate into soil and becomes perched on the ground-surface.

Sanitary Compartment - a room or space containing a toilet fixture, closet pan, soil pan, chemical toilet, or the like.

Sarking-type Material - a material such as a reflective foil or other flexible membrane of a type normally used for a purpose such as water-proofing, vapour proofing or thermal reflectance.

School - includes a primary or secondary *school*, college, university or similar educational establishment.

Self-closing - applied to a door or *window* means equipped with a devise which returns the door or *window* to the fully closed and latched position immediately after each manual opening.

Service Station a garage which is not a *private garage* and is for the servicing of vehicles, other than only washing, cleaning or polishing.

Sewage - waterborne human waste from domestic and commercial premises including faeces and urine, and waste room kitchens, showers, baths, domestic laundries etc.

Service - a mechanical or electrical system that uses energy to provide air-conditioning, mechanical ventilation, heated water supply, artificial lighting, vertical transport and the like within a building, but which does not include -

- systems used solely for emergency purposes; and
- cooking facilities; and
- portable appliances.

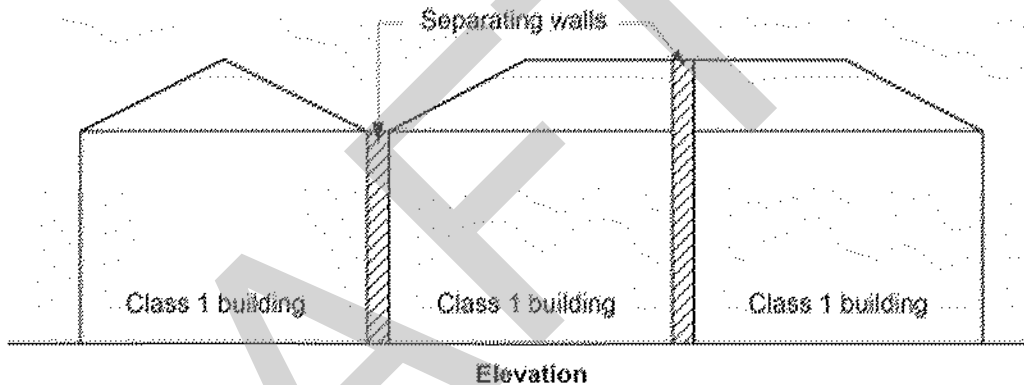
Sanitary Fixture - any receptacle or apparatus that receives clean, potable water and is used for domestic cleansing, including sinks, showers, bathtubs, hot tubs, laundry tubs and associated taps, stoppers and overflow mechanisms, and accessories such as towel racks, automatic hand dryers, soap dispensers etc.

Sewer - a conduit vested in a public authority and located outside the property boundary. It is used for the conveyance of *waste water*.

Safety Glass - toughened or laminated glass or had a safety film applied to it so that it resists shattering upon impact, is certified by an approval authority acceptable to the Government of Nauru and bears identification markings indicating that the pane has been cut from safety glass material.

Separating Element - a barrier that exhibits fire integrity, structural adequacy, insulation or a combination of these for a period of time under specified conditions (often in accordance with AS 1530.4).

Separating Wall - a wall that is common to adjoining Class 1 building.



Shaft - the walls and other parts of a building bounding –

- a well, other than an *atrium well*; or
- a vertical chute, duct or similar passage, but not a chimney or flue.

Site - the part of the allotment of land on which a building stands or is to be erected.

Significant Alteration – means proposed alterations of greater than 50% of the mass of structural elements or gross floor area (whichever is less) of an existing building, and in which case the entire building shall be made compliant to the requirements of this code. Extensions to an existing building exceeding 40m² but less than 50% of the existing plan size shall comply with this code. For extensions greater than 50% of the existing floor area, the entire building must be made good to comply with this code.

Sitework - work on or around a site, including earthworks, preparatory to or associated with the construction, alteration, demolition or removal of a building.

Sludge - semi-liquid solids settled from wastewater.

Smoke-and-heat Vent - a vent, located in or near the roof for smoke and hot gases to escape if there is a fire in the building.

Smoke-Developed Index - the index number for smoke developed under AS 1530.3

Soil Fixture - a water closet pan, urinal, sanitary napkin disposal unit, slop hopper, bed pan washer or autopsy table.

Soil Pipe - a pipe which conveys discharge from *Soil Fixtures*.

Sole-occupancy Unit - a room or other portion of a building for occupation by one owner, lessee, tenant, or other occupier to the exclusion of any other owner, lessee, tenant, or other occupier.

Spread-of-flame index - the index number for spread of flame under AS 1530.3.

Stack - a vertical *drain* including offsets and extending to more than one storey.

Stage - a floor or platform in Class 9b building on which performances are presented before an audience.

Standard Fire Test - the Fire-resistance Test of Structures under AS 1530.4.

Storey -a space within a building which is situated between one floor level and the floor level next above, or is there is no floor above, the ceiling or roof above, but not –

a space that contains only –

- a lift *shaft*, stairway or meter room;
- a bathroom, shower room, water closet, or other *sanitary compartment*; or
- 3 vehicles or less; or
- a combination of the above; or

a *mezzanine floor*.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Structural Adequacy - in relation to a FRL means the ability to maintain stability and adequate *loadbearing* capacity under AS 1530.4.

Structural member - a component or part of an assembly which provides vertical or lateral support to a building or structure.

Storm Surge - a rise in sea level over and above the predicted astronomical tide generated by a storm or tsunami.

Stud - an upright support in the wall of a building facility to which sheathing, drywall, etc. are attached.

Sweep junction - a long radius bend entering a main pipe at 45° or a 45° junction fitted with a 45° bend.

Swimming Pool - any excavation or structure containing water and used for swimming, wading, paddling, or the like, including a bathing or wading pool, or spa.

Trade waste - waterborne waste from business, trade or manufacturing process containing predominantly non-human waste, but not unpolluted water.

Traditional Building Materials - Dwelling house built using traditional methods and substantially from traditional materials where not more than 12 people will be ordinarily resident.

Ward area - that portion of a *storey* of a class 9a building for residing patients and includes areas for sleeping, recreation and sanitary facilities, and nurses stations.

Waste Fixture - a sanitary fixture other than a *soil fixture*. Examples are: basins. Bidets. Kitchen sink. Laundry trough etc.

Waste pipe - a pipe which conveys the discharge from *waste fixtures*.

Waste water - dissolved and suspended waterborne waste which may consist of *sewage* and/or *trade waste*.

Waterproof - the complete and total resistance of a building element or material to the ingress of moisture.

Water table - level of groundwater in soil and rock, below which the ground is saturated.

Weathertight - the resistance of a building to the weather where water and wind are prevented from entering and accumulating behind the cladding in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the building.

Wet Area - an area within a building having water supplied from a water supply system which includes bathrooms, showers, laundries and sanitary compartments (excludes kitchens, bar and beverage preparation areas).

Wet Riser Main System - one or more *riser mains* in a building with all *required* fittings, permanently charge with water from a *fire main*. The term includes all associated pipe work from the point of connection to a *fire main*.

Window - includes a roof light, glass panel, glass brick, glass louvre, glazed sash, glazed door, or other device which transmits natural light directly from outside a building to the room concerned when in the closed position.

A3.2 Referenced Documents

Documents referenced in the VNBC shall refer to primary referenced documents with the edition listed in Specification A3.3.1- Standards Adopted by Reference.

Documents referenced in primary referenced documents is a reference to secondary referenced documents as it existed at the time of publication of the primary referenced document.

Documents referenced in the VNBC and listed in Specification A3.3.1 are only applicable in the context in which they are quoted; and are mandatory to Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions, Specifications and Verification Methods.

Building materials, products, forms of construction and design methods not covered by referenced documents shall provide a Performance Solution. Performance Solutions can use any element or edition of any document and are not required to use documents listed in Specification A3.3.1.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Documents published by Standards New Zealand and Standards Australia shall be the primary source, with documents published by other internationally recognized standards organisations serving as secondary sources when no New Zealand or Australian document exists.

A3.3 Referenced Standards, Etc

A reference to a document under A3.2 refers to the latest edition or issue, together with any amendment, listed in Specification A3.3.1, Standards Adopted by Reference, and only so much as is relevant in the context in which the document is quoted.

A3.4 Differences Between Referenced Documents and this Code

(1) The VNBC requirements shall take precedence when differences arise between the VNBC, primary referenced documents, and secondary referenced documents.

(2) When referenced documents require compliance with laws and regulations of another country, the laws and regulations of The Republic of Vanuatu shall take precedence. If laws and regulations of Vanuatu do not exist for the subject area, the relevant Authority shall be notified, and guidance sought.

A3.5 Mandatory Provisions

- (a) The following provisions of the Code are mandatory:
 - (i) all provisions of Section A; and
 - (ii) the Performance Requirements stated at the beginning of all the other sections.
- (b) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the Code are one means of satisfying the Performance Requirements. The Performance Requirements can also be met by any other means. When this latter approach is taken, it must meet the final objectives and performance that would have been achieved had the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions been followed.

A3.6 Adoption of Referenced Documents

The VNBC does not require compliance with contractual matters or clauses relating to rights, responsibilities or obligations between parties, submission requirements, and/or departure from the VNBC that may be contained within referenced documents. This includes but is not limited to:

- (a) The respective rights, responsibilities or obligations between the manufacturer, supplier or purchaser.
- (b) The responsibilities of any tradesperson or other building operative, architect, engineer, authority, or other person or body.
- (c) The submission for approval of any material, building component, form or method of construction, to any person, authority or other body.
- (d) The submission of a material, building component, form or method of construction, or design to any person, authority or body for opinion.
- (e) Departure from the VNBC, rule, specification or provision at the sole discretion of the manufacturer or purchaser, or by arrangement or agreement between the manufacturer and purchaser.

A4 Acceptance of Design and Construction

A4.1 Suitability

Every part of a building installed must be constructed to achieve the VNBC requirements using appropriate materials, products, forms of construction and design methods that are fit for their intended purposes considering strength, durability, and the operations & maintenance context.

Materials, products, forms of construction or design are fit for purposes when they satisfy the following:

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Are supported by evidence of suitability as per A4.2, and
- Are constructed or installed in an appropriate manner.

A4.2 Evidence of Suitability

Evidence of Suitability to support the use of a material, product, form of construction or design method satisfies a Performance Requirement or Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision may be in the form of any one or combination of the following:

- A current BRANZ or ABCB CodeMark *Certificate of Conformity*.
- A current Certificate of Accreditation.
- A current certificate issued by a *certification body*.
- A report issued by an Accredited Testing Laboratory.
- A report issued by a *Local Testing laboratory* recognized by the national authority having jurisdiction.
- A certificate or report from a professional engineer or other appropriately qualified person
- A Product Technical Statements
- Another form of documentary evidence

Evidence of suitability for any product that is in contact with drinking water must comply with AS/NZS 4020 and have a weighted average lead content of not more than 0.25% verified in accordance with NSF/ANSI/CAN 372, and may be in the form of any one or combination of the following:

- A report issued by an Accredited Testing Laboratory.
- A WaterMark licence.

Evidence of suitability shall clearly demonstrate that it fulfills the specific requirements of the VNBC; and provides as required all necessary results of tests, methodologies, protocols, basis, calculations, and relevant standards, specifications, rules, codes or practices, and other publications used to demonstrate compliance with the VNBC requirements.

Evidence must be a complete copy of the original certificate, report, or document.

A4.3 Fire Hazard Properties

Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision requires a fire hazard property, it must be determined as follows:

- The Fire Resistance Level (FRL) of a *structural member* or other building element must be determined in accordance with **Specification A4.3.1 – Fire Resistance of Building elements**. Any relevant testing report or certification must be published by an appropriately qualified *professional engineer* or other *appropriately qualified person or Accredited Testing Laboratory*.
- Early Fire Hazard Tests of a component or assembly must be determined in accordance with **Specification A4.3.2 – Early Fire Hazard Test for Assemblies**. Any relevant testing or certification must be published by an appropriately qualified *professional engineer* or other *appropriately qualified person or Accredited Testing Laboratory*.
- References to Fire Resistance Rating (FRR) in reference documents issued by Standards Australia and Standards New Zealand shall mean Fire Resistance Level (FRL).

A4.4 Material Durability

Building materials, components and construction methods shall be sufficiently durable to ensure that the building, without reconstruction or major renovation, satisfies the other functional requirements of this Code throughout the life of the building.

In particular:

- Unless exempted under Clause A 4.5, all locally grown plantation timber or imported timber used for structural applications shall be treated to a minimum of H3.2 (as per NZS 3602) or otherwise satisfy Clause A2.5.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

- all non-structural timber shall be treated to a minimum of H1.2 (as per NZS 3602) or brushed with a suitable timber treatment wood preservative.
- Manufacture, grading, finishing and branding of all structural plywood shall comply with AS/NZS 2269.0 Plywood-Structural Part 0: Specifications.

A4.5 Use of Native Timber

The use of native timber is prohibited in the construction of buildings, except when:

- used solely for architectural and cultural decoration i.e., non-structural applications;
- permission has been granted by the Approval Authority to use native timbers listed in Specification A4.5.1;
- used for the construction of *traditional material buildings* and buildings from *mixed traditional-commercial material*.

In this context, “native timber” means logs and sawn pieces of dressed and undressed timber of trees indigenous to Vanuatu.

A4.6 Documentation

All submitted documents to support the use of a material, product, form of construction or design shall be:

- In English or French
- In metric units
- Of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of work proposed and with sufficient detail to show that the performance requirements and provisions of the VNBC, laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations have been satisfied.
- Of sufficient clarity to indicate the code, standards, occupancy, importance level, fire resistance levels, material strengths, and design actions.

A5 Classification of Buildings & Structures

A5.1 Principles of Classification

The classification of a building or part of a building is determined by the purposes for which it is designed, constructed or adapted to be used.

Each part of a building must be classified according to its purpose and comply with all the appropriate requirements for its classification.

A room that contains a mechanical, thermal or electrical facility or the like that serves the building must have the same classification as the major part or principal use of the building or fire compartment in which it is situated

Unless another classification is more suitable an occupiable outdoor area must have the same classification as the part of the building to which it is associated.

Where it is unclear which classification should apply, the approval authority has the discretion to decide.

[NOTE: the following building classification descriptions and diagrams have been adopted from the Australian Building Codes Board publication ‘Building Classifications’, July 2020, abcb.gov.au]

A5.2 Building Classifications

Building classifications are labelled “Class 1” through to “Class 10”. Some classifications also have sub-classifications, referred to by a letter after the number (e.g. Class 1a).

A building may have parts that have different uses. In most cases, each of these parts are classified separately.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

A building (or part of a building) may also have more than one use and may be assigned more than one classification.

Buildings are classified as follows:

Class 1 Buildings

Class 1 buildings are houses. Typically, they are standalone single dwellings of a domestic or residential nature.

These buildings can also be horizontally attached to other Class 1 buildings. When attached they are commonly referred to as duplexes, terrace houses, row houses and townhouses. In these situations, they must be separated by a wall that has fire-resisting and sound insulation properties.

The Class 1 classification includes two sub-classifications: Class 1a and Class 1b.

A **Class 1a** building is a single dwelling being a detached house; or one of a group of attached dwellings being a town house, row house or the like.

A **Class 1b** building is a boarding house, guest house or hostel that has a floor area less than 300 m² and ordinarily has less than 12 people living in it. It can also be four or more single dwellings located on one allotment which are used for short-term holiday accommodation.

Class 1 buildings cannot be located above or below any other dwelling (or any other class of building) other than a private garage

Class 2 Buildings

Class 2 buildings are apartment buildings. They are typically multi-unit residential buildings where people live above and below each other.

Class 2 buildings may also be single storey attached dwellings where there is a common space below. For example, two dwellings above a common basement or carpark.

Is it a Class 1b, 2 or 3 residential building? Classification is a process for understanding risk in a building (or part of a building) according to its use. Where it is unclear which classification should apply, the approval authority has the discretion to decide

Class 3 Buildings

Class 3 applies to residential buildings other than Class 1 or Class 2 buildings, or a Class 4 part of a building. Class 3 buildings are a common place of long term or transient living for a number of unrelated people. Examples include a boarding house, guest house, hostel or backpackers (that are larger than the limits for a Class 1b building).

Class 3 buildings could also include dormitory style accommodation, or workers' quarters. Class 3 buildings may also be "care-type" facilities (such as accommodation buildings for children, the elderly, or people with a disability) which are not Class 9 buildings.

Class 3 includes residential care buildings and the residential parts of hotels, motels, schools, or jails.

Class 4 Part of a building

A Class 4 part of a building is a sole dwelling or residence within a building of a non-residential nature. An example of a Class 4 part of a building would be a caretaker's residence in a storage facility. A Class 4 part can only be located in a Class 5 to 9 building.

Is it the only residence in the building? If so, then it is likely to be a Class 4 part of a building. There can only be one Class 4 part in a building. A Class 4 part cannot be located in a Class 1, 2 or 3 building.

Class 5 Buildings

Class 5 buildings are office buildings used for professional or commercial purposes. Examples of Class 5 buildings are offices for lawyers, accountants, government agencies and architects.

When is a general medical practitioner's office not a Class 5 building? Generally, a general medical practitioner's office will be a Class 5 building. However, if any medical treatment administered leaves patients unconscious or non-ambulatory, then the building would be considered a health-care building and therefore a Class 9a building

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Class 6 Buildings

Class 6 buildings are typically shops, restaurants and cafés. They are a place for the sale of retail goods or the supply of services direct to the public. Some examples are:

- A dining room, bar, shop or kiosk part of a hotel or motel
- A hairdresser or barber shop
- A public laundry
- A market or showroom
- A funeral parlour
- A shopping centre.

Is a service station a Class 6 building? Yes, as they are intended for the servicing of cars and the sale of fuel or other goods. However, the term “service station” does not cover buildings where panel beating, auto electrical, tyre replacement or the like are solely carried out. These are Class 8 buildings.

Class 7 Buildings

Class 7 buildings are storage-type buildings. The Class 7 classification has two sub-classifications: Class 7a and Class 7b.

Class 7a buildings are car parks.

Class 7b buildings are typically warehouses, storage buildings or buildings for the display of goods (or produce) that is for wholesale

Reference to wholesale means “sale to people in the trades or in the business of ‘on-selling’ goods and services to another party (including the public)”

Class 8 Buildings

A factory is the most common way to describe a Class 8 building. It is a building in which a process (or handicraft) is carried out for trade, sale, or gain. The building can be used for production, assembling, altering, repairing, finishing, packing, or cleaning of goods or produce. It includes buildings such as a mechanic’s workshop. It may also be a building for food processing, such as an abattoir. A laboratory is also a Class 8 building, even though it may be small. This is due to the high fire hazard potential.

Class 9 Buildings

Class 9 buildings are buildings of a public nature. The Class 9 classification has three sub-classifications: Class 9a, Class 9b and Class 9c.

Class 9a buildings are generally hospitals, referred to in the Code as health-care buildings. They are buildings in which occupants or patients are undergoing medical treatment and may need physical assistance to evacuate in the case of an emergency. This includes a clinic (or day surgery) where the effects of the treatment administered involve patients becoming unconscious or unable to move. This in turn requires supervised medical care (on the premises) for some time after treatment has been administered.

Class 9b buildings are assembly buildings in which people may gather for social, theatrical, political, religious or civil purposes. They include schools, universities, childcare centres, pre-schools, sporting facilities, night clubs, or public transport buildings.

Class 9c buildings are residential care buildings that may contain residents who have various care level needs. They are a place of residence where 10% or more of persons who reside there need physical assistance in conducting their daily activities and to evacuate the building during an emergency. An aged care building, where residents are provided with personal care services, is a Class 9c building.

Laboratories that are part of health-care buildings are classified as Class 9a buildings despite the general classification of laboratories being Class 8.

Class 10 Buildings

Class 10 buildings are non-habitable buildings or structures. Class 10 includes two sub-classifications: Class 10a and Class 10b.

Class 10a buildings are non-habitable buildings including sheds, carports, and private garages.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Class 10b is a structure being a fence, mast, antenna, retaining wall, swimming pool, or the like.

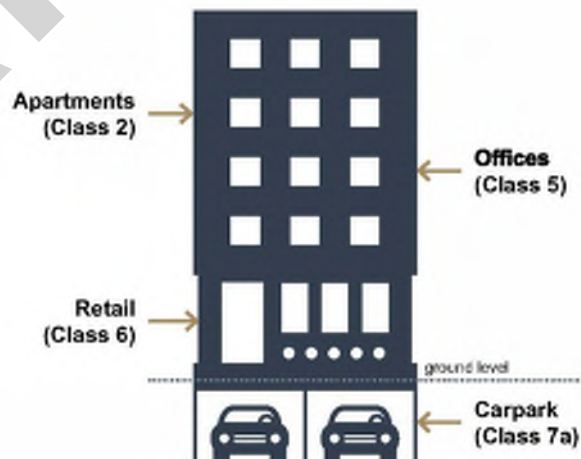
What is a private garage? A garage associated with a Class 1 building; or a single storey of a building containing not more than 3 vehicle spaces (limited to only one storey within a building); or any separate single storey garage associated with another building that contains no more than 3 vehicles.

Mixed use buildings

As buildings can have mixed uses, they can also have mixed (or multiple) classifications. For example, a building may have a basement carpark (Class 7a) with ground floor retail space (Class 6) and residential apartments (Class 2) and offices above (Class 5).

How big must a part of a building be to have its own classification?

Every part of a building must be separately classified. However, where a part has a different purpose and is not more than 10% of the floor area of the storey it is on, subject to some limitations it may be considered ancillary to the major use and adopt its classification. For instance, if a single storey warehouse (Class 7b) has an office (normally Class 5) which takes up only 8% of the floor area, the whole building can be classified as a Class 7b. However, if the office takes up 12% of the floor area then the warehouse (Class 7b) and office (Class 5) must be classified separately.



A5.3 Multiple Building Classifications

A building (or a part of a building) may be designed to serve multiple purposes and may have more than one classification. This means that it is permissible for a building to be Class 6/7, or Class 5/6, or whatever is deemed appropriate. This allows flexibility in how the building might be used. For example, if a building is intended for retail shopping, storage or office space, it may be designed as a Class 5/6/7 building.

At the design stage it may not be clear who the final tenant will be (or how they will be using their tenancy), so as long as the design meets the minimum requirements of all the classifications it could be used for any of the purposes.

A6 United Buildings

A6.1 United Buildings

Two or more buildings adjoining each other are considered to form one united building if they are connected through openings in the walls dividing them and used as one building.

United buildings shall comply with all the requirements of the VNBC as though they are a single building.

In the case of a united building comprised of buildings of different classes, the most restrictive fire resistance requirements of pertinent classes of the individual building shall apply.

A6.2 Alterations in a United Building

If, after alterations or any other building work, two or more of the buildings in a United Building cease to be connected through openings in the dividing walls, each of those buildings not now connected must comply with all the requirements for a single building.

A7 Building Importance Level

A7.1 Building Importance Level

1. The Importance Level of a building or structure shall be determined in accordance with its occupancy and uses, as given in Tables A7.1 and A7.2.
2. Buildings and structures that have multiple uses shall be assigned the highest importance level applicable for any of those uses.
3. Where an adjacent structure provides access to another structure with higher importance level, then the structure providing access shall be designated the same importance level as the structure to which it provides access.
4. Buildings or structures that supply infrastructure services to higher importance level buildings or structures shall be designated the same importance level as the structure to which it provides services to.
5. Buildings and structures that are isolated, have low accessibility to resources for maintenance, and/or will be challenged to recover rapidly following a post-disaster event shall be designated a Building Importance Level 3 or 4 depending on its consequence of failure within that community.
6. The Approval Authority shall make all final determinations on Importance Level based on information submitted.

Table A7.1 Consequences of Failure for Importance Levels

Consequences of failure	Description	Importance level	Comment
Low	Low consequence for loss of human life or small or moderate economic, social or environmental consequences.	1	Minor Structures (failure not likely to endanger human life).
Ordinary	Medium consequences for loss of human life, or considerable economic, social or environmental consequences.	2	Normal Structures or structures not falling into other levels.
High	High consequence for loss of human life or very great economic, social or environmental consequences. High difficulties for community to recover post-disaster and high difficulties to maintain.	3	Major Structures (affecting crowds) & Essential services.
		4	Post Disaster Structures (Post Disaster Functions or Dangerous activities).
Exceptional	Circumstances where reliability must be set on a case-by-case basis.	5	Exceptional Structures (Beyond the scope of this code)

Table A7.2 Importance Levels for Building Types

Importance level	Description of Building Type	Specific Structure Examples
1	Buildings posing low risk to human life or the environment, or a low economic cost, should the building fail. These are typically small non-habitable	Ancillary buildings not for human habitation Minor storage facilities

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Importance level	Description of Building Type	Specific Structure Examples
	buildings, such as sheds, barns, and the like, that are not normally occupied, though they may have occupants from time to time.	
2	Buildings posing normal risk to human life or the environment, or a normal economic cost, should the building fail. These are typical residential, commercial, and industrial buildings.	Buildings not included in Importance Levels 1, 3 or 4 Single family dwellings Car parking buildings
3	Buildings of a higher level of societal benefit or importance, or with higher levels of risk-significant factors to building occupants. These buildings have increased performance requirements because they may house large numbers of people, vulnerable populations, or occupants with other risk factors, or fulfil a role of increased importance to the local community or to society in general.	Buildings and structures that are isolated, have low accessibility to resources for maintenance, and/or will be challenged to recover rapidly following a hazard event. Buildings where more than 300 people can congregate in one area. Any building with a capacity of 1000 or more people. Daycare facilities with a capacity greater than 150. Primary school or secondary school facilities with a capacity greater than 250 Colleges or adult education facilities with a capacity greater than 500 Health care facilities with a capacity of 50 or more resident patients but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities Airport terminals, principal railway stations with a capacity greater than 250. Jails, detention facilities, and correctional institutions. Public assembly buildings, theatres and cinemas of greater than 1000 m2 Emergency medical and other emergency facilities not designated as post-disaster Power-generating facilities, water treatment and wastewater treatment facilities and other public utilities not included in Importance Level 4 nor designated as post-disaster.. Bank and cash distribution facilities and structures. Food distribution and warehouse facilities larger than 50m2. Buildings not included in importance Level 4 containing enough highly toxic or explosive materials capable of causing acutely hazardous conditions that do not extend beyond the property boundaries
4	Buildings that are essential to post-disaster recovery or associated with hazardous facilities.	Buildings and facilities with special post-disaster or recovery function and/or designated as essential facilities or critical infrastructure.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Importance level	Description of Building Type	Specific Structure Examples
		<p>Hospitals and health care facilities having surgery or emergency treatment.</p> <p>Emergency services facilities such as fire, rescue, police stations, warehouses/storage, garages and other supporting buildings having an emergency, recovery, and/or national defence function.</p> <p>Buildings and facilities owned by government that provide essential services.</p> <p>Buildings intended by the owner to contribute to emergency preparedness, or to be used for communication, and operation centres in an emergency, and other facilities required for emergency response.</p> <p>Designated emergency shelters, designated emergency centres and ancillary facilities.</p> <p>Power generating stations, water treatment facilities, and other utilities required as emergency backup facilities for importance level 4 structures.</p> <p>Buildings and structures that are highly isolated, have very low accessibility to resources for maintenance, and/or will be highly challenged to recover rapidly following a hazard event.</p> <p>Aviation and port buildings, warehouses, and hangers.</p> <p>Ancillary buildings (including, but not limited to, communication towers, fuel storage tanks or other structures) required for operation of importance level 4 structures during an emergency.</p> <p>Buildings housing highly toxic gas or explosive materials capable of causing acutely hazardous conditions that extend beyond property boundaries</p>
5	Special structures (For structures outside the scope of the building code acceptable probability of failure to be determined by special study)	<p>Structures that have special functions or whose failure poses catastrophic risk to a large area (e.g. 100 km²) or a large number of people (e.g., 100 000)</p> <p>Major dams, extreme hazard facilities</p>

A7.2 Building Design Life

The design life of a building or structure is the period of use as intended by the designer after which it may need to be replaced. Before this period has elapsed, it should remain fit for purpose.

The design life for normal structures is generally taken as 50 years. Design life will vary according to the type and use of the element being considered. The below list gives indicative design lives for various types of structure:

Category 1: Temporary structures, not including structures or parts of structures that can be dismantled with a view to being re-used – 10 years.

Category 2: Replaceable structural parts, e.g. gantry girders, bearings – 10 to 25 years.

Category 3: Agricultural and similar buildings – 15 to 30 years.

Category 4: Building structures and other common structures – 50 years.

Category 5: Monumental building structures, bridges and other civil engineering structures – 100 years.

A8 UXO Survey and Disposal

A8.1 UXO Definitions

For the purposes of this NBC, the following definitions shall be used when referring to UXOs:

UXO - refers to all unexploded ordnance (UXO) whether 'abandoned' or 'unexploded', including but not limited to artillery, mortar, rocket, and small arms ammunition, as well as bombs, landmines, sea mines, torpedoes, depth charges and propellant actuated devices.

UXO Risk Assessment – refers to the evaluation aimed at determining the potential hazards and risks associated with unexploded ordnance at a specific site. The initial risk assessment determines the need for and level of survey required. Risk Assessments can be supplemented by site specific UXO Surveys.

UXO Survey – refers to a systematic process designed to detect, identify, and map UXOs left behind from military activities at specific sites. Surveys may be non-intrusive or intrusive based on the specific requirements of the project and the level of risk involved. The primary goal is to minimize the risk to personnel and the public by identifying and safely removing UXOs as much as practically possible. UXO Surveys and subsequent clearance does not guarantee that the site is completely clear of UXOs; UXOs may be discovered during building works.

A8.2 UXO Risk Assessment, Survey Type, and Clearance

Risk Assessment and Survey Type: Where building work requires any geotechnical investigation, earthmoving, or building works, the Approval Authority will determine whether an initial UXO risk assessment is required (based on the history of the site and historical records) and what type of survey is appropriate. Initial Risk Assessment, Detailed Risk Assessments and Surveys shall be performed by the Vanuatu Mobile Force (VMF) and/or a technically competent UXO survey and remediation organization approved by VMF and the Approval Authority. The initial UXO Risk Assessment shall be performed during the earthmoving, building permit, and/or planning application.

UXO Identification and Clearance During Survey or Building Works: If a UXO is discovered during the UXO Survey or Building Works, the location shall be clearly marked/identified and isolated; local authorities, government agencies, and VMF responsible for public safety and UXO clearance shall be immediately notified; and local populations informed. *Building Works* and access to the site shall cease and all personnel shall move to a safe distance until clearance has been performed. VMF and/or technically competent UXO survey and remediation organization shall identify the type of UXO; recommend a method of isolation, neutralization, and/or removal; coordinate resources as required; and provide written instructions, updates, and appropriate communications outreach to all stakeholders. VMF shall lead the UXO clearance process. *Building Works* may continue once clearance has been performed or as permitted by VMF through written instructions.

A9 Prevention and Control of Asbestos

A9.1 Asbestos Definitions

For the purposes of the VNBC, the following definitions shall be used when referring to asbestos:

'asbestos' - means any of the following asbestiform varieties: (a) asbestos actinolite; (b) asbestos grunerite (amosite) (brown asbestos) (cummingtonite-grunerite); (c) asbestos anthophyllite; (d) asbestos chrysotile (white asbestos) (serpentine); (e) asbestos crocidolite (blue asbestos) (riebeckite); (f) asbestos tremolite; (g) a mixture that contains one or more of the above.

'Asbestos Management Code of Practice' - means the Vanuatu Asbestos Management Code of Practice (including amendments or supplementary guidance documents).

'asbestos containing material' - means any goods, material or thing, including waste material and soil, that contains asbestos.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

‘asbestos waste’ - means any waste that contains asbestos or asbestos containing material.

‘recycling’ - means any operation by which asbestos waste is reprocessed into products, materials or substances whether for the original or other purposes.

‘re-use’ - means any operation by which asbestos waste is used again for the same purpose for which that asbestos or asbestos containing material was originally intended.

A9.2 Prohibition and Prevention of Asbestos

Asbestos or asbestos containing materials shall not be imported, used, re-used, fabricated or recycled for use in any building, facility, or part in Vanuatu.

A9.3 Removal and Disposal of Asbestos Containing Materials

Where buildings will be demolished or partially demolished, asbestos shall be removed in accordance with an Asbestos Removal Control Plan prior to demolition works and disposed of in accordance with the Vanuatu Laws, Regulations, and the Vanuatu Asbestos Management Code of Practice, or other approved code of practice or standard; and in accordance with the requirements of the Approval Authority and other Authorities.

Where refurbishment or maintenance site activities require the removal of asbestos containing material or require other work activities that involve the disturbance of any asbestos containing materials, such work shall be done consistent with the Vanuatu Asbestos Management Code of Practice and complied with by the contractor responsible.

Asbestos shall be removed in accordance with the Asbestos Removal Control Plan by an asbestos removal contractor approved by the Approval Authority.”

A10 Health and Safety at Work

The Health and Safety at Work Act and any approved Code of Practices shall be complied with during the construction of a building, structure, or part; including any associated activities; and after the building has been built.

SPECIFICATION A3.3.1

Standards Adopted by Reference

The Standards and other documents listed in Table 3.3.1 are referred to in this Code. In order to reduce possible confusion/conflict, the Standards produced by the Standards Australia or by Standards New Zealand as *seen* to be specifically relevant, have been called up. However, users of the Code are free to use any suitable mix of regional Standards provided care is taken to follow consistent technical principles and prevalent practices. Where regional Standards do not cover any specific area, the relevant Standards as may be approved by the *Approval Authority* should be used.

Table 3.3.1: Scheduled Referenced Documents

No	Title	Code clause
AS/NZS 1170.0	Structural design actions, Part 0: General Principles	B1.2, B1.3
AS/NZS 1170.1	Structural design actions, Part 1: Permanent, imposed and other actions	B1.3, B1.6
AS/NZS 1170.2	Structural design actions, Part 2: Wind actions	B1.3
AS/NZS 1221	Fire hose reels	NE1.4
AS 1288	Glass in buildings – Selection and Installation	B1.4
AS 1530.1	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures - Part 1: Combustibility test for materials	Spec A5.3
AS 1530.2	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures - Part 2: Test for flammability of materials	Spec A5.3
AS/NZS 1530.3	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures - Part 3: Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke	Spec A5.4,
AS 1530.4	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures, Part 4: Fire-resistance tests for elements of construction	Spec A5.4, Spec NC3.15
AS/NZS 1546.1	On-site Domestic Wastewater Treatment Units – Part 1: Septic Tanks	DF7.2
AS/NZS 1547	On-site domestic wastewater management	DF7.6
AS 1562.1	Design and Installation of metal roof and wall cladding, Part 1: Metal	B1.4
AS 1657	Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders Design, construction and installation	ND2.18

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

No	Title	Code clause
AS/NZS 1664.1	Aluminium structures, Part 1: Limit state design	B14
AS/NZS 1664.2	Aluminium structures, Part 2: Allowable stress design	B1.4
AS 1668.1	The use of ventilation and air conditioning in building, Part 1: Fire and smoke control in buildings	NC3.15, NE2.7, Spec NE1.7, NH 1.2, NE5.2
AS 1668.2	The use of ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings, Part 2: Mechanical ventilation in buildings	DF4.5, NF4.5, NF4.17
AS 1670.1	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems – System design, installation and commissioning, Part 1: Fire	NE1.6, NE 4.2
AS 1670.3	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems - System design, installation and commissioning, Part 3: Fire alarm monitoring	Spec NE1.7, NE 2.5, NE5.2
AS 1670.4	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems - System design, installation and commissioning, Part 4: Emergency warning and intercom systems	Spec NE1.7, NE 2.5, Ne 5.2
AS 1670.5	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems - System design, installation and commissioning, Part 5: Special hazards systems	Sec NE1.7, NE 2.5
AS 1684.2	Residential timber-framed construction, Part 2: Non-cyclonic areas	B1.4
AS 1684.4	Residential timber-framed construction, Part 4: Simplified — Non-Cyclonic Areas	B1.4
AS 1720.1	Timber structures, Part 1: Design methods	B1.4
AS 1720.3	Timber structures, Part 3: Design criteria for timber-framed residential buildings	B1.4
AS 1720.5	Timber structures, Part 5: Nail plated timber roof trusses	B1.4
AS/NZS 1720.4	Timber structures, Part 4: Fire resistance of timber elements	B1.4, Spec A5.3
AS 1735.1	Lifts, escalators and moving walks, Part 1: General requirements	NE3.1
AS 1735.2	Lifts, escalators and moving walks - Passenger and goods lifts - Electric	Spec NC1.5, NE3.4, NE3.1
AS/NZS 1860.1	Particleboard Flooring, Part 1: Specifications	B1.4
AS 1860.2	Particleboard Flooring, Part 2: Installation	B1.4

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

No	Title	Code clause
AS 1905.1	Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls, Part 1: Fire-resistant door sets	Spec NC1.6, NC3.6
AS 1926.1	Swimming pool safety – Part 1: Safety barriers for swimming pools	NG 1.1
AS 1926.2	Swimming pool safety – Part 2: Location of safety barriers for swimming pools	NG 1.1
AS 1926.3	Swimming pool safety – Part 3: Water recirculation systems	NG 1.1
AS 2047	Windows and external glazed doors in buildings	B1.4
AS 2050	Installation of Roof Tiles	B1.4
AS 2159	Piling - Design and installation	B1.4
AS/NZS 2179.1	Specifications for rainwater goods, accessories and fasteners, Part 1: Metal shape or sheet rainwater goods, and metal accessories and fasteners	NF7.2
AS/NZS 2293.1	Emergency lighting and exit signs for buildings, Part 1: System design, installation and operation	NE3.5, NE3.8
AS/NZS 2312.1	Guide to the protection of structural steel against atmospheric corrosion by the use of protective coatings - Part 1: Paint coatings	B4.2
AS/NZS 2312.2	Guide to the protection of structural steel against atmospheric corrosion by the use of protective coatings - Part 2: Hot dip galvanizing	B4.2
AS/NZS 2327	Composite structures—Composite steel-concrete construction in buildings	Spec A5.3
AS/NZS 2588	Gypsum plasterboard	Section A – Schedule 1 - Definitions
AS 2601	The demolition of structures	B2.2
AS/NZS 2269.0	Plywood – Structural, Part 0: Specifications	B1.4
AS 2665	Smoke/heat venting systems - Design, installation and commissioning	NC2.3, NE2.5, Spec NE2.6
AS/NZS 2712	Solar and Heat pump Water Heaters – Design and Construction	NF5.4
AS/NZS 2728	Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications - Performance requirements	B4.2
AS/NZS 2845.1	Water Supply - Backflow Prevention Devices, Part 1: Material design and performance requirements	DF5.2, NF5.2

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

No	Title	Code clause
AS 2870	Residential slabs and footings	B1.4, DF1.9, NF1.9
AS/NZS 2904	Damp-proof courses and flashings	DF1.8, NF1.8
AS/NZS 3000	Electrical installations (known as the Australian/New Zealand Wiring Rules)	DE1.1, NE5.1
NZS 3101.1&2	Concrete structures standard	B1.4
NZS 3109	Concrete construction	B1.4
NZS 3124	Specification for concrete construction for minor works	B1.4
AS/NZS 3500.0	Plumbing and drainage, Part 0: Glossary of terms	
AS/NZS 3500.1	Plumbing and drainage, Part 1: Water Services	DF5.2, NF5.2, NF5.3
AS/NZS 3500.2	Plumbing and drainage, Part 2: Sanitary plumbing and drainage	DF6.2, NF7.2
AS/NZS 3500.3	Plumbing and drainage, Part 3: Storm water drainage	NF7.2,
AS/NZS 3500.4	Plumbing and drainage, Part 4: Heated water services	DF5.2, NF5.3, NF5.4, NF5.2.
AS 3600	Concrete structures	B1.4, Spec A5.3
AS 5216	Design of post-installed and cast-in fastenings in concrete	B1.4
NZS 3603	Timber Structures Standard	B1.4
NZS 3604	Timber-framed buildings	B1.4, B3.3, B4.2
AS 3660.1	Termite management, Part 1: New building work	B1.4
AS 3660.2	Termite management, Part 2: In and around existing buildings and structures	B1.4
AS 3660.3	Termite management, Part 3: Assessment criteria for termite management systems	B1.4
AS/NZS 3666.1	Air-handling and water systems of buildings - Microbial control – Part 1: Design, installation and commissioning	NE 4.17
AS 3700	Masonry structures	B1.4, Spec A5.3
AS 3972	General purpose and blended cements	B4.3
AS/NZS 4020	Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water	A5.2
AS 4100	Steel structures	B1.4, Spec A5.3

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

No	Title	Code clause
AS 4597	Installation of roof slates and shingles (non-interlocking type)	B1.4
AS/NZS 4600	Cold-Formed Steel Structures	B1.4
AS/NZS 4200.1	Pliable building membranes and underlays, Part 1: Materials	DF1.5, NF1.5
NZS 4210	Masonry construction: Materials and workmanship	B1.4, Spec A5.3
NZS 4223	Glazing Standards Set: Part 1: glass selection and glazing Part 2: insulating glass units Part 3: human impact safety requirements Part 4: wind, dead, snow, and live actions	B1.4,
NZS 4229	Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design	B1.4
NZS 4230	Design of reinforced concrete masonry structures	B1.4
NZS 4232.2	Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures - Part 2: Fire resisting glazing systems	Spec NC3.4
NZS 4503	Hand operated firefighting equipment	NE1.5, NE1.7
NZS 4510	Fire hydrant systems for buildings	NE1.2, NE1.3
NZS 4512	Fire Detection and alarm systems in buildings	Spec NE1.8, NE2.5
AS/NZS 5033	Installation and Safety Requirements for photovoltaic (PV) arrays	DE1.3
ASCE 7	Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures	B1.3, B1.6
ASCE 24	Flood Resistant Design and Construction	B1.6
ASTM E72-22	Standard Test Methods of Conducting Strength Tests of Panels for Building Construction (Available ASTM website)	Spec NC1.5
ASTM E695-03	Standard Test Method of Measuring Relative Resistance of Wall, Floor, and Roof Construction to Impact Loading (Available ATSM Website)	Spec NC1.5
ISO 9223	Corrosion of metals and alloys — Corrosivity of atmospheres — Classification, determination and estimation	B4.2
DFAT	Accessibility Design Guide: Universal Design principles for Australia's Aid Program (Available free of charge DFAT website)	ND3.2, ND3.3, NF2.5

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

No	Title	Code clause
ABCB	ABCB Standard for Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas	B1.6
NASH	NASH Standard – Residential and Low-rise Steel Framing Part 1 or Part 2	B1.4
	Vanuatu National Policy (NEESAP),	DEP3.1, NEP4.5
	Vanuatu URA Regulation and Vanuatu Electricity Supplies Act	DEP3.1, NEP4.5
	SIEAPI Guidelines on Energy Efficiency.	DEP3.1, NEP4.5
	Vanuatu Building Act	A10
	Vanuatu Health and Safety at Work Act	A10
	Vanuatu Code of Practice for Occupational Health and Safety in Construction	A10

SPECIFICATION A4.3.1

Fire-Resistance of Building Elements

Contents

1. Scope	34
2. Rating	34
3. FRLs determined by calculation	34
4. Interchangeable materials	35
5. Columns covered with lightweight construction.....	35
Annexure to Table 1	39
1. Scope	39
2. Mortar for masonry	39
3. Gypsum blocks	39
4. Gypsum-sand mortar and plaster	39
5. Gypsum-perlite and Gypsum-vermiculite Plaster	40
6. Plaster of Cement and Sand or Cement, Lime and Sand	40
7. Plaster Reinforcement	40
8. Ashlar stone masonry	40
9. Dimensions of masonry	40
Solid Units	40
Hollow Units	40
Equivalent thickness	40
Cavity Walls	41
Cavity Walls of Different Materials	41
10. Height-to-thickness ratio of certain walls	41
11. Slenderness ratio of masonry	41
Maximum Value	41
Calculation	41
12. Protection to Masonry Reinforcement	41
13. Increase in Thickness by Plastering	41
General	41
Walls	42
14. Concrete Slabs Beams Walls and Columns	42

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Structural Adequacy Criterion	42
Integrity Criterion	44
Insulation Criterion	44
15. Gypsum-Perlite Or Gypsum-Vermiculite Plaster On Metal Lath	45
Walls	45
Columns	45
Beams	45
16. Exposure of Columns and Beams	45
Columns	45
Beams	45
17 Filling of Column Spaces	45
18. Reinforcement for Column and Beam Protection	46
Masonry	46
Structural Concrete	46
Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite Plaster Sprayed to Contour	46
19 Thickness of Column and Beam Protection	47

1. Scope

This Specification sets out the procedure for determining the Fire Resistance Level, FRL of structural members and other building elements.

2. Rating

A *building element* has a FRL if:

- (a) it is listed in, and complies with Table 1 of this Section;
- (b) it is identical with a prototype that has been submitted to the *Standard Fire Test* and the FRL achieved by the prototype is confirmed in a report from a *Registered Testing Authority* which:
 - (i) describes the method and condition of test and the form of construction of the tested prototype in full; and
 - (ii) certifies that the application of restraint to the prototype complied with the *Standard Fire Test*;
- (c) it differs in only a minor degree from a prototype tested under (b) and the FRL attributed to the structural member is confirmed in a report from a *Registered Testing Authority* which:
 - (i) certifies that the structural member is capable of achieving the FRL despite the minor departures from the tested prototype; and
 - (ii) describes the materials, construction and conditions of restraint which are necessary to achieve the FRL;
- (d) it is designed to achieve the FRL in accordance with
 - (i) AS 4100, AS/NZS 2327 and AISC Guidelines for Assessment of Fire Resistance of Structural Steel Members if it is a steel or composite structure; or
 - (ii) AS 3600 if it is a concrete structure; or
 - (iii) AS 1720.4 if it is a solid or glued-laminated timber structure.
- (e) the FRL is determined by calculation based on the performance of a prototype in the *Standard Fire Test* and confirmed in a report in accordance with clause 3.

3. FRLs determined by calculation

If the FRL of a building element is determined by calculation based on a tested prototype:

- (a) the building element may vary from the prototype relation to
 - (i) length and height if it is a wall;
 - (ii) height if it is a column;
 - (iii) span if it is a floor, roof or beam;
 - (iv) conditions of support; and
 - (v) to a minor degree, cross-section and components.
- (b) the report must demonstrate by calculation that the building element would achieve the FRL if it is subjected to the regime of the *Standard Fire Test* in relation to-
 - (i) *structural adequacy* (including deflection);
 - (ii) integrity and
 - (iii) insulation; and
- (c) the calculations must take into account:
 - (i) the temperature reached by the components of the prototype and their effects on strength and modulus of elasticity;
 - (ii) appropriate features of the building element such as support, restraint, cross-sectional profile, length, height, span, slenderness ratio, reinforcement, ratio of surface area to mass per unit length, and fire protection;
 - (iii) features of the prototype that influenced its performance in the *Standard Fire Test* although these features may not have been taken into account in the design for dead and live load;

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

- (iv) features of the conditions of test, the manner of support and the position of the prototype during the test, that might not be reproduced in the building element if it is exposed to fire; and
- (v) the design load of the building element in comparison with the tested prototype.

4. Interchangeable materials

- (a) Concrete and plaster: The FRL achieved with any material of Group A, B, C, D or E as an ingredient in concrete or plaster, applies equally when any other material of the same group is used in the same proportions:
 - Group A: Any Portland cement.
 - Group B: Any lime.
 - Group C: Any dense sand.
 - Group D: Any dense calcareous aggregate, including any limestone or any calcareous gravel.
 - Group E: Any dense siliceous aggregate, including any basalt diorite, dolerite, granite, granodiorite or trachyte.
- (b) Perlite and vermiculite: The FRL achieved with either gypsum perlite plaster or gypsum-vermiculite plaster applies equally for both plasters.

5. Columns covered with lightweight construction

- (a) A column protected by lightweight construction to achieve an FRL which passes through a *building element* that is required to have an FRL or a resistance to the incipient spread of fire, must be installed using a method and materials identical with a prototype assembly of the construction which has achieved the required FRL or resistance to the incipient spread of fire.
- (b) Sealing at floor level: A plug of *non-combustible* material must seal all voids at each floor level, including voids between the column and its covering if:
 - (i) a steel column extends through 2 or more storeys; and
 - (ii) the fire-resisting covering is not in continuous contact with the column.
- (c) Protection against injury: If the fire-resisting covering of a steel column is lightweight construction:
 - (i) the covering must be protected by metal or other suitable material if the column is liable to damage from the movement of vehicles, materials or equipment; and
 - (ii) the voids must be filled solid with *non-combustible* material to a height of not less than 1.2m above the floor level to prevent indenting, if the covering is not in continuous contact with column; and

Table 1: FRLs Deemed to be Achieved by Certain Building Element

Building	Thickness of principle material (mm)				
Element	60/60/60	90/90/90	120/120/120	180/180/180	240/240/240
WALL					
Masonry					
Ashlar	-	-	-	-	300
Calcium silicate	Refer AS 3700				
Concrete	Refer AS 3700				
Fired clay (inc terracotta)	Refer AS 3700				
Concrete					

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Building	Thickness of principle material (mm)				
Element	60/60/60	90/90/90	120/120/120	180/180/180	240/240/240
No-fines	-	-	-	150	300
Prestressed	Refer AS 3600				
Reinforced	Refer AS 3600				
Plain	-	-	-	150	170
Solid gypsum blocks	75	90	100	110	125
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum vermiculite - plaster on metal lath and channel (non- loadbearing wall s only)	50	50	65	-	-
CONCRETE COLUMN					
Prestressed	Refer AS 3600				
Reinforced	Refer AS 3600				
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN					
(Including a fabricated column) exposed on no more than 3 sides: Fire protection of					
Concrete — Cast in-situ— loadbearing	25	30	40	55	75
Concrete — Cast in-situ— non-loadbearing unplastered	25	30	40	50	60
Concrete — Cast in-situ— plastered 13mm—	25	25	30	40	50
Gypsum — Cast in-situ—	-	-	-	-	50
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum- vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour	20	25	35	50	55
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum- vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath	20	20	25	35	45
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN					

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Building	Thickness of principle material (mm)				
Element	60/60/60	90/90/90	120/120/120	180/180/180	240/240/240
(Including a fabricated column) exposed on no more than 3 sides and with column spaces filled: Fire protection of					
Solid calcium-silicate masonry	50	50	50	50	65
Solid clay masonry	50	50	50	65	90
Solid concrete masonry	50	50	50	65	90
Solid gypsum blocks	50	50	50	50	65
Hollow terracotta blocks—					
plastered 13mm	50	50	50	65	90
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN					
(Including a fabricated column) exposed on no more than 3 sides and with column spaces unfilled: Fire protection of					
Solid calcium-silicate masonry	50	50	50	-	-
Solid clay masonry	50	50	65	-	-
Solid concrete masonry	50	50	65	-	-
Solid gypsum blocks	50	50	50	-	-
Hollow terracotta blocks—					
plastered 13mm	50	50	65	-	-
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN					
(Including a fabricated column) exposed on 4 sides: Fire protection of					
Concrete — Cast in-situ— loadbearing	25	40	45	65	90
Concrete — Cast in-situ— non-loadbearing – unplastered	25	30	40	50	65
Concrete — Cast in-situ— plastered 13mm—	25	25	30	40	50
Gypsum — Cast in-situ—	-	-	-	-	50
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum-	25	30	40	55	65

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Building	Thickness of principle material (mm)				
Element	60/60/60	90/90/90	120/120/120	180/180/180	240/240/240
vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour					
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath	20	20	30	40	50
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN					
(Including a fabricated column) exposed on 4 sides and with column spaces filled: Fire protection of					
Solid calcium-silicate masonry here	50	50	50	65	75
Solid clay masonry	50	50	50	75	100
Solid concrete masonry	50	50	50	75	100
Solid gypsum blocks	50	50	50	65	75
Hollow terracotta blocks—plastered 13mm	50	50	50	75	100
HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN					
(Including a fabricated column) exposed on 4 sides and with column spaces unfilled: Fire protection of					
Solid calcium-silicate masonry here	50	50	50	-	-
Solid clay masonry	50	50	65	-	-
Solid concrete masonry	50	50	65	-	-
Solid gypsum blocks	50	50	50	-	-
Hollow terracotta blocks—plastered 13mm	50	50	65	-	-
BEAM					
Concrete —					
Prestressed	Refer AS 3600				
Reinforced	Refer AS 3600				
Hot-rolled Steel (Including an open-web joist girder truss etc) exposed on no more than 3 sides: Fire protection of					

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Building	Thickness of principle material (mm)				
Element	60/60/60	90/90/90	120/120/120	180/180/180	240/240/240
Concrete — Cast in-situ—	25	30	40	50	65
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum- vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour	20	25	35	50	55
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum- vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath	20	20	25	35	45
Hot-rolled Steel (inc. an open-web joist girder truss etc) exposed on 4 sides: Fire protection of					
Concrete — Cast in-situ—	25	40	45	60	90
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum- vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour	25	30	40	55	65
Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum- vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath	20	20	30	40	50
FLOOR, ROOF OR CEILING					
Concrete —					
Prestressed	Refer AS 3600				
Reinforced	Refer AS 3600				

Annexure to Table 1

1. Scope

This Specification sets out the descriptions of elements referred to in Specification A5.3, Table 1.

2. Mortar for masonry

Masonry units of ashlar, calcium silicate, concrete or fired clay (including terracotta blocks) must be laid in cement mortar or composition mortar complying with the relevant provisions of AS 3700.

3. Gypsum blocks

Gypsum blocks must be laid in gypsum-sand mortar or lime mortar.

4. Gypsum-sand mortar and plaster

Gypsum-sand mortar and gypsum-sand plaster must consist of either—

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

- (a) not more than 3 parts by volume of sand to 1 part by volume of gypsum; or
- (b) if lime putty is added, not more than 2.5 parts by volume of sand to 1 part by volume of gypsum and not more than 5% of lime putty by volume of the mixed ingredients.

5. Gypsum-perlite and Gypsum-vermiculite Plaster

Gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster must be applied:

- (a) in either one or 2 coats each in the proportions of 1m³ of perlite or vermiculite to 640 kg of gypsum if the required thickness of the plaster is not more than 25 mm; and
- (b) in 2 coats if the required thickness is more than 25 mm, the first in the proportion of 1m³ of perlite or vermiculite to 800 kg of gypsum and the second in the proportion of 1m³ perlite or vermiculite to 530 kg of gypsum.

6. Plaster of Cement and Sand or Cement, Lime and Sand

Plaster prescribed in Table 1 must consist of:

- (a) cement and sand or cement, lime and sand; and
- (b) may be finished with gypsum, gypsum- sand, gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster or with lime putty.

7. Plaster Reinforcement

If plaster used as fire protection on walls is more than 19 mm thick

- (a) it must be reinforced with expanded metal lathe that:
 - (i) has a mass per unit area of not less than 1.84 kg/m;
 - (ii) has not fewer than 98 meshes/m; and
 - (iii) is protected against corrosion by galvanising or other suitable method; or
- (b) 13mm x 13mm x 0.710 mm galvanised steel wire mesh; and
- (c) the reinforcement must be securely fixed at a distance from the face of the wall of not less than 1/3 of the total thickness of the plaster.

8. Ashlar stone masonry

Ashlar masonry must not be used in a part of the building containing more than 2 storeys, and must not be of—

- (a) aplite, granite, granodiorite, quartz dacite, quartz diorite, quartz porphyrite or
- (b) quartz porphyry, conglomerate, quartzite or sandstone; or
- (c) chert or flint; or
- (d) limestone or marble

9. Dimensions of masonry

The thickness of concrete masonry is calculated as follows:

Solid Units

For masonry in which the amount of perforation or coring of the units does not exceed 25% by volume (based on the overall rectangular shape of the unit) the thickness of the wall must be calculated from the manufacturing dimensions of the units and the specified thickness of the joints between them as appropriate.

Hollow Units

For masonry in which the amount of perforation or coring of the units exceeds 25% by volume (based on the overall rectangular shape of the unit) the thickness of the wall must be calculated from the equipment thicknesses of the units and the specified thickness of the joints between them as appropriate.

Equivalent thickness

The equivalent thickness of a masonry unit is calculated by dividing the net volume by the area of one vertical face.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Cavity Walls

The thickness of a cavity wall is the sum of the thicknesses of the leaves determined in accordance with 9.a and/or 9.b as appropriate.

Cavity Walls of Different Materials

If the 2 leaves of a cavity wall are of units of different type, the thickness required is that listed for the less fire-resistant material (i.e., the greater thickness).

10. Height-to-thickness ratio of certain walls

The ratio of height between lateral supports to overall thickness of a wall of ashlar, no-fines concrete, unreinforced concrete, solid gypsum blocks, gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath and channel, must not exceed—

- (a) 20 for a loadbearing wall; or
- (b) 27 for a non-loadbearing wall.

11. Slenderness ratio of masonry

Maximum Value

The slenderness ratio of a masonry wall must not exceed the appropriate value in Table AX.1.

Calculation

The slenderness ratio of a masonry wall is calculated in accordance with AS 3700. In the case of cavity walls, it is calculated for each leaf separately. Each leaf must satisfy **Error! Reference source not found..**

Table 11.1 Maximum Slenderness Ratios for Masonry Walls

Type of unit	60/60/60	90/90/90	120/120/120
Concrete in which the basalt content of the aggregate is:			
Less than 45%	18	17	16
45% or more	22.5	21	19.5
Reinforced masonry – all types of unit designed for:			
Axial forces and flexure	27	27	27
Flexure with super-imposed axial forces less than 5% of load capacity	36	36	36

12. Protection to Masonry Reinforcement

In a building element of reinforced masonry designed for fire-resistance, the distance from the surface of the element to the surface of the reinforcement must not be less than:

- for FRL 60/60/60 or 90/90/90 - 30 mm;
- for FRL 120/120/120 - 40 mm;

13. Increase in Thickness by Plastering

General

The tabulated thicknesses are those of the principal material. They do not include the thickness of plaster which must be additional to the listed thickness of the material to which it is applied.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Walls

If a wall of concrete masonry is plastered on both sides to an equal thickness, the thickness of the wall for the purposes of Table 1 may be increased by the following proportions of the thickness of the plaster on one side:

- For concrete masonry in which the aggregate is of a density in excess of 1800 kg/m²: 100%
- For concrete masonry in which the aggregate is of a density between 1600 and 1800 kg/m²: 85%
- For concrete masonry in which the aggregate is of a density less than 1800kg/m² : 75%

14. Concrete Slabs Beams Walls and Columns

The requirements to meet specific values of FRL are those contained in AS 3600. However, for simple structures, the following procedures may be adopted.

Structural Adequacy Criterion

Table 14.1A gives the minimum dimensions for meeting specific levels of *structural adequacy* for:

Solid or Hollow-Core Plain Slabs

The clear cover to the longitudinal reinforcement or tendons. A slab is continuous if it is flexurally-continuous along at least one edge under the imposed loads.

Ribbed Slabs with Ribs Spaced at not more than 1200mm Centre to Centre

the minimum width of the rib and the clear cover to the reinforcement or tendons of the ribs. The slabs spanning the ribs may be treated as plain slabs as at (a).

Beams

The upper surface of the beams must be integral with a slab or protected by one.

the minimum width of web (rectangular or uniformly tapering cross-section) and the clear cover to the reinforcement or tendons.

Solid or Hollow-Core Vertical Walls

The clear cover to the reinforcement or tendons. The effective thickness of the wall must be at least equal to that given in Table 6.3 for the FRL for the *insulation* criterion equal in period to the *required structural adequacy* criterion. In addition, the slenderness ratio must not exceed the values given in Table 14.1B

Columns which are:

Exposed on all sides of fire; built into or form part of a wall that does not have a fire separating function; built into or form part of a wall that has a lower value of *structural adequacy* than *required* for the column; or built into and protrude by a distance in excess of the value of the clear cover to the longitudinal reinforcement:

The minimum cross-sectional dimension and the clear cover to the reinforcement.

Table 14.1 A FRL - Requirements for Structural Adequacy Criterion

Building element	FRL (Minutes)			
	30	60	90	120
Plain Slabs				
Simply supported one-way, clear cover (mm) to:				
Reinforcement	15	20	25	30
Tendons	20	25	35	40
Simply supported two-way, clear cover (mm) to:				
Reinforcement	15	15	20	25

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Building element	FRL (Minutes)			
	30	60	90	120
Tendons	15	20	30	35
Continuous one-way and two-way, clear cover (mm) to:				
Reinforcement	10	15	15	15
Tendons	15	20	25	25
Ribs of plain slab min. width x clear cover (mm) x (mm)				
Simply-supported one-way and two-way ribbed slabs				
Reinforcement	80x15	110x25	135x35	150x45
Tendons	80x25	110x35	135x45	150x55
Continuous one way and two-way ribbed slabs min. width x clear cover (mm) x (mm)				
Reinforcement	70x15	75x20	110x25	125x35
Tendons	70x25	75x30	110x35	125x45
Beams min. width of web (mm) x clear cover (mm) Simply supported:				
To reinforcement	75x20	120x30 or 150x25 or 240x20	150x45 or 200x35 or 300x30 or 500x25	200x55 or 240x45 or 360x40 or 600x33
To tendon	75x25	120x35 or 150x30 or 240x25	150x55 or 200x45 or 300x40 or 500x35	200x65 or 240x55 or 360x50 or 600x43
Continuous:				
To reinforcement	75x20	120x20	150x25 or 200x20	200x35 or 240x25 or 380x20

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

Building element	FRL (Minutes)			
	30	60	90	120
To tendon	75x25	120x25	150x35 or 200x30	200x45 or 240x35 or 380x30
Vertical wall Clear cover in mm				
To reinforcement	20	20	30	40
To tendon	30	30	30	30
Note: vertical walls must also satisfy the requirements of Table 6.1B				
Columns min. cross-clear sectional x cover dimension (mm)x(mm)				
To reinforcement	150x10	200x20 or 240x15	250x35 or 300x25	300x45 or 400x35

Table 14.1 b Maximum allowable slenderness ratio for concrete walls

Ratio of design axial force to the product of gross cross-sectional area and the characteristic compressive cylinder strength at 28 days	Corresponding maximum value of slenderness ratio (effective height/thickness)
0.0	50
0.005	35
0.03	20
0.10	15
Notes: 1. Values in between can be interpolated. 2. Design axial force = 1.1 dead load +0.6 live load including impact. 3. The characteristic compressive strength in MPa is generally expressed as the grade of the concrete.	

Integrity Criterion

This criterion is relevant only for slabs and walls and not for ribs, beams and columns. It is satisfied if the criteria for *structural adequacy* and *insulation* are *met* for the period equal to that *required* for the *integrity* of the slab or wall as appropriate.

Insulation Criterion

This criterion is also relevant only for slabs and walls. It is met by meeting the requirement for minimum effective thickness as given in Table 6.3. The effective thickness of solid slabs and walls is the actual thickness. The effective thickness of hollow core slabs and walls is the value of the nett cross-sectional area divided by the width of the cross-section. With hollow core slabs and walls the

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

thickness of concrete between voids and between any part of a void and the nearest surface must be not less than 25 mm or 20% of the effective thickness of the slab.

Table 14.3 Minimum Effective Thickness for Insulation

FRL for insulation criterion minute	Effective thickness mm
30	60
60	80
90	100
120	120

15. Gypsum-Perlite Or Gypsum-Vermiculite Plaster On Metal Lath

Walls

In walls fabricated of gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath and channel: the lath must be securely wired to each side of 19 mm x 0.44 kg/m steel channels (used as studs) spaced at not more than 400 mm centres; and the gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster must be applied symmetrically to each exposed side of the lath.

Columns

For the fire protection of steel columns with gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite on metal lath; the thickness of the plaster must be measured from the back of the lath; the lath must be fixed at not more than 600 mm centres vertically to steel furring channels, and

- if the plaster is to be 35 mm thick or more -at least 12 mm clear of the column; or
- if the plaster is to be less than 35 mm thick - at least 6 mm clear of the column; or
- the plaster may be applied to self-furring lath with furring dimples to hold it not less than 10 mm clear of the column.

Beams

For the fire protection of steel beams with gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite on metal lath -

- the lath must be fixed at not more than 600 mm centres to steel furring channels and at least 20 mm clear of the steel;
- the thickness of the plaster must be measured from the back of the lath.

16. Exposure of Columns and Beams

Columns

A column incorporated in or in contact on one or more sides with a wall of solid masonry or concrete at least 100 mm thick may be considered to be exposed to fire on no more than 3 sides.

Beams

A beam, open-web joist, girder or truss in direct and continuous contact with a concrete slab or a hollow block floor or roof may be considered to be exposed to fire on no more than 3 sides

17 Filling of Column Spaces

Steel columns are deemed to have FRLs of more than 120/-/, the spaces between the fire-protective material and the steel (and any re-entrant parts of the column itself) must be filled solid with a fire-protective material like concrete or grout.

SECTION A -GENERAL PROVISIONS

18. Reinforcement for Column and Beam Protection

Masonry

Concrete masonry for the protection of steel columns must have steel-wire or mesh reinforcement in every second course and lapped at the corners.

Structural Concrete

If a steel column or a steel beam is to be protected with structural concrete:

the concrete must be reinforced with steel-wire mesh or steel-wire binding placed about 20 mm from its outer surface; and

for concrete less than 50 mm thick, the steel wire must be -

- at least 3.15 mm in diameter; and
 - spaced at not more than 100 mm vertically; or
- for concrete not less than 50 mm thick, the steel wire must be either -
- of a diameter and spacing in accordance with (b); or
 - at least 5 mm in diameter and spaced at not more than 150 mm vertically.

Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite Plaster Sprayed to Contour

If a steel column or steel beam is protected with either gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour and the construction falls within the limits of Table 10.3, the plaster must be reinforced with -

- expanded metal lath complying with Clause 1.4; or
- galvanised steel mesh complying with Clause 1.4.

The reinforcement must be placed at a distance from the face of the plaster of at least 1/3 of the thickness of the plaster and must be securely fixed to the column or beam at intervals of not more than the relevant listing in Table 10.3.

For the purposes of Table 10.3 -

- "vertical" includes a surface at not more than 10° to the vertical;
- "horizontal" includes a surface at not more than 100 to the horizontal; and
- "underside" means the underside of any horizontal or non-vertical surface.

Table 18.3 Reinforcement of Gypsum-Perlite or Gypsum-Vermiculite Plaster Sprayed to Contour

Surface to be protected	Reinforcement required if smaller dimension of surface exceeds (mm)	Max spacing of fixings of the mesh to surface (mm)
Members with H or I cross-section:		
Vertical	450	450
Non-vertical	300	300
Underside	300	300
Upper side of a horizontal surface:	Not required	
Members with other shapes		
Vertical	Any size	450
Non-vertical	Any size	300
Upper side of a horizontal surface	Not required	

19 Thickness of Column and Beam Protection

The thickness of the fire-protection to steel columns and steel beams (other than fire protection of gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath or sprayed to contour) is to be measured from the face or edge of the steel, from the face of a splice plate or from the outer part of rivet or bolt, whichever is the closest to the outside of the fire-protective construction, except that:

- if the thickness of the fire-protection is 40 mm or more, rivet heads may be disregarded; and
- if the thickness of the fire-protection is 50 mm or more -
 - (i) any part of a bolt (other than a high-tensile bolt) may be disregarded; and
 - (ii) a column splice plate within 900 mm of the floor may encroach upon the fire protection by up to a 1/4 of the thickness of the fire protection.

SPECIFICATION A4.3.2

Early Fire Hazard Test for Assemblies

1. Scope

This Specification sets out the procedures for determining the Early Fire Hazard indices of components and assemblies. These tests classify building materials, their surface finishes and furnishings according to:

- their tendencies to ignite;
- their tendencies to spread flame;
- the heat they develop once ignition has occurred; and
- their tendencies to produce smoke.

2. Form of Test

This Specification sets out the procedures for determining the Early Fire Hazard indices of components and assemblies. Form of test

Tests must be carried out in accordance with—

- for the determination of the Spread-of-Flame Index and Smoke-Developed Index — AS/NZS 1530.3; and
- for the determination of the ability to prevent ignition and to screen its core material from free air — AS 1530.4.

3. Test Specimens

Test specimens must incorporate:

- all types of joints; and
- all types of perforations, recesses or the like for pipes, light switches or other fittings, which are proposed to be used for the member or assembly of members in the building.

4. Concession

Clause 3 does not apply to joints, perforations, recesses or the like that are larger than those in the proposed application and have already been tested in the particular form of construction concerned and found to comply with the conditions of test.

5. Smaller Specimens Permitted

A testing laboratory may carry out the test at pilot scale if a specimen (which must be not less than 900 mm) will adequately represent the proposed construction in the building, but the results of that test do not apply to construction larger than limits defined by the laboratory conducting the pilot examination.

SPECIFICATION A4.5.1

Native Timbers of Vanuatu

1. Scope

This Specification lists Native Timbers that can be used in building construction.

2. Native Timbers

This Specification lists Native Timbers that can be used in building construction. To be updated by Vanuatu Forestry, MIPU, PWD

NAME	OTHER COMMON NAMES	LATIN NAME	COMMENT
------	--------------------------	---------------	---------

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Section

B



STRUCTURE

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO ALL BUILDINGS
(CLASS 1 to CLASS 10)

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES	1
BP1 Structure	1
BP2 Demolition	1
BP3 Foundations and Ground Conditions	1
BP4 Durability	1
REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	1
BRP1 Structure	1
BRP 1.1 General Requirements	1
BRP 1.2 Physical conditions / Loads	2
BRP 1.3 Design and Construction Requirements	2
BRP 1.4 Sitework and Excavation	3
BRP 1.5 Buildings in Flood Areas	3
BRP 1.6 Human Impact Against Glazing	4
BRP 2 Demolition	4
BRP 3 Foundations and Ground Conditions	4
BRP 4 Durability	4
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	6
B1 STRUCTURE	6
B1.1 General Requirements - Structure	6
B1.2 Resistance to Actions	6
B1.3 Determination of Individual Actions	6
B1.4 Structural Resistance of Materials and Forms of Construction	7
B1.5 Excavations	7
B1.6 Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas	8
B1.7 Human Impact Against Glazing	8
B2 Demolition	9
B2.1 General Requirements	9
B2.2 Applicable Standard	9
B2.3 Dangerous Buildings	9
B2.4 Hazard Prone Buildings	10
B2.5 Buildings Containing Asbestos	10
B3 Foundation and Ground Conditions	10
B3.1 General Requirements	10

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

B3.2 Sloping Ground.....	10
B3.3 Foundation Design.....	11
B3.4 Water Table Rise due to Climate Change	11
B4 Durability	11
B4.1 General Requirements	11
B4.2 Corrosivity Classification	11
B4.3 Concrete Reinforcing Steel & Cement.....	11
B4.4 Electrical.....	12
B4.5 Mechanical Equipment and Air Conditioners	12
B4.6 Window Frames.....	12
B4.7 Water Storage Tanks.....	12
B4.8 Wall Paint Systems	12

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

BP1 Structure

The Objective of this section is to

- a. Safeguard people from injury caused by structural failure; and
- b. Safeguard people from loss of amenity caused by structural behaviour; and
- c. Protect other property from physical damage caused by structural failure; and
- d. Safeguard people and property from flood hazards; and
- e. Avoid undue risk of injury to people when glazing is installed in a building.

BP2 Demolition

The Objective of this section is to

- a. Safeguard people from injury caused by demolition; and
- b. Protect other property from physical damage caused by demolition.

BP3 Foundations and Ground Conditions

The Objective of this Part is to

- a. Safeguard people from injury caused by foundation and ground failure; and
- b. Safeguard people from loss of amenity caused by foundation and ground behaviour; and
- c. Protect other property from physical damage caused by foundation failure.

BP4 Durability

- a. Ensure that a building will throughout its life continue to satisfy the other objectives of the VNBC.
- b. Building materials, components and construction methods shall be sufficiently durable to ensure that the building, without reconstruction or major renovation, satisfies the other functional statements in the VNBC throughout the life of the building.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

BP1 Structure

BP 1.1 General Requirements

(1)Buildings, building elements and sitework shall have a low probability of rupturing, becoming unstable, losing equilibrium, or collapsing during construction or alteration and throughout their lives.

(2)Buildings, building elements and sitework shall have a low probability of causing loss of amenity through undue deformation, vibratory response, degradation, or other physical characteristics throughout their lives, or during construction or alteration when the building is in use.

BP 1.2 Physical conditions / Loads

Account shall be taken of all physical conditions likely to affect the stability of building, building elements and sitework, including:

- (a) Self-weight,
- (b) Imposed gravity loads arising from use,
- (c) Temperature,
- (d) Earth pressure,
- (e) Water and other liquids,
- (f) Wind,
- (g) Fire,
- (h) Impact,
- (i) Explosion,
- (j) Reversing and fluctuating effects,
- (k) Differential movement,
- (l) Ground movement caused by swelling, shrinkage, landslip or subsidence, and site works
- (m) Construction activity,
- (n) Termites,
- (o) Vegetation,
- (p) Adverse effects due to insufficient separation from other buildings,
- (q) Influence of equipment, services, non-structural elements and contents,
- (r) Time dependent effects including creep and shrinkage,
- (s) Effects on physical conditions and loads due to climate change.

Buildings must achieve the intended design life or period of durability as per Section A7.2.

BP 1.3 Design and Construction Requirements

Due allowance shall be made for:

- (a) The consequence of failure,
- (b) The intended use of the building,
- (c) Effects of uncertainties resulting from construction activities, or the sequence in which construction activities occur,
- (d) The quality of workmanship available
- (e) The quality of materials available
- (f) The availability of appropriate construction equipment
- (g) Variation in the properties of materials and the characteristics of the site,
- (h) Changes in the characteristics of the site due to climate change,
- (i) Corrosion and durability
- (j) Accuracy limitations inherent in the methods used to predict the stability of buildings.

The design of buildings must satisfy:

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

- (a) During the design life of the building the probability of experiencing unacceptable deflections or vibrations must not exceed 5%;
- (b) The probability of structural failure must not be exceed those listed in table BP1.3.1 within the design life of the building.

Importance Level	Annual Probability of Failure	Probability of Failure over a 50-year design life
IL1	0.004%	0.2%
IL2	0.002%	0.1%
IL3	0.001%	0.05%
IL4	0.0005%	0.025%

BP 1.4 Sitework and Excavation

- (1) Sitework, where necessary, shall be carried out to:
 - a. Provide stability for construction on the site, and
 - b. Avoid the likelihood of damage to other property.
- (2) Any sitework and associated supports shall take account of the effects of:
 - a. Changes in ground water level,
 - b. Water, weather and vegetation, and
 - c. Ground loss and slumping
- (3) Any excavation shall be carried out to:
 - a. Ensure the stability of the excavation from collapse, and
 - b. Avoid the likelihood of damage to other property

BP 1.5 Buildings in Flood Areas

- (1) A building in a flood hazard area, must be designed and constructed, to the degree necessary, to the design flood level (DFL) throughout its design working life
 - a. to resist flotation, collapse or significant permanent movement resulting from action of hydrostatic, hydrodynamic, erosion and scour, wind and other actions during the design flood event (integrating sea level rise and climate change) throughout its design working life considering flood height and maximum flow velocity.
 - b. Safeguard occupants and other people against illness and injury caused by flood water affecting the building.
- (2) The actions and requirements to be considered to satisfy (1) include but are not limited to
 - a. Flood actions; and
 - b. Elevation requirements; and
 - c. Foundation and footing requirements; and
 - d. Requirements for enclosures below the flood hazard level; and
 - e. Requirements for structural connections; and
 - f. Material requirements; and
 - g. Requirements for utilities; and
 - h. Requirements for occupant egress

- i. Requirements for mould, mildew, and corrosion.
- (3) Utilities and supporting infrastructure associated with a building must be designed to reduce the effects of flood water on utilities and supporting infrastructure in the event of a flood up to the Design Flood Level (DFL)
- (4) Sanitation systems and sanitary drains must be protected from backflow so that in the event of a flood up to the Design Flood Level the effects of flood water on the building are reduced.
- (5) Electrical and Mechanical systems must be designed and located so that its ability to function effectively is not affected by a flood event up to the Design Flood Level (DFL)
- (6) Water storage and collection systems must be designed and located so that its ability to function effectively is not affected by a flood event up to the Design Flood Level (DFL)

BP 1.6 Human Impact Against Glazing

Glass installations that are at risk of being subjected to human impact must have glazing that:

- if broken on impact, will break in a way that is not likely to cause injury to people; and
- resists a reasonably foreseeable human impact without breaking; and
- is protected or marked in a way that will reduce the likelihood of human impact.

BP 2 Demolition

The demolition of buildings shall be carried out.

- a. In a way that avoids the likelihood of premature collapse,
- b. In a planned and controlled manner,
- c. In a way that minimizes dust, vibrations, noise, water, fire, smoke and fumes
- d. In a way that identifies hazardous materials and appropriately removes them
- e. Using means and methods to prevent damage to utilities, roads, and adjacent properties.

BP 3 Foundations and Ground Conditions

Foundations shall be designed, and ground conditions verified to prevent building damage, partial or total building collapse, and unacceptable building movements during its design life; and including current and future conditions/behaviour of the ground and water levels.

BP 4 Durability

Durability of building elements, building system components, and elements embedded in concrete shall be selected and/or protected to satisfy the required performance listed in Table BP4.

Table BP4– Required Performance – Durability

Durability of Building Elements
(1) Building elements must, with only normal maintenance, continue to satisfy the performance requirements of this code for the lesser of the specified intended life of the building, if stated, or: <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. the life of the building, being not less than 50 years, if:<ul style="list-style-type: none">i. those building elements (including floors, walls, and fixings) provide structural stability to the building, orii. those building elements are difficult to access or replace, or

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

<p>iii. failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would go undetected during both normal use and maintenance of the building.</p> <p>(2) 15 years if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. those building elements (including the building envelope, exposed plumbing in the subfloor space, and in-built chimneys and flues) are moderately difficult to access or replace, orb. failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would go undetected during normal use of the building but would be easily detected during normal maintenance. <p>(3) 5 years if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. the building elements (including services, linings, renewable protective coatings, and fixtures) are easy to access and replace, andb. failure of those building elements to comply with the building code would be easily detected during normal use of the building.
Durability of Building System Components
<p>(1) Individual building elements which are components of a building system and are difficult to access or replace must either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. all have the same durability, orb. be installed in a manner that permits the replacement of building elements of lesser durability without removing building elements that have greater durability and are not specifically designed for removal and replacement
Durability of Element Embedded in Concrete
<p>(1) Steel reinforcement and metallic elements embedded in concrete shall have a low rate of corrosion and shall not damage nor compromise the strength and stability of the concrete element during the intended life of the building.</p>

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

B1 STRUCTURE

B1.1 General Requirements - Structure

- (1) Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions presented below satisfy the Performance requirements;
- (2) Where a Performance solution is proposed, the relevant Performance requirements must be determined in accordance with Part A2

B1.2 Resistance to Actions

The resistance of a building or structure must be greater than the most critical action effect resulting from the different combinations of actions where:

- The most critical action effect on a building or structure is determined in accordance with B1.3 and the general design procedures contained in AS/NZS 1170.0; and
- The resistance of a building or structure is determined in accordance with B1.4.

B1.3 Determination of Individual Actions

The magnitude of individual actions must be determined in accordance with the following:

- (1) Permanent actions per AS/NZS 1170.1
- (2) Imposed actions per AS/NZS 1170.1
- (3) Wind actions per AS/NZS 1170.2, using the Cyclonic Region D (maximum) column of Table 3.1(A) for all locations in Vanuatu. Use a Climate Change Multiplier for Cyclonic Region D of $M_c = 1.08$
- (4) Earthquake Actions per NZS 1170.5, using a Hazard factor, Z , for Vanuatu as follows:

Table B1.3 – Hazard Factor Z , Vanuatu

Province	Hazard factor, Z
Malampa Province	1.4
Penama Province	1.0
Sanma Province (including Luganville City)	1.4
Shefa Province (including Port Vila City)	1.3
Tafea Province (including Lenakel Town)	1.1
Torba Province	1.0

- (5) Ashfall per AS/NZS 1170.1, using the estimated weight of dry and rain-on-ash weight;
- (6) Coastal flood, storm surge, wave action, and tsunami Actions per AS/NZS 1170.1 and/or ASCE 7 considering sea level rise.
- (7) Actions not covered above shall utilize AS/NZS 1170.1, other AS/NZS standard approved by the local authority, and/or the principles of structural mechanics.

B1.4 Structural Resistance of Materials and Forms of Construction

The structural resistance of materials and forms of construction must be determined in accordance with the following, as appropriate:

- (a) Masonry: NZS 4210 / NZS 4229 / NZS 4230
- (b) Concrete:
 - i) Concrete Construction: NZS 3101 / NZS 3109 / NZS 3124
 - ii) Post-installed and cast-in fastenings: AS 5216
 - iii) Residential slabs and footings: AS 2870
- (c) Steel Construction:
 - i) Steel Structures: NZS 3404
 - ii) Cold-formed steel structures: AS/NZS 4600
 - iii) Residential and low-rise steel framing: NASH Standard – Residential and Low-Rise Steel Framing Part 1 or Part 2
- (d) Composite steel and concrete structures: AS/NZS 4600
- (e) Aluminium construction: AS/NZS 1664.1 or AS/NZS 1664.2
- (f) Timber construction:
 - i) Timber Structures Standard: NZS 3603
 - ii) Design of timber structures: AS 1720.1 or NZS 3604
 - iii) Timber structures: AS 1684.2 or AS 1684.4
 - iv) Nail plated timber roof trusses: AS 1720.5
 - v) Particle board flooring: AS 1860
 - vi) Plywood: AS/NZS 2904, AS/NZS 2269
- (g) Piling: AS 2159
- (h) Glazing construction
 - i) Glazed assemblies: AS 2047 and AS 1288
 - ii) Glazing Standards NZS 4223
- (i) Termite Risk Management: AS 3660
- (j) Roof Construction:
 - i) Terracota: AS 4597
 - ii) Roof Tiling: AS 2050
 - iii) Metal Roofing: AS 1562.1
- (k) External Wall Cladding: No structural damage when tested to TR 440 to withstand impact from a 4 kg piece of timber of nominal cross-section 100 mm x 50 mm striking end on at a velocity of 15 m/s.
- (l) Flood Resistant construction: ASCE 24

B1.5 Excavations

The following criteria for all excavations must be satisfied.

- (a) Excavations greater than 1.5m deep must be either:
 - (i) battered back with a slope no greater than 45° on all sides, or
 - (ii) designed and certified by an appropriately qualified engineer.

(b) Excavations must be set back a minimum of 1.5m from any property boundary and batter away from the boundary with a slope of no greater than 45° unless specific permission is granted by the local authority.

B1.6 Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas

- (a) A building or structure in a flood hazard area must comply with the Australian Building Codes Board Standard for Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas dated 2012.3. and as amended as follows:
- (b) A Building or structure in a flood hazard area subjected to storm surge, coastal wave action, and tsunami must comply with AS/NZS 1170.1 and/or ASCE 7 and ASCE 24 considering sea level rise and debris action.
- (c) The Design Flood Events (DFEs) shall be based on an annual probability of exceedance of not more than 1/100, 1/50, 1/25 and/or a maximum recorded/historical flood with record length of not less than 100 years, 50 years, and 25 years respectively.
- (d) The design flood level (DFL) and Maximum flow velocity (MFV) for the Design Flood Events (DFE) for design shall be determined through an approved hazard study, approved site-specific study, historical documentation, through a formal and documented consultation process that is approved by the Authority, or as dictated by the Authority. The design flood level shall include wave height.
- (e) The flood hazard level (FHL) shall be equal to the Design flood level (DFL) for the maximum DFE plus the freeboard (300mm minimum for IL2 and 600mm minimum for IL3 and IL 4) plus the sea level rise for a median high emissions (SSP3-7.0) projection to the year of the design working life.

B1.7 Human Impact Against Glazing

Needs to be checked against the latest standard

- (a) Glazing of windows and other openings and their support systems designed only against wind loads are not safe against human impact. In order to provide for reasonable safety against injury or death resulting from glass breakage and possible falls, glazing and its support framing must be designed for the levels of risk shown in Table B1.7. The impact energy that the glass and its framing must resist for different levels of risk and for different configurations of glazing are given in Figure B1.7.
- (b) The following must be taken into account while designing glazing against human impact –
 - (i) laminated glass and toughened glass are considered to be safety glass in terms of injury potential from fragments and splinters. Wired glass and heat-strengthened glass are not safety glasses.
 - (ii) annealed or laminated glass which has minor abrasion damage or has been sand blasted on the tension face has its impact strength severely reduced.
 - (iii) the strength of glass can be substantially reduced by the lapse of time.
- (c) The barrier protection shown in Figure B1.7 must be designed to NZS 4203. The deflection of the barrier must not exceed 50% of the distance between the hand rail and the glass when a concentrated force of 1.2 kN is applied to the face of the barrier.

TABLE B1.7 Risk level for class of building for assessment of required strength of glazing

HEIGHT OF FALL IN CASE OF GLAZING FAILURE	RISK		
	HIGH	MEDIUM	LOW
More than 6m	2, 6, 9b	3,4,5,7,8,9a	-

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

3m to 6m	-	2,6, 9b	3,4,5,7,8,9a
Up to and including 3m	-	6, 9b	2,3,4,5,7,8,9a

[ADD Figure]

B2 Demolition

B2.1 General Requirements

All dangerous buildings as detailed in B2.3 or hazard prone buildings as detailed in B2.4 must either be stabilized, restored to *required* standards or be demolished. The planning and execution of demolition must:

- a) not put at risk the safety and health of the public and of the workers
- avoid damage to other properties
- avoid nuisance to others
- allow continued access to other properties, and
- prevent damage to public services / roads and allow continued operation of such services / roads.

B2.2 Applicable Standard

The performance requirements for demolition are satisfied if demolition is planned and carried out in accordance with AS 2601 *The demolition of structures*.

B2.3 Dangerous Buildings

Any building which has any of the conditions or defects described below must be deemed to be a dangerous building if such conditions or defects exist to the extent that the life, health, safety or property of the public or its occupants are endangered whenever:

- (a) any required exit is not of sufficient width or size or is not so arranged as to provide safe and adequate means of egress in case of fire or other emergency,
- (b) the stress in any materials or member due to all applicable loads, is more than 1.5 times the working stress or stresses allowed for new buildings of similar class and type of construction,
- (c) any portion of the building has been damaged by fire, earthquake, wind, flood or by any other cause, to such an extent that its structural strength or stability is materially less than it was before such catastrophe and is less by 33 percent or more than the minimum requirements for new buildings of similar class and type of construction,
- (d) any portion or member or attachment of the building is likely to fail, or to become detached or dislodged, or to collapse and thereby injure persons or damage property,
- (e) any portion of the building has suffered distortion, cracking or settlement to such an extent that walls or other structural portions have materially less resistance to winds or earthquakes than is required in the case of similar new construction,
- (f) the building or any portion of it is likely to collapse or fail to perform the intended function, as a result of -
 - (i) dilapidation, deterioration or decay,
 - (ii) faulty construction,
 - (iii) the removal, movement or instability of any portion of the ground necessary for the purpose of supporting such building,

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

- (iv) the deterioration, decay or inadequacy of its foundation; or
 - (v) any other cause.
- (g) the building exclusive of the foundation, shows 33 percent or more damage or deterioration of any supporting member or 50 percent damage or deterioration of its non-supporting members,
- (h) any building has in any non-supporting part, member or portion less than 50 percent, or in any supporting part, member or portion less than 66 percent of the -
- (i) strength, or
 - (ii) fire-resisting requirements; and
- (i)a building because of inadequate maintenance, dilapidation, decay, damage, faulty construction or arrangement, inadequate light, air or sanitation facilities, or otherwise, is likely to cause sickness or disease.

B2.4 Hazard Prone Buildings

[Add section – Discussion and Decision with TWG]

B2.5 Buildings Containing Asbestos

Where buildings will be demolished or partially demolished, asbestos shall be removed in accordance with an Asbestos Removal Control Plan prior to demolition works and disposed of in accordance with the Vanuatu Laws, Regulations, and the Vanuatu Asbestos Management Code of Practice, or other approved code of practice or standard; and in accordance with the requirements of the Approval Authority and other Authorities.

Section A – Clause A9, Prevention and Control of Asbestos sets out in detail:

- asbestos definitions,
- prohibition and prevention of asbestos, and
- removal and disposal of asbestos containing materials.

B3 Foundation and Ground Conditions

B3.1 General Requirements

Building foundations must be designed to transfer the loads derived from Section B1 to the ground.

The buildings foundations elements must be designed in accordance with the appropriate materials Standards, as given in Section B1.4.

The ground upon which the foundations are bearing shall be good ground. Good ground is defined as;

- a) Solid ground away from areas of swamp or ground likely to settle significantly when loaded, and
- b) Any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding a minimum ultimate bearing capacity of 300kPa (i.e. an allowable pressure of 100 kPa using a safety factor of 3.0).

Where the *site* is not founded on good ground, geotechnical advice shall be sought from a suitable qualified geotechnical engineer for the design of foundation systems.

B3.2 Sloping Ground

Where a building is to be constructed on sloping ground, due consideration shall be given to the stability of the ground under loading from the structure. The verticality of foundation elements shall be maintained, and the slope shall be battered and benched as *required*. Refer to Section B1.5 for excavation limitations including depth and batter requirements.

If the ground is sloped at greater than 30 degrees from the horizontal, advice shall be sought from a suitable qualified geotechnical engineer prior to the design and installation of any foundation element.

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

The potential for landslide and land slip often extends beyond the land immediately under the building. Where the adjacent land is sloped at greater than 30 degrees from the horizontal in any location within 10 m of the proposed foundations of the building, advice shall be sought from a suitable qualified geotechnical engineer prior to the design and installation of any foundation element.

B3.3 Foundation Design

For simple buildings the adequacy of foundations shall be assessed on the basis of well-established and relevant local knowledge and experience of foundation conditions in the vicinity of the proposed building.

For timber framed houses and small building's sub-structure materials and forms of construction will be satisfied if they comply with NZ3604.

For complex and multi storey buildings and public buildings of importance factor > 1 mandatory geotechnical investigation and geotechnical tests must be undertaken to determine the foundation systems as noted under clause B3.1.

B3.4 Water Table Rise due to Climate Change

The existing water table depth, projections of future water table depth due to climate change/sea level rise and other factors, and the current and future salinity of the water shall be determined. The adequacy of foundations shall be assessed, and investigations performed as required to determine if the ultimate and allowable bearing capacity will change over time, if heave/buoyancy will occur, and if there are any soil corrosivity conditions that will trigger durability requirements of the material standards during the design working life of the building or structure.

B4 Durability

B4.1 General Requirements

- (1) Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions presented below satisfy the Performance requirements for Durability.
- (2) Where a Performance solution is proposed, the relevant Performance requirements must be determined in accordance with section A2.

B4.2 Corrosivity Classification

The selection and specification of appropriate materials and protective measures shall use the following minimum corrosivity classifications in conjunction with the exposure and location requirements of these standards. The more rigorous requirements of these standards and other referenced standards shall be used

- a) ISO 9223 Environmental Severity Classification: C5 – very high
- b) AS/NZS 2728: 6
- c) AS/NZS 2312.1: C5
- d) AS/NZS 2312.2: C5
- e) NZS 3604: D
- f) New Zealand Building Code E2/AS1: Zone E
- g) For locations within X m of an active volcanic area, *[add requirements for corrosion]*

B4.3 Concrete Reinforcing Steel & Cement

- (1) Concrete reinforcing steel shall be galvanized, epoxy coated, or stainless when
 - a. concrete masonry blocks, mortar, or concrete mix design uses coral aggregate or coral sand (regardless if washed).
 - b. Concrete masonry walls are unplastered.

SECTION B -STRUCTURE

- (2) All Importance Level 3 and 4 buildings must protect normal concrete reinforcing steel bars with a galvanized protective coating in accordance with the standards listed in B4.2, of a sufficient quality and thickness as authorized by the Authority having jurisdiction; while maintaining the concrete cover requirements of the standard as if the bars were uncoated.
- (3) All structures shall use cement Type SR in compliance with AS 3972.
- (4) Concrete spacers, tie wires, and form ties shall be stainless or non-metallic.

B4.4 Electrical

- (1) All electrical conduit and junction boxes shall be non-metallic.
- (2) All electrical enclosures whether interior or exterior shall be corrosion, waterproof, and UV resistant using either coated aluminium or plastic.

B4.5 Mechanical Equipment and Air Conditioners

- (1) Mechanical Equipment and HVAC units shall coat their coils and fan blades using an epoxy coating system approved by the Authority having jurisdiction prior to placing in operation and during routine maintenance.
- (2) All exteriorly located mechanical equipment, pumps, and pipes shall be appropriately located, protected, and/or have the appropriate material specifications for its design life considering its environmental exposure and corrosivity.

B4.6 Window Frames

All metallic window frames and components shall be anodized aluminium. Connections shall be corrosion resistant.

B4.7 Water Storage Tanks

All water storage tanks and associated piping shall be UV resistant.

B4.8 Wall Paint Systems

All interior and exterior surfaces shall be painted with a mould-mildew, and UV resistant paint system that has low toxicity and low volatile organic compounds in compliance with national environmental legislation.

PART

2



**DWELLINGS AND
OUTBUILDINGS
(CLASS 1 & CLASS 10)**

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Section

DC



FIRE RESISTANCE

THIS SECTION APPLIES DWELLINGS AND
OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 & CLASS 10)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS..... 1

 OBJECTIVES 1

 REQUIRED PERFORMANCE 1

DEEMED-TO-SATIFY PROVISIONS 2

DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability..... 2

 DC1.1 External walls of Class 1 buildings 2

 DC1.2 Class 1 Buildings: Construction of external walls. 2

 DC1.3 Class 10a buildings: External walls 2

 DC1.4 Allowable encroachments 2

 DC1.5 Exceptions 2

 DC1.6 Common walls..... 2

 DC1.7 Separating floors 3

 DC1.8 Sarking-type materials 3

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

DCP1 A Class 1 or Class 10 building must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives are fulfilled:

- a) it is protected from fire in any other building; and
- b) Materials used in the construction be such that if there is a fire in the building –
 - the spread of fire and the generation of smoke and toxic gases will be minimised;
 - stability will be maintained for a period at least sufficient for the occupants to escape and to ensure the safety of fire-fighters; and
 - there will be little risk of collapse onto adjoining property.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

DCP1.1 *External walls* of Class 1 buildings, located within 1.5 m of the allotment boundary or 3 m from other buildings than of Class 10 (a) on the same allotment must –

- a) remain stable and not allow the passage of destructive heat, flames, smoke or gases through them for an hour, in the event of a fire; and
- b) not allow the passage of flames, smoke or gases through *windows* for an hour and such *windows* must not be openable.

DCP1.2 The *external wall* of a Class 10 (a) building which is less than 1.5 m away from the allotment boundary other than with a road alignment or public space must not be *combustible*.

DCP1.3 A *common wall* must –

- a) if it separates a Class 1 building from any Class other than 10 (a), remain stable and prevent the passage of destructive heat, flames, smoke or gases for an hour, in the event of a fire;
- b) if it separates a Class 1 building from a Class 10a the building on different allotment be not *combustible*.

DCP1.4 The underside of a floor separating 2 *sole-occupancy units* each being a separate domicile must not be *combustible*.

DCP1.5 Any *sarking-type* material used in a Class 1 building must have a low potential for ignition and limit the spread of fire if ignited.

DEEMED-TO-SATIFY PROVISIONS

DC1 Fire Resistance and Stability

DC1.1 External walls of Class 1 buildings

Except as permitted by Clause DC1.4 or CD1.5, an *external wall* of a Class 1 building, and any openings in that wall, must comply with clause DC1.2 if-

a) the wall is set back less than 1.5 m from an allotment boundary other than the boundary adjoining a road alignment or other public space; or

the wall is less than 3.0 m from another building on the same allotment other than a Class 10 building.

DC1.2 Class 1 Buildings: Construction of external walls.

a) *External walls* referred to in Clause DC1.1 must have a FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

b) Openings in *external walls* referred to in Clause DC1.1 must-

- be protected with fire *windows* or glass block or other construction with a FRL of at least -/60/-; and
- not be fitted with openable *windows*.

DC1.3 Class 10a buildings: External walls

An *external wall* of a Class 10a building other than an *open garage* must be of *non-combustible* construction or lined externally with *non-combustible* material if it is set back less than 1.5 m from the allotment boundary other than with a road alignment or public space.

DC1.4 Allowable encroachments

The distance from an allotment boundary or between buildings must be the shortest distance measured from the outermost point of the building or buildings concerned, except that-

a) fascia, gutters, downpipes, *non-combustible* eaves lining, and the like;

b) masonry chimney backs, flues, pipes, cooling or heating appliances or other services;

c) light fittings, electricity or gas meters, aerials or antennae;

d) pergolas or sun blinds; and

e) unroofed terraces, landings, steps or ramps, not more than 1 m in height,

and may encroach into that distance if thereby the distance to the boundary is not reduced to less than 1 m nor the distance between the buildings to less than 1.5 m.

DC1.5 Exceptions

Clause DC1.1 does not apply to-

a) an *external wall* that previously complied with this Part and is reclad, if the recladding does not reduce the distance to the boundary or building by more than 150 mm; or

b) an *open garage*.

DC1.6 Common walls

A *common wall* must-

a) be of masonry or concrete, or be fully lined with *fire-protective covering* and extend to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof or not less than 450 mm above a roof with a *combustible* lining;

- b) have a FRL of not less than 60/60/60 if it separates Class 1 buildings, or a Class 1 building and a Class 10 (a) building, on different allotments; or
- c) be lined with a *non-combustible* material if it separates Class 10a buildings on different allotments.

DC1.7 Separating floors

The underside of a floor separating *sole-occupancy units*, each being a separate domicile and located one above the other, must be lined with material with a FRL of not less than 30/30/30.

DC1.8 Sarking-type materials

Any *sarking-type material* used in a Class 1 building must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.

Section



ACCESS AND EGRESS

THIS SECTION APPLIES DWELLINGS AND
OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 & CLASS 2)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS 1

OBJECTIVES 1

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE..... 1

 DDP1 Stairways, Ramps and Exits..... 1

 DDP2 Access for People with Disabilities 1

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS 2

DD1 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS 2

 DD1.1 Treads and risers 2

 DD1.2 Curved stairs..... 2

 DD1.3 Balustrades 3

 DD1.4 Parapets on flat roofs..... 4

 DD1.5 Number of exits 4

 DD1.6 Ramp in exits 4

 DD1.7 Dimensions of exits 4

DD2 ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES 4

 DD2.1 Access to Buildings..... 4

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

The design, construction, alteration, operation, maintenance and demolition of buildings, and construction sites must:

- (a) safeguard people from injury during movement into, within, and out of buildings and sites
- (b) safeguard people from injury resulting from the movement of vehicles on the site
- (c) ensure that a person with disability is able to approach a building and site, enter it and adequately carry out activities and functions where required to be accessible.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

DDP1 Stairways, Ramps and Exits

A Class 1 or 10 (a) building must be so designed and constructed that the following are fulfilled:

- a) Stairways, ramps and passageways must be such as to provide safe passage for the users of the building.
- b) Stairways, ramps, floors and balconies, and any roof to which people normally have access, must have bounding walls, balustrades or other barriers where necessary to protect users from the risk of falling.
- c) Stairways must provide safe and reasonably comfortable dimensions for goings and risers. In any case the *pitch* of the stairway must be maintained within limits of 23° and 42°.
- e) If any ramp is used the slope must not exceed 1:12.
- f) A Class 1 building must have provision for fast *exit* during any emergency.

DDP2 Access for People with Disabilities

For Class 1, 2 and 10 buildings, it is not mandatory to provide access for people with disabilities.

If the occupants require disabled access, or the building is to be future proofed to allow disabled access, access requirements shall be as per Section ND3 of the Building

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

DD1 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

DD1.1 Treads and risers

a) A stairway must be suitable to provide safe passage in relation to the nature, volumes and frequency of likely usage.

b) A stairway in any building satisfies (a) if it has:

not more than 18 risers in each flight;

going and riser dimensions in accordance with Figure DD1.1 and Table DD1.1 that are constant throughout each flight;

- risers which do not have any openings that would allow a 100 mm sphere to pass through between the treads;
- treads which have a non-slip finish or a suitable non-skid strip near the edge of the nosing;
- treads of solid construction (not mesh or other perforated material) if the stairway connects more than 3 storeys; and
- the tread must not exceed the going by more than 20 mm.

DD1.2 Curved stairs

Curved stairs must comply with the relevant requirements of DD1.1 as well as the following:

a) For the purposes of satisfying Table DD1.1 the going must be measured:

- along half way across the width of the stair where the clear width is less than 900 mm; and
- 300 mm from each side of the stair where the clear width is 900 mm or more.

b) All steps must have the same uniform taper.

c) The going at the narrow end of the steps must be not less than 75 mm.

d) Winders are not permitted.

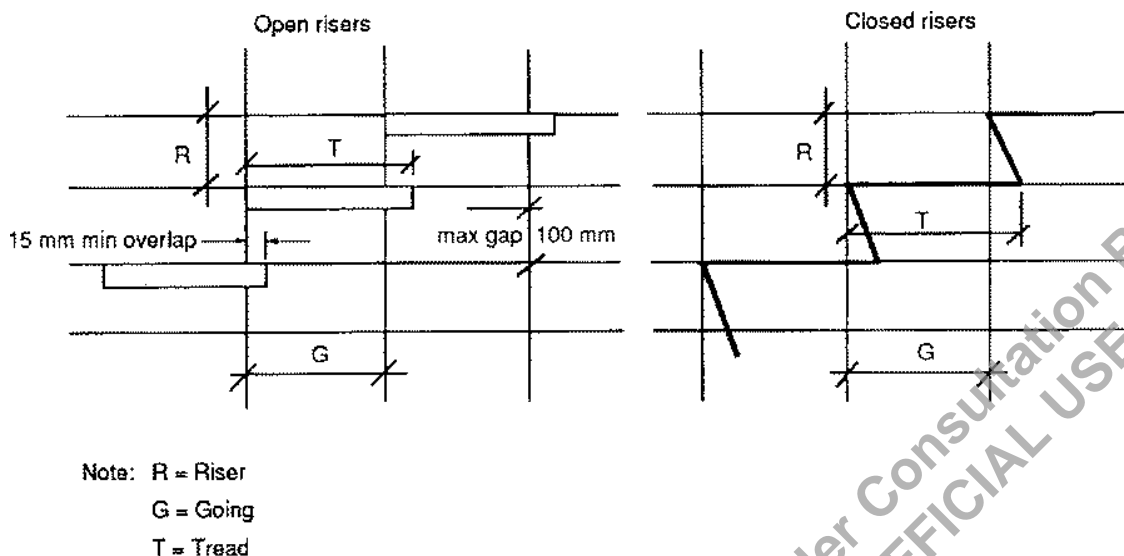


FIGURE DD1.1 MEASUREMENT OF RISER, GOING AND TREAD

TABLE DD1.1 RISER DIMENSIONS (mm) TO MATCH GOING											
Pitch	GOING (mm)										
	230	240	250	260	270	280	290	300	310	320	330
42°											
41°	200										
40°	192	200									
39°	186	194	200								
38°	180	187	195	200							
37°	173	181	188	196	200						
36°	167	174	182	188	196	200					
35°	161	168	175	182	189	195	200				
34°	155	162	168	175	182	188	195	200			
33°	149	156	162	169	175	181	188	195	200		
32°		144	156	162	168	174	181	187	194	200	
31°			150	156	162	167	174	180	186	192	198
30°				150	156	161	167	173	179	185	190
29°					150	155	161	167	173	179	183
28°						150	155	160	165	170	175
27°							148	153	158	163	168
26°								146	151	156	161
25°										149	154
24°											147
Note: Actual riser dimension may be selected to suit the inter landing height. However the value of the riser dimension must not be outside the maximum or minimum dimensions shown for each value of going.											

DD1.3 Balustrades

- a) A continuous balustrade must be provided along the side of any stairway or ramp, or any corridor, hallway, balcony, bridge or the like, if –
- it is not bounded by a wall; and
 - the change in level is more than 1 m
- b) A balustrade must prevent, as far as practicable –
- children climbing over or through it;

- persons accidentally falling from the floor; and
 - objects which might strike a person at a lower level accidentally falling from the floor surface.
- c) At balconies a balustrade satisfies (b) if –
- it has a height of not less than 930 mm above the balcony floor;
 - the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade is not more than 100 mm except where the space between the rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm;
 - all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold; and
 - it does not have any openings more than 100 mm wide within 150 mm of the floor level.
- d) In stairways and ramps (including access bridges and landings) a balustrade satisfies (b) if –
- it has a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosing of the stair treads and the floor of the landing, balcony, corridor, hallway, access bridge or the like;
 - the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade (including any openable window or panel) is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm; and
 - all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold.

DD1.4 Parapets on flat roofs

Where a flat roof or other elevated place has regular access a parapet or balustrade of not less than 1 m height above the surface of the roof or elevated place must be provided. The width of any opening in the parapet or balustrade must not exceed 100 mm.

DD1.5 Number of exits

Every Class 1 building must have two *exits*. At least one of these *exits* must provide easy means of egress in case of any emergency without security to the building. Such emergency *exits* may take the form of a trap door on an elevated floor or some such arrangement. *Windows* and other such opening used as emergency *exits* must have a minimum clear dimension of 560 mm and a minimum clear area of opening of 0.6 m². The shutter must be capable of opening to 90° to the wall. The top of the *window* sill must be no more than 900 mm from the floor inside. The height of the *window* sill from the ground or floor outside must not exceed 1800 mm.

DD1.6 Ramp in exits

A ramp may be used in place of a stairway. The gradient of any such ramp must be no steeper than 1:12.

DD1.7 Dimensions of exits

The clear minimum width of a stairway or ramp must be 760 mm. The unobstructed height throughout must be not less than 2 m.

DD2 ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

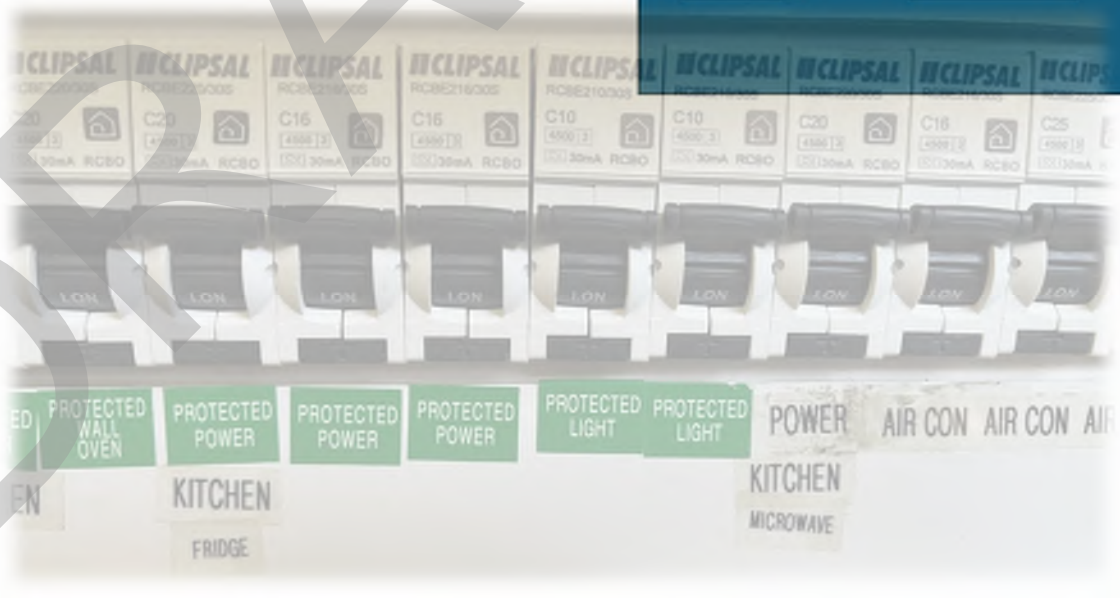
DD2.1 Access to Buildings

While for Class 1, 2, 4 and 10 buildings it is not mandatory to provide access for people with disabilities., note should be taken of the guidelines set out in the Australian Department of Foreign Affairs (DFAT): Accessibility Design Guide: Universal Design principles for Australia's Aid Program – Annex E; Housing - (Available free of charge DFAT website).

If the occupants require disabled access, or the building is to be future-proofed to allow disabled access, access requirements shall be as per Section ND3 of the Building Code.

Section

DE



ELECTRICITY

THIS SECTION APPLIES DWELLINGS AND
OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 & CLASS 10)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS.....	1
OBJECTIVES	1
DEP1 Electrical Safety	1
DEP2 Amenity	1
REQUIRED REFORMANCE.....	1
DEP1.1 Electrical safety	1
DEP2.1 Amenity	1
DEP3.1 Energy Efficiency	1
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS.....	3
DE1 ELECTRICAL SAFETY	3
DE1.1 General requirements	3
DE1.2 Plug sockets.....	3
DE1.3 Photovoltaic Energy System	3
DE2 AMENITY 3	
DE2.1 Light switch layout	3

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

All electrical work associated with a Class 1 or 10 building must meet the following objectives –

DEP1 Electrical Safety

It must prevent electrocution, burns or fire.

DEP2 Amenity

It must satisfy the reasonable expectations of the occupants by ensuring that it is adequate for their intended use, both current and anticipated.

REQUIRED REFORMANCE

DEP1.1 Electrical safety

The supply system must:

- a) have suitable devices of adequate interruptive duty to automatically shut off the supply in the event of a fault or overload. Such devices must allow easy reinstatement of the supply after interruption;
- b) have devices which are clearly identified and easily reached to isolate live parts from the incoming supply;
- c) when the neutral of the supply is earthed, have socket outlet or plug – socket adaptor construction which would ensure that the live, neutral and earth conductors can only be connected to the corresponding live, neutral and earth conductors of the plug;
- d) be adequately protected against damage arising from exposure to weather, water or excessive dampness mechanical loads and other such agents expected under normal conditions of use; and
- e) ensure that the main switch is normally accessible only to the occupants.

In cases when the power utility provider establishes a Residual Current Device (RCD) at the meter board then the MEN link must be disconnected, and the neutral earthing must be omitted on the installation side. In such a case, the neutral will only be earthed on the power utility side of the supply.

DEP2.1 Amenity

The supply system must have an adequate number of plug sockets of minimum 10 Amperes capacity to serve the reasonable anticipated needs of the occupants.

DEP3.1 Energy Efficiency

All buildings, including the operation and use of fixed appliances and building services (lighting, heating, domestic hot water, ventilation and air conditioning systems) must be designed and constructed to provide opportunities to reduce solar heat gain and promote cooling of the interior appropriate to:

- a) the function and use of the building, facility and/or site;
- b) the promotion of human comfort, health and safety in the interior environment;
- c) the safe operation of storage, handling and fabrication of products and/or hazardous substances
- d) the geographic location, topography, hydrology and natural features;
- e) buildings, facilities, site works and site servicing on adjacent property, and
- f) be environmental sustainability

SECTION DE – ELECTRICITY

Key Energy Efficiency aspects should align with the Vanuatu National Policy (NEESAP), the URA Regulation and Vanuatu Electricity Supplies Act and the SIEAPI Guidelines on Energy Efficiency.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

DE1 ELECTRICAL SAFETY

DE1.1 General requirements

All electrical wiring and installations in or on any class 1 and 10 building must ensure safety from electric shock and fire. This requirement is satisfied if all electrical work associated with the building is done to comply with AS/NZS 3000 – Electrical installations – buildings, structures and premises (known as the SAA Wiring Rules) The capacity of the system must allow for the long term anticipated requirements of the occupants.

DE1.2 Plug sockets

Plug sockets must:

- a) have their individual switch;
- b) be located so that
 - cords need not be taken across doorways;
 - trailing cords do not have to cross circulation routes;
- c) not be located behind door-swings; and
- d) in the kitchen be located 250 mm above worktops at the back of benches or on a return wall where it exits.

DE1.3 Photovoltaic Energy System

All photovoltaic energy systems shall fully comply with the requirements of AS/NZS 5033. Photovoltaic panel systems shall be fixed to the main structure of the building. Fixings shall be designed in accordance with the requirements of Section B – Structure.

DE2 AMENITY

DE2.1 Light switch layout

The layout of light switches must follow the main nighttime circulation routes such as from the entrance hall to the living area to the bed-rooms to the bathroom and toilet. Crossing any major space in the dark must be avoided. The switches must be located close to door openings.

Section

DF



HEALTH AND AMENITY

THIS SECTION APPLIES DWELLINGS AND
OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 & CLASS 2)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES 1	
DFP1 Design and construction	1
REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	1
DFP 1.1 Damp and weatherproofing	1
DFP1.2 Cooking and sanitary facilities	1
DFP1.3 Room sizes	1
DFP1.4 Light and ventilation	1
DFP1.5 Water supply plumbing	2
DFP1.6 Sanitary plumbing and drainage and disposal	2
DFP1.7 Roof drainage	2
DFP1.8 Site drainage	2
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	3
DF1 Damp and Weatherproofing	3
DF1.1 Floor levels and site drainage	3
DF1.2 Building on land subject to dampness or flooding	3
DF1.3 Drainage of land external to building	3
DF1.4 Weatherproofing of roofs and walls	3
DF1.5 Pliable roof sarking	3
DF1.6 Water proofing and wet areas in buildings	3
DF1.7 Damp-proof course and mortars	4
DF1.8 Acceptable damp-proof courses	4
DF1.9 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground	4
DF2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities	5
DF2.1 Facilities required	5
DF3 Room Sizes and Heights	6
DF3.1 Height of rooms	6
DF3.2 Reduced height permissible	6
DF3.3 Ceiling fans	6
DF 4 Light and Ventilation	7
DF4.1 Provision of natural light	7
DF4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting	7
DF4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room	7
DF4.4 Artificial lighting	7

SECTION DF – HEALTH AND AMENITY

DF4.5 Ventilation of rooms	7
DF4.6 Natural ventilation	7
DF4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room	7
DF4.8 Restriction on position of WCs and urinals	8
DF4.9 Airlocks	8
DF4.10 Sub-floor ventilation	8
DF 4.11 Indoor Air Quality	9
DF 4.12 Room Temperature	9
DF 4.13 Ventilation	9
DF4.14 Air Conditioning	10
DF4.15 Mould Prevention	10
DF5 Water Supply Plumbing	12
DF5.1 General Requirements	12
DF5.2 Means of Compliance	12
DF5.3 Pipe Materials	12
DF5.3 Pipes which are not easy to access	12
DF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters	12
DF5.5 Rainwater storage	12
DF 6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage	13
DF6.1 General	13
DF6.2 Means of Compliance	14
DF6.3 Fixture Unit Ratings	14
DF6.4 Trapping of Fixtures and Appliances	15
DF6.5 Fixture Discharge Pipes	15
DF6.6 Unvented Branch Drains	15
DF6.7 Venting	17
DF 6.8 Design of Pipes and Drains	19
DF6.9 Gully Traps other than Floor Waste Gullies	22
DF6.10 Floor Waste Gullies	22
DF6.11 Inspection Openings	23
DF7 Sanitary Disposal	27
DF7.1 Specific requirements	27
DF7.2 Means of compliance	27
DF8 Roof Drainage	28
DF8.1 Design of roof gutters	28
DF8.2 Design of downpipes	29

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

SECTION DF – HEALTH AND AMENITY

DF8.3 Incompatible metals for gutters	29
DF9 Rainwater Storage.....	30
DF 9.1 Introduction.....	30
DF 9.2 Relationship of rainfall, variability, roof area and storage volume	30
DF 9.3 Design	30
DF 9.4 Effect of roofing material and the environment.....	31
DF 9.5 Tank material.....	31
DF 9.6 Erection of rainwater tanks	32
DF9.7 Maintenance requirements	32

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATION DF7.1: Sanitary Systems

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

DFP1 Design and construction

The design and construction of a Class 1 building must meet the following objectives:

- a) freedom from unhealthy and uncomfortable damp and wet conditions
- b) proper facilities for the preparation and cooking of food and the cleaning of utensils
- c) adequate facilities for personal washing and the washing of clothes
- d) hygienic toilet facilities with adequate privacy and which will not be a nuisance to anyone or the environment
- e) sufficient living space for privacy and comfort
- f) adequate light and ventilation consistent with the requirements of health hygiene and comfort
- g) where a public or private water supply exists, an appropriate safe and hygienic system of plumbing for the supply of water for domestic needs
- h) where a reticulated system of water supply is installed in the building, an appropriate system of drainage for the hygienic conveyance of *sewage* and *waste water*
- i) where a roof drainage system is provided, it must give reasonable protection against the overflow of rainwater into the building; and
- j) unhealthy ponding of water in the allotment must not be allowed and the erection of the building or any *alteration* to it must not adversely affect the drainage of other allotments or of any public land.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

DFP 1.1 Damp and weatherproofing

Buildings must be so *sited* and suitable damp and weatherproofing provided where necessary to prevent:

- a) moisture or damp affecting the stability of the building
- b) the creation of any unhealthy or dangerous condition
- c) damage or defacement from moisture present at the completion of construction
- d) causing undue damage to adjoining property; or
- e) the accumulation of surface water against the building or beneath the floor.

DFP1.2 Cooking and sanitary facilities

Adequate cooking toilet and washing facilities must be provided for the occupants to allow reasonable comfort, hygiene and privacy.

DFP1.3 Room sizes

The *floor area*, plan dimensions and ceiling heights of rooms and other spaces must be adequate for living purposes.

DFP1.4 Light and ventilation

The standard of light and ventilation within building must be adequate for the occupants, having regard to health hygiene and comfort.

Buildings must be constructed to provide adequately controlled interior temperatures at a level appropriate to occupancy and use.

Habitable rooms within buildings must be provided with air that contains sufficient oxygen and limits contaminants to levels consistent with good health, safety and comfort.

Air conditioning of interior spaces must provide sufficient air movement and adequate temperature to create a comfortable living environment appropriate to the number of occupants.

DFP1.5 Water supply plumbing

- a) Plumbing for water supply must use materials which do not react with the water and thereby make it unsuitable for domestic use.
- b) Suitable precautions must be taken to ensure that unsafe or unhygienic materials have no chance of entering the supply system.
- c) The installation of hot water systems must not impair the safety of the users.
- d) All concealed and difficult-to-access plumbing work must be suitably protected so that there is no likelihood of damage and leakage.
- e) The plumbing must take into account the current and anticipated needs of the users and allow for the simultaneous use of the connected system by others.
- f) Where rainwater from the roof run off is the source of supply care must be exercised to ensure that there is no reasonable chance for the water to become contaminated.
- g) Rainwater storage allowance must be made for lean years of rainfall.

DFP1.6 Sanitary plumbing and drainage and disposal

Sanitary plumbing must be laid to self-cleansing grades consistent with their discharge loading, unless other suitable arrangements are made to ensure the system is kept free of accretion of sewerage and other waster matter.

- a) The size of *drains* and the layout of their connections must reasonably ensure the current and anticipated needs of the users. Retaining separate wastewater streams in the plumbing within buildings is encouraged to enable greater flexibility for hygienic disposal.
- b) The connections to sanitary installations must ensure that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions and are suitably vented.

DFP1.7 Roof drainage

The roof drainage system must be capable of handling peak intensities of rainfall as follows:

- Eaves gutters and downpipes - a 20 year return intensity.
- Internal box gutters, valley gutters and downpipes - a 100 year return intensity.

Any known local variation in rainfall intensity must be taken into account. Sufficient allowance must be made for the possibility of overflow into the building due to ripples and turbulence in the flowing water during cyclonic winds.

DFP1.8 Site drainage

- a) The immediate *site* around the building must have suitable drainage so that no ponding results.
- b) Visible water must not be allowed to remain under or around for more than 1 hour after 10 minutes of maximum rainfall resulting from a storm with a return period of 5 years.
- c) Flood waters or waves resulting from a storm or cyclone with a return period of 30 years must not be allowed to enter a building.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

DF1 Damp and Weatherproofing

DF1.1 Floor levels and site drainage

Floor levels of all new buildings must be a minimum of 300 mm above the natural ground level and, where possible, the ground around the building must slope away from the building at a minimum fall of 1 in 100 for two metres.

The construction of a site drainage system and the position and manner of discharge of a stormwater drain must not-

- result in the entry of water into any building or other allotments;
- affect the stability of any building; or
- create any unhealthy or dangerous condition within or around any building.

DF1.2 Building on land subject to dampness or flooding

One or more of the following measures must be carried out if it is warranted by the dampness of the building *site* or proneness to flooding:

- The subsoil must be adequately drained.
- The ground under the building must be regraded or filled and provided with outlets to prevent accumulation of water.
- The surface of the ground under the building must be covered with a suitable damp-resisting material.
- The building or structure floor level shall not be less than 1000mm above the known flood level at the site plus sea level rise for a median high emissions (SSP3-7.0) projection to the design working life or the flood hazard level as per B1.6.

DF1.3 Drainage of land external to building

A suitable system of drainage must be provided if paving, excavation or any other work on an allotment will cause undue interference with the existing drainage of rainwater falling on the allotment whether the existing drainage is natural or otherwise.

DF1.4 Weatherproofing of roofs and walls

Roofs and *external walls* must be constructed to prevent rain or dampness penetrating to the inner parts of a building.

DF1.5 Pliable roof sarking

Pliable roof *sarking-type* material used under roof or wall coverings must comply and be fixed in accordance with AS/NZS 4200.

DF1.6 Water proofing and wet areas in buildings

The following parts of a building must be impervious to water:

- a) In any building – the floor surface or substrate in a shower enclosure, or within 1.5 m measured horizontally from a point vertically below the shower fitting, if there is no enclosure;
- b) The wall surface or substrate –
 - of a shower enclosure, or if the shower is not enclosed, within 1.5 m and exposed to a shower fitting, to a height of 1.8 m above the floor;
 - immediately adjacent or behind a bath, trough, basin, sink, or similar fixture, to a height of 300 mm above the fixture if it is within 75 mm of the wall.

- c) The junction between the floor and wall if the wall and floor are *required* to be impervious to water.
- d) The junction between the wall and fixture if the wall is *required* to be impervious to water.

DF1.7 Damp-proof course and mortars

Moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching –

- the lowest floor timbers and the walls above the lowest floor joists;
- the walls above the damp-proof course; and
- the underside of a suspended floor constructed of a material other than timber, and the supporting beams or girders.

DF1.8 Acceptable damp-proof courses

A damp-proof course must consist of –

- a material that complies with AS/NZS 2904; or
- suitable termite shield placed on piers; or
- other suitable material.

DF1.9 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground

If a floor of a room is laid on the ground on filling moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching the upper surface of the floor and adjacent walls by-

- the insertion of a vapour barrier in accordance with AS 2870; or
- other suitable means.

DF2 Cooking and Sanitary Facilities

DF2.1 Facilities required

Cooking and sanitary facilities must be provided as shown in Table 2.1

Table DF2.1 Provision of cooking and sanitary provisions

MINIMUM FACILITIES REQUIRED	
In all cases	a) facilities for the preparation and cooking of food, and for the cleaning of utensils. b) A suitable type of dry sanitation system as per Annexure 1 of Section DF7.1
When there is piped water supply to kitchen and ablution areas	c) a kitchen sink in a kitchen d) a shower or other adequate personal washing facilities e) clothes washing facilities f) a closet pan and facilities for washing hands with soap dispenser or soap holder as per Annexure 2 to Section DF7.1 .
Where there is piped water supply only to a tap in the kitchen or up to a stand-pipe in the vicinity of the building or where there is no piped water supply	g) a paved raised platform with a paved area and drain around it h) a suitable type of privy as per Annexure 2 to Section DF7.1
NOTE: If any of these facilities are detached from the main building, they must be set aside for the exclusive use of the occupants of the building. Where the layout allows it, facilities in d), e) and f) can be in the same room.	

DF3 Room Sizes and Heights

DF3.1 Height of rooms

Minimum heights between the ceiling and any framing excluding minor projections such as cornices, are:

- (i) Habitable room – average 2.4 and minimum of 2.1, and
- (ii) bathroom, shower room, water closet, laundry, pantry or the like – 2.1m.

DF3.2 Reduced height permissible

These heights may be reduced if the reduction does not unduly interfere with the proper functioning of the room.

DF3.3 Ceiling fans

Ceiling fans and other such appliances must be at a minimum vertical clearance of 2.1m.

DF 4 Light and Ventilation

DF4.1 Provision of natural light

Natural lighting must be provided to all *habitable rooms*.

DF4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

Direct natural lighting must be provided by *windows* that:

- a) have an aggregate light transmitting area measured excluding framing members, glazing bars or other obstructions of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room
- b) face-
 - a court or other space open to the sky; or
 - an open verandah, open carport, or the like
- c) are not less than a horizontal distance of 1 m from any boundary of an adjoining allotment that they face.

DF4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room

Natural lighting to a room may come through a glazed panel or opening from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if:

- the glazed panel or opening has an area of not less than 10% of the floor area of the room to which it provides light
- the adjoining room has *windows* with an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 10% of the combined floor areas of both rooms,

and the areas specified above may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural light is provided from another source.

DF4.4 Artificial lighting

Artificial lighting must be provided to *sanitary compartments*, bathrooms, shower rooms, airlock and laundries, if natural lighting of a standard equivalent to that *required* by DF4.2 is not available and the periods of occupation, or use of the room or space will create undue hazard to occupants seeking egress in an emergency.

DF4.5 Ventilation of rooms

A *habitable room*, *sanitary compartment*, bathroom, shower room, laundry and any other room occupied by a person for any purpose must be provided with natural ventilation complying with DF4.6. Where it is not practical to provide natural ventilation for any *sanitary compartment*, bathroom, shower or laundry, it is permissible to substitute natural ventilation with a mechanical ventilation system. In such a case the system must satisfy the requirements of AS 1668:2.

DF4.6 Natural ventilation

Required natural ventilation must be provided by permanent windows, openings, doors or other devices:

- a) with an aggregate opening or openable size not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room *required* to be ventilated; and
- b) which open to:
 - a court, or space open to the sky; or
 - an open verandah, open carport, or the like.

DF4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room

Natural ventilation to a room may come through a *window*, opening, ventilating door or other device from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if:

- the room to be ventilated or from which ventilation is borrowed is not a *sanitary compartment*
- ventilation is not borrowed from one bedroom to another or between a bedroom and the kitchen
- the *window*, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room to be ventilated; and
- the adjoining room has a *window*, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms.

Note: The ventilating areas specified may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural ventilation is provided from another source.

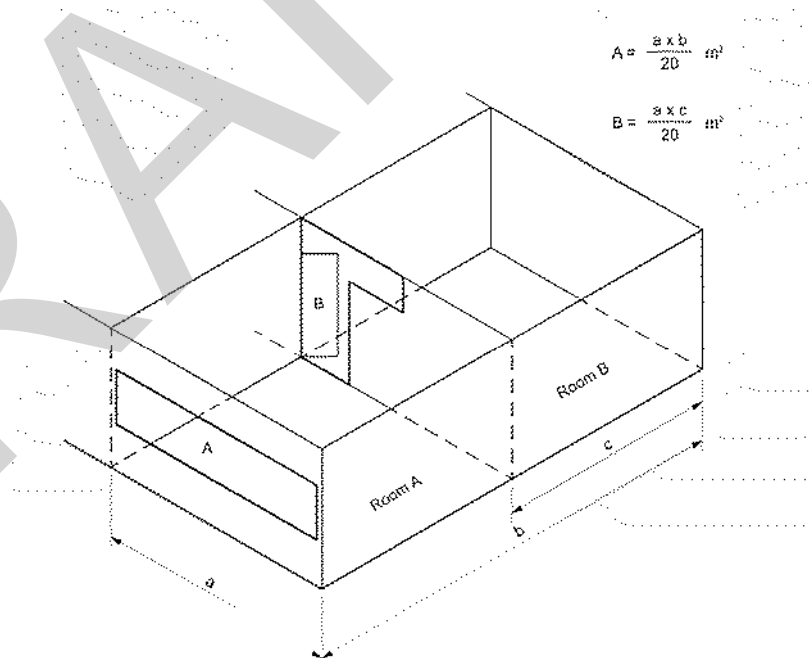


Figure 4.7 Method of determining areas of openings for borrowed ventilation

DF4.8 Restriction on position of WCs and urinals

A room containing a closet pan or urinal must not open directly into:

- a kitchen; or
- a room for storage or consumption of food, except if it is in a building containing only one *habitable room*.

DF4.9 Airlocks

If a room containing a closet pan or urinal is prohibited under DF4.8 from opening directly to another room:

- access must be by an airlock, halfway or other room; or
- the room containing the closet pan or urinal must be provided with an exhaust fan.

DF4.10 Sub-floor ventilation

Suitable provision must be made to prevent undue deterioration of the lowest floor of a building because of dampness, other conditions on the allotment or the design of the building.

The following would satisfy the requirements these provisions

a) where timber is used, the floor framing must be suspended with an absolute minimum of 250 mm and an average minimum of 400 mm clearance from the ground underneath to the floor and the immediate surrounds of the building. The average clearance must be determined as the average of the clearances at the corners of a 3 m square grid covering the building plan. Subfloor ventilation must be

provided with ventilation openings totalling not less than 3% of the peripheral vertical area between the ground and the boundary of the floor. These openings are to be spaced uniformly at not more than 1.8 m apart,

b) where other than timber is used the following must be provided:

- subfloor ventilation if the floor is suspended
- an impervious cover over the ground surface beneath the building; or
- the floor members suitably treated.

DF 4.11 Indoor Air Quality

Buildings must have a means of collecting and/or removing the following from the rooms in which they are generated:

- (a) cooking fumes and odours
- (b) excessive water vapor from laundering, utensil washing, bathing and showering
- (c) odours from sanitary and waste storage spaces
- (d) gaseous by-products and excessive moisture from Commercial or Industrial processes
- (e) poisonous fumes and gases
- (f) air-borne particles
- (g) products of combustion

Contaminated air must be disposed of in a way that avoids creating a nuisance or hazard to people and other property.

DF 4.12 Room Temperature

Achieving a comfortable indoor temperature may be achieved through any, some, or all of the following:

- (a) insulation in walls, ceilings, floors, attic spaces to prevent heat, electricity, or sound from passing into or out of a room or structure.
- (b) high performance window glazing
- (c) natural ventilation
- (d) external shading of windows and proper window coverings
- (e) high-efficiency fans in living and attic spaces
- (f) energy efficient mechanical air conditioning system

Release of heated air to the outside must be provided by the use of any, some or all of the following natural ventilation techniques, unless the building is fully air-conditioned by a mechanical system:

- (a) high ceilings (greater than 2.2 m)
- (b) windows/vents within 250 mm of the ceiling

DF 4.13 Ventilation

Ventilation systems in non-residential buildings must be equipped with:

- (a) exhaust outlets and plumbing vents a minimum of 6.0 m away from outdoor air intakes
 - (b) outdoor air intakes located at least 9.0 m away from sources of pollution including dumpsters, parking areas, driveways, loading docks, natural gas lines, wet cooling towers and garage doors / exhaust outlets
 - (c) outdoor air intakes must be protected with suitable mesh screens and filters
 - (d) roof drainage that slopes away from outdoor air intakes
- and must:
- (e) account for the demands of any fixed combustion appliances

(f) be sized and configured to accommodate future expansion of the building

Natural ventilation must consist of permanent openings, windows, doors or other devices which can be opened and are of sufficient size and appropriately placed to provide effective air circulation.

Openings must be placed on all façades, where appropriate to the function and use of the rooms, building, and must be screened to prevent entry of birds, rodents, leaves, and other similar objects.

Larger openings must be placed on the downwind, or leeward, facade, and smaller openings on the breeze, or windward, facade to promote air circulation within the building.

Non-air-conditioned buildings must have most windows consist of louvred panels or other openable panels to promote air flow, as appropriate to occupancy and use.

Enclosed attic spaces and cathedral ceilings must have adequate ventilation that:

- (a) provides adequate cross-ventilation of enclosed attic spaces and enclosed cathedral ceilings
- (b) provides exhaust fans where needed

DF4.14 Air Conditioning

A mechanical air-handling system installed in a building must control:

- (a) the circulation of objectionable odours
- (b) the accumulation of harmful contamination by micro-organisms and pathogens
- (c) be in accordance with AS 1668.2 and AS/NZS 3666.1

Air conditioning units must have an appropriate energy-savings certificate from a recognised agency, such as Energy Star and must have suitable corrosion protection for the environment it is located in.

Ducts must be appropriately sized for room-to-room cooling requirements and to maximise efficiency, with the layout designed to reduce duct length as much as possible.

Ducts must be properly sealed with low volatile organic compound (VOC) mastic so that ductwork is airtight, duct tape is not permitted.

Rooms must have adequately sized return ducts or doors that are undercut sufficiently to allow air flow to avoid any situation of negative pressure.

Effective delivery of clean supply air must be sufficiently provided to reduce the impact of pollutants generated in the interior spaces.

Mechanical air conditioning systems must have any or all of the following energy-saving equipment to control the volume of cooled air produced daily and promote energy efficiency:

- (a) variable speed controls
- (b) timer-switches for rooms to control air temperature according to time of day and use of the building
- (c) demand-controlled ventilation that adjusts outdoor air intake to maintain optimal indoor air quality
- (d) isolate fan motors from supply air streams

Mechanical air handling equipment must have:

- (a) air filtration suitable for the application required

All air conditioning systems are to undergo a commissioning process to ensure the functional and environmental performance.

DF4.15 Mould Prevention

Cross-ventilation through the building interior must be provided through appropriate layout of rooms, and placement and size of doors, windows and vents.

Buildings with air conditioning must have positive air pressure to promote proper air circulation.

Methods for prevention of water accumulation listed in DF1 above must be followed.

Stand-alone sanitary compartments not connected to a bathroom, laundry or other sanitary room must provide ventilation through either:

- (a) a window
- (b) mechanical ventilation (see Section DF4.5)

DF5 Water Supply Plumbing

DF5.1 General Requirements

The plumbing work for water supply must ensure:

- a) the appropriateness of the materials and products used
- b) the correct sizing of water services for the intended use
- c) the control of cross-connections and prevention of backflow
- d) adequate care in the installation of the services
- e) suitable provision of main and subsidiary storage as *required*
- f) adequate connections to sanitary services without endangering health and hygiene, and
- g) that the installation of hot water systems provide safe and adequate service.

DF5.2 Means of Compliance

The requirements of DF5.1 are satisfied if all plumbing for water supply is carried out to the relevant provisions of:

- AS/NZS 3500 Part 1 - Water Services and its amendments
- AS/NZS 3500 Part 4 – Heated Water Services and its amendments
- AS/NZS 2845.1 Water Supply Backflow Prevention Devices – Part 1: Materials, Design and Performance Requirements and its amendments

DF5.3 Pipe Materials

Particular attention is drawn to the provisions in AS 3500 - Parts 1 and 4 which prohibit the installation of pipes made of ABS, galvanised steel, polybutylene and UPVC in locations which are concealed or difficult to access. Pipes and fittings made of copper, copper alloy, stainless steel, ductile iron, cast iron and polyethylene must follow the special precautions specified in AS 3500 - Parts 1 and 4 when used in concealed or difficult to access locations.

DF5.3 Pipes which are not easy to access

Particular attention is drawn to the provisions in AS/NZS 3500- Parts 1 and 4 which prohibit the installation of pipes and fittings of certain materials in locations which are concealed or difficult to access. These include pipe made of ABS, galvanised steel, polybutylene and UPVC. Pipes and fittings made of copper, copper alloy, stainless steel, ductile iron, cast iron and polyethylene when used in concealed or difficult to access locations must follow the special precautions specified in AS/NZS 3500 – Part 1 and 4.

DF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters

- a) A household water heater which is installed in a building must-
 - be supported on construction sufficient to carry its full capacity weight and any possible wind or earthquake loads;
 - be positioned to enable adequate access for operation, maintenance and removal; and
 - provide suitably for any overflow, especially if installed in a concealed location.
- b) AS/NZS 3500 – Part 4 is the relevant standard for the installation of a household water heater

DF5.5 Rainwater storage

Where rainwater is collected and stored, the storage and distribution must reasonably ensure that the water is not contaminated by unsafe or unsuitable materials. The capacity of the catchment and storage must be adequate to provide a continued supply of water during years of low rainfall.

The details given in **Section DF9** meet the requirements of this clause.

DF 6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage

DF6.1 General

General Requirements

Sanitary plumbing and drainage must ensure –

- the appropriateness of the products and materials used;
- the correct sizing of drainage services for the intended use;
- adequate care in the installation of the services including the provision of appropriate grades; and
- that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions or any nuisance to anyone.

Some Common Terms

Apart from the defined terms given in A1.1 the following terms used in this Section are explained:

Nominal size (DN)

While converting to metric dimensions some manufacturers of pipes and fittings have used hard conversion whereas others have used soft conversion. For these and other reasons it is impractical to specify exact pipe and fitting dimensions. All pipes and fittings in this Section are therefore specified by their nominal size. This is indicated by the letters "DN" followed by a number.

Since this number is only an approximation of the actual size, it is not subject to exact measurement and must not be used in calculations. The nominal size is thus only a numerical designation of the size which is common to all components in a piping system (other than components such as steel tubes which are designated by their outside diameter and other components by their thread size). It is just a convenient round number for reference purposes and is only loosely related to the manufacturing dimensions.

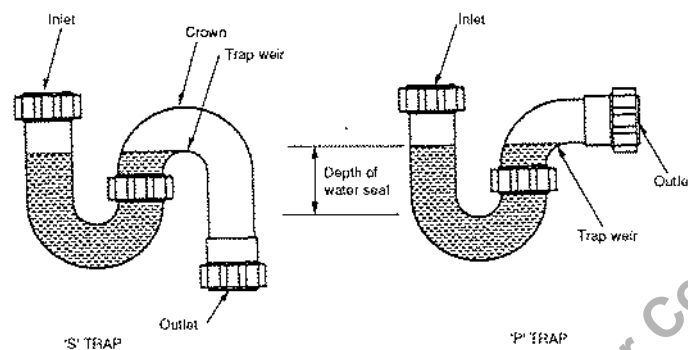
Trap

A trap is a device which retains a water seal for preventing the escape of sewer gases from sanitary plumbing. Figure DF6.1.2 shows two common types of fixture traps. There are also traps integral with gullies, water closet pans etc.

The water seal can be broken by self-siphonage or induced siphonage as well as by positive pressure of the gases breaking through the seal. It is also possible for the seal to be dried out by prolonged non-use of the associated part of the system.

The best means of preventing the loss of the seal by siphonage or by positive pressure is to vent the trap to the outside air. Air admittance valves (AAV's) may be used where atmospheric venting of a trap cannot be achieved.

Figure DF6.1.2- Examples of Fixture Traps



Fixture discharge pipe

This is the discharge pipe to which any single sanitary fixture is connected

Gullies

A gully is an assembly used for providing a water seal when handling the discharge from only *waste fixtures* and not any *soil fixture*. The water seal prevents the escape of foul gases into the building or into the atmosphere in the vicinity of the assembly.

It is a disconnector gully when it provides a separation through the water seal, between the discharge from *waste fixtures* and the rest of the sanitary system.

A floor waste gully is a disconnector gully used inside a building with a floor grating or waste outlet fitting on a riser pipe. Discharge pipes from *waste fixtures* may also connect to a floor waste gully.

An overflow relief gully functions as a self-cleaning trap and is provided with a loosely fitted grating. This allows for the relief of any possible surcharge or overflow from the *drain*. The riser of the gully may have inlets for discharge from *waste fixtures*.

DF6.2 Means of Compliance

The requirements of DF6.1 are satisfied if all sanitary plumbing and drainage works are carried out to the relevant provisions of AS/NZS 3500 - Part 2 - Sanitary plumbing and sanitary drainage, as well as this part of the Code, in particular **Annexure 2 to Section DF7.1**

DF6.3 Fixture Unit Ratings

In the design of discharge pipes and *drains* the *fixture unit* ratings shown in Table DF6.3 must be used. For the fixtures listed in the Table the maximum unvented length of the associated fixture discharge pipe must not exceed 2.5 m except that this may be 6 m for a water closet pan with a DN100 trap and discharge pipe. The length of the pipe is measured along the centre line from the weir of the trap to the point of connection to a graded discharge pipe, *drain*, *stack* or other drainage trap.

Table DF6.3 - Fixture Unit Ratings

Fixture	Nominal size of trap outlet and fixture discharge pipe	Fixture unit rating
Basin	DN32 or DN40	1
Bath (with or without shower)	DN40	4
Bidet	DN40	1
* Clothes washing machine	DN40	5
* Dishwashing machine	DN40	3
Floor waste gully:		
without fixture	DN50	0
with fixture	DN40 or DN 50	as per fixture rating
Laundry trough	DN40 or DN 50	5
Shower	DN40 or DN50	2
Sink:		
less than 45 litres	DN40	2
more than 45 litres	DN50	3
Water closet pan	DN80 or DN100	5
* (i) When clothes washing machine connects to a trough trap, only the trough unit fixture rating is considered. (ii) When a dishwashing machine connects to a sink trap only the sink <i>fixture unit</i> rating is considered.		

DF6.4 Trapping of Fixtures and Appliances

The discharge from all sanitary fixtures and appliances must pass through traps before entering the drain, soil/pipe or waste pipe. The fixture trap must retain a water seal of:

- 50 mm for traps of size DN50 or less
- 75 mm for traps of size greater than DN50.

The traps must be located as close as possible to the fixture and not farther than 600 mm from the fixture outlet, except in case of permitted fixture pairs and floor waste gullies.

The following fixtures may be connected in pairs to a single fixture trap:

- Wash basins
- Sinks
- Laundry troughs
- Showers

The fixture pairs must be connected so that the centre-to-centre distance between their outlets is no more than 1.2 m.

DF6.5 Fixture Discharge Pipes

Minimum grades

Discharge pipes must be laid to the minimum grades shown in Table DF6.5.1

Table DF6.5.1 Minimum Grades of Discharge Pipes

Nominal size	Minimum grade
DN32	1 in 30
DN40	1 in 40
DN65	1 in 40
DN80	1 in 60
DN100	1 in 60

Connections

The connection of any fixture discharge pipe to a graded discharge pipe or between two graded discharge pipes must be made as follows:

- With 45 degree or sweep junction fittings
- Where the pipes are of different sizes -
 - the soffits of both must be in continuous alignment, and
 - where an unequal junction fitting is used the soffit of the branch pipe must be at the same level or higher than the soffit of the pipe to which it connects; and
- The level of the trap or floor waste gully weir must be at a higher level than the soffit of the graded discharge pipe to which it connects.

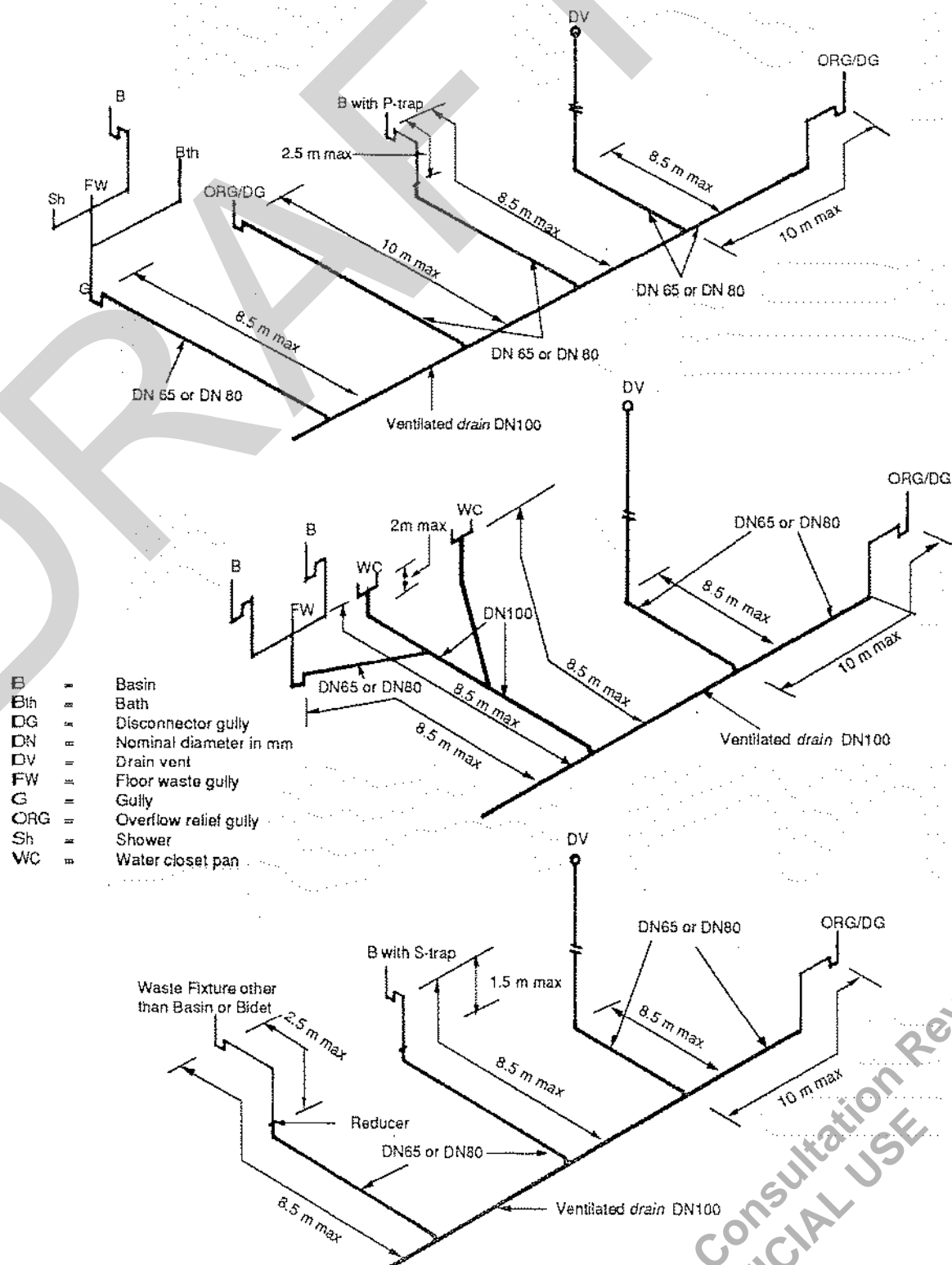
Cleaning Eyes

Fixture discharge pipes must have accessible cleaning eyes at all bends.

DF6.6 Unvented Branch Drains

Where the risk of escape of dangerous and unpleasant gases into occupied premises is minimal the venting of branch drains is not required. However, all of the limitations given in the following sub-clauses and illustrated in Figure DF6.6.1 must be met in such cases. (For limitation of length of fixture discharge pipes, see clause on Limitations on size, length and bends.)

Figure DF6.6 - Limitations on Unvented Branch Drains



Limitations on Location or Nature of Connection

- a) The connection of any unvented branch *drain* to a vented *drain* must be located at the ground floor level and the vented *drain* installed on grade below or above ground
- b) In the case of an unvented *drain* receiving discharge from only *waste fixtures*, it must connect to a gully
- c) An unvented drain other than in (b) must connect to a disconnector gully; or
- d) The connection must be from a discharge pipe serving a single fixture and the length of the discharge pipe is -
- less than 3.5 m when serving a waste fixture; or
 - less than 3.0 m when serving a soil fixture.

Limitations on size, length and bends

- a) The size of any unvented branch drain must comply with the limitations given in Table DF6.6.2

Table DF 6.6.2 - Size of Unvented Branch Drains

Nominal size	Maximum sum of fixture unit loadings discharging into the branch drain
DN65	5 (but not from a water closet pan) or 8 from one floor waste gully
DN80	12 (but not from a water closet pan)
DN100	30 (no more than 2 water closet pan connected)

- b) The length of an unvented branch drain together with that of the fixture discharge pipe must not exceed:
- 8.5 m from the weir of the fixture trap
 - 10 m to a disconnector gully; and
 - 2.5 m from the reducer to the weir of the trap, where the fixture discharge pipe is of smaller size than the unvented branch drain.
- c) The maximum vertical drop from the crown of the trap to the top of the vented drain to which the unvented branch drain connects must not exceed:
- 1.5 m in the case of basins and bidets; and
 - 2.5 m in the case of all other fixtures.
- d) The total combined number of long bends in a fixture discharge pipe and branch drain, up to the connection with a vented drain must be limited to:
- 2 horizontal and 2 vertical with basins and bidets; and
 - 2 horizontal and 3 vertical with all other fixtures. The distance between any adjacent horizontal bends must be not less than 300 mm and the vertical drop between two adjacent vertical bends must not exceed 2 m.

Note: A bend of 45° or less is not considered to be a bend for the purposes of this clause.

DF6.7 Venting

In order to prevent the escape of dangerous and unpleasant gases into occupied premises and to ensure that water seals in traps are not destroyed by siphonage, adequate venting must be provided for all fixture discharge pipes and drains except as allowed by DF6.6.

Trap Vents

The minimum size of a trap vent must be related to the nominal size of the fixture trap as follows:

Size of fixture trap	Size of trap vent
DN32 or DN40	DN32
DN50 to DN100	DN40

Every trap vent must be extended upward at least 50 mm above the flood level rim of the fixture. This may be accomplished in one of the following ways:

- a) As a vertical vent to open air, the outlet of which is no closer than 900 mm from any opening to the building
- b) On an ascending grade of at least 1: 80 and then -
 - as a vertical vent to the open air; or
 - to a connection with a vertical or branch vent.
- c) Take the vent above the flood level rim of the fixture, then loop it down either vertically or on a downward grade of 1: 80 and connect to a vertical or branch vent.

Trap vents must be located no closer than 75 mm and no farther than 1500 mm from the crown of the trap.

Drain Vents

a) General

Vents in *drains* must be provided -

- at the upstream end of any drain
- at the upstream end of any branch drain to which a fixture trap or floor waste gully is connected and if the distance from the weir of the trap to the vented drain exceeds 8.5 m
- at the upstream end of any DN100 branch drain to which 3 or more water closet pans are connected; and
- at the upstream end of any DN100 branch drain to which no more than 2 water closet pans are connected.

b) Location

The upstream vent of any *drain* must be connected -

- at or close to the end of the drain; or
- at the vent extension of a stack located at or near the upstream end of the drain.

In either case it is permissible to have an unvented length of drain upstream of the vent connection if the unvented length complies with DF6.6.

c) Size of vents

The minimum size of an upstream vent of any *drain* is DN40. Subject to this, the vent must be sized by using the ratings given in Table D6.7.2.

Table DF6.7.2 Size and Rating of Drain Vents

Fixture units discharging into drain	Vent rating	Vent size
1 to 10 (incl)	0.5	DN40
10 (excl) to 30 (incl)	1	DN50
30 (excl) to 175 (incl)	2	DN65
175 (excl) to 400 (incl)	3	DN80

When two or more vents are directly connected to the *drain* these can take the place of a single vent provided the sum of their ratings is not less than the rating *required* for venting the *drain*.

Termination of Vents

a) Vent pipes from waste fixtures discharging into disconnector gullies and from gullies located within buildings must be vented independently and not be interconnected to any other system vent. Such vents must terminate in the open air -

- at a height of at least 50 mm above the overflow level of the associated fixture
- at least 900 mm from any opening to the building which is within a horizontal distance of 3 m from the vent; and
- not less than 150 mm above its point of penetration through any roof covering.

b) Vents other than in (a) must terminate in the open air -

- not less than 600mm above any opening into any building which is within a horizontal distance of 3m from the vent
- not less than 150mm above its point of penetration through any roof covering
- not less than 3m above any trafficable roof deck which is within a horizontal distance of 3 m from the vent
- not less than 2m above or 600 mm below any chimney or similar opening within a horizontal distance of 3m from the vent
- not less than 5m from any air intake; and
- not less than 600mm above any cave, coping or parapet which is within a horizontal distance of 600mm from the vent.

DF 6.8 Design of Pipes and Drains

Sizing of Discharge Pipes

Discharge pipes must be not less than the size of the fixture traps to which they are connected. The size must be determined from Table DF6.3 and take into consideration:

- the sum of the *fixture unit* rating of all fixtures connected to the pipe
- the proposed pipe gradient; and
- the maximum *fixture unit* loadings given in Table DF6.8.1

Table DF6.8.1 - Maximum Fixture Unit Loadings for Graded Discharge Pipes

Grade	Nominal pipe size (mm)				
	40	50	65	80	100
1 in 20	6	15	51	65	376
1 in 30	5	10	29	39	248
1 in 40	4	8	21	27	182
1 in 50	x	x	x	20	142
1 in 60	x	x	x	16	115

Note

- x indicates that the combination of pipe size and gradient is not permitted.
- Not more than two W.C. pans are to be connected to any DN100 pipe

Sizing of Drains

The size of a vented *drain* must be determined by taking into account the total number of *fixture units* (obtained from Table DF6.3) discharging into the *drain*.

a) Normal grades

The minimum normal grade of *drains* must be as give in Table DF6.8.2A.

Table DF6.8.2A Minimum Gradient of Drains

Nominal size (mm)	Minimum grade
80	1 in 60
100	1 in 60
125	1 in 80
150	1 in 100

b) Maximum fixture unit loadings for vented drains

The *fixture unit* loadings for vented *drains* must not exceed the values given in Table DF6.8.2 B for the size and grade of the *drain* shown.

Table DF6.8.2B Maximum Fixture Unit Loadings for Vented Drains

Grade	Nominal pipe size (mm)			
	80	100	125	150
1 in 20	215	515	1450	2920
1 in 30	140	345	1040	2200
1 in 40	100	255	815	1790
1 in 50	76	205	665	1510
1 in 60	61	185	560	1310
1 in 70	50	140	485	1180
1 in 80	42	120	425	1040
1 in 90	x	x	380	935
1 in 100	x	x	340	855
1 in 120	x	x	x	725
1 in 150	x	x	x	595

Note: x indicates that the combination of nominal size and grade is not permitted.

c) Reduced grades

Where the minimum grades given in Table DF6.8.2A are not achievable *drains* may be laid at the reduced grades given in Table DF6.8.2C. In such a case the minimum *fixture unit* loadings given in the Table must be connected in advance of the top end of the reduced grade. Where even these reduced grades cannot be achieved provision must be made for regular and automatic flushing of the *drain*.

Table DF6.8.2A - Minimum Fixture Unit Loadings for Reduced Grade Drains

Reduced grade	Nominal pipe size (mm)			
	80	100	125	150
	Minimum <i>fixture unit</i> loading			
1 in 70	9	10	See Table DF6.8.2A	
1 in 80	10	18	"	"
1 in 90	x	x	27	"
1 in 100	x	x	38	"
1 in 120	x	x	x	75
1 in 150	x	x	x	160

Note: x means that the grade is not permitted unless special automatic flushing arrangements are made.

d) A drain must not be oversized for the only purpose of using a lower gradient than the minimum gradient given in Table DF6.8.2A. The size of a drain must not reduce in the direction of flow.

Cover Over Drains

a) *Drains* must be protected against any mechanical damage and deformation resulting from the loads over them. Adequate cover must be provided to comply with Table DF6.8.3 unless exempted under (b).

Table DF6.8.3 Minimum Depth of Cover Over Drains

Location	Minimum cover from top of pipe socket to ground surface (mm)	
	Pipes of cast iron	Pipes of other materials
Household driveways	300	450
Other locations where no vehicular loadings are expected	Nil	300

b) Where it is not practical to provide the minimum cover to Table DF6.8.3, drains must be covered by a sandy overlay of at least 50 mm and provided with -

- 75 mm thick concrete paving where light vehicular traffic may be expected; and
- 50 mm thick concrete paving at other locations where vehicular traffic is not expected.

The paving must be symmetric to the *drain* alignment and must have a minimum width equal to the depth of the base of the *drain* from the top of the paving plus 300 mm.

Drains close to buildings

a) Drains under buildings

Where it cannot reasonably be avoided *drains* may be laid below ground under buildings in which case:

- inspection openings must be provided at both ends of the *drain* adjacent to the building; and
- a minimum of 50 mm of sandy overlay provided over the pipe and below a reinforced concrete floor slab; or
- the *drain* must be protected from damage.

b) Proximity of buildings -

- where a *drain* is to be laid parallel to a footing the excavation for it must clear a line at 45° from the extremity of the footing. (See Figure DF6.8.4)
- where a *drain* crosses a strip footing, the angle of crossing must be not less than 45° and the top of the *drain* must clear the bottom of the footing by not less than 50 mm

c) Building over drains -

Where it is not practical to divert *drains* in order to avoid erecting buildings over them –

the restrictions listed in (a) and (b) must be observed; and

- other appropriate engineering precautions taken against damage.
- Figure DF6.8

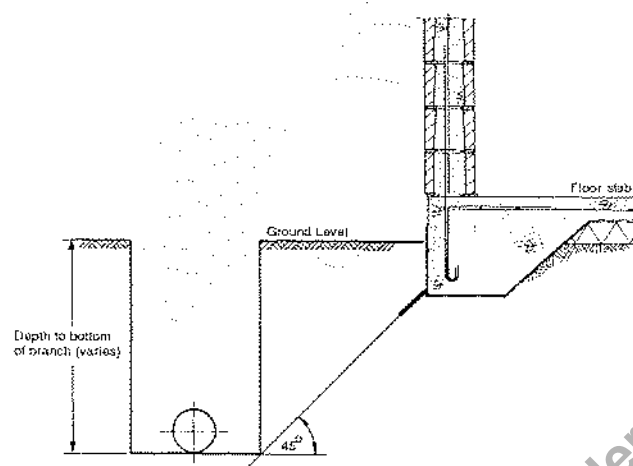


Figure DF6.8.4

DF6.9 Gully Traps other than Floor Waste Gullies

Gully traps may be used:

- as overflow relief gullies to provide in the event of *sewage* surcharge; or
- to provide disconnection between waste discharges and the remainder of the sewerage installation (disconnecter gullies).

General

a) A gully must be installed such that -

- it is supported on a minimum 75 mm thickness of concrete of 17.5 MPa grade; and
- it is protected from damage at floor level by a concrete surround of minimum width and depth of 75 mm.

The following discharges must not be allowed into a gully -

- from any *soil fixture*; and
- any rain water drainage from the roof or ground.

c) The gully must have its water seal maintained from a *waste fixture* or floor waste gully. The maximum length of unvented *waste pipe* discharging into the gully must be 2.5 m from basins or bidets, 6 m from all other waste gullies and fixtures with DN50 or smaller pipes, and 8.5 m from floor waste gullies and fixtures with DN65 or larger pipes.

Overflow Relief Gullies

At least one overflow relief gully must be installed in a *drain* which is connected to a public *sewer*.

a) Size

The size of the overflow relief gully is related to the size of the main *drain*. For a size of main *drain* of DN80 the gully must also be DN80. For main *drains* of DN100 to 150 size, the gully must be DN100.

b) Location

An overflow relief gully must be located within the property, external to the building, as far as practicable from the downstream end of the *drain*, and so that the top of the gully is accessible and positioned where any overflow can be easily noticed.

c) Height

A minimum height of 150 mm must be kept between the top of the overflow gully riser and the lowest fixture connected to the *drain*. The point of measurement on fixtures is given in Table DF6.9.2.

Table DF6.9.2 - Point of Measurement of Fixtures for Height Above Overflow Level of Gully

Fixture	Point of measurement
Soil fixture with integral trap	Level of water seal surface
Floor waste gully or shower outlet	Top surface level of grate
Other fixtures	Top surface level of fixture outlet

Disconnecter Gully Traps

Where installed within a building these must:

- have the gully riser extend to floor level and be sealed with an airtight removable cover; and
- a DN50 vent pipe must branch from the riser at an upward grade of not less than 1 in 80 and terminate with a grating at an *external wall* of the building above any likely flood level. Alternately the vent pipe can terminate as in DF6.7.3(a). No other fixture or appliance must be connected to the vent pipe.

DF6.10 Floor Waste Gullies

Floor waste gullies are functionally similar to fixture water traps. Shower outlets may be used as floor waste gullies. Any *waste fixture* may be connected to a floor waste gully. No trap is *required* other than for discharge outlets from basins. For other than basins the maximum length of the untrapped *waste*

pipe must not exceed 1.2 m. if any of the fixtures is trapped, the maximum length of the *waste pipe* is allowed to be up to 2.5 m. However, the traps must not be vented. With the exception of allowed fixture pairs, each fixture must connect individually with the gully at a grade of not less than 1 in 40.

Size

The outlet size of a floor waste gully trap is based on the total *fixture units* of the fixtures and appliances discharging into it. The outlet size must be:

- DN50 for a total fixture unit rating of 3 units or less; and
- DN65 to DN100 for a total fixture unit rating of 10 or less.

A DN50 outlet and a DN50 riser may be used if the sole function of the gully is to dispose of water spillage and wash down water. All other gullies must have a minimum riser size of DN80 at floor level. A floor waste gully must have an accessible, removable grate.

Height of Gully Riser

The minimum height of the gully riser from the top of the water seal to the floor surface must comply with Table DF6.10.2. The maximum height must not exceed 600 mm.

Table DF6.10.2 - Minimum Height of Floor Waste Gully Risers

Fixture connected	Minimum height from water seal to floor level (mm)	
	Waste pipe entry at 88.5°	Waste pipe entry at 45°
Shower	150	100
Bath (only one)	250	200
Clothes washing machine	300	250
Other waste fixtures	250	150

Maintenance of Water Seal

At least one *waste fixture* must be connected to any floor waste gully in order to maintain the water seal. For this reason the minimum depth of water seal must be 65 mm or the values in DF6.4.1, whichever is more.

DF6.11 Inspection Openings

General

Inspection openings comprise:

- inspection branches or square *junctions*; or
- inspection chambers.

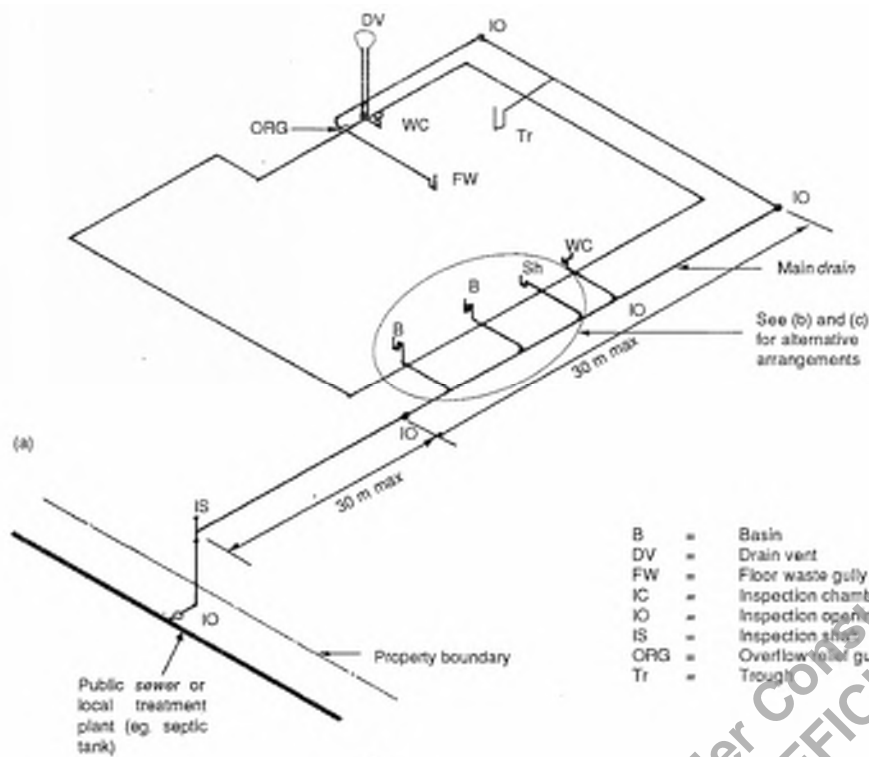
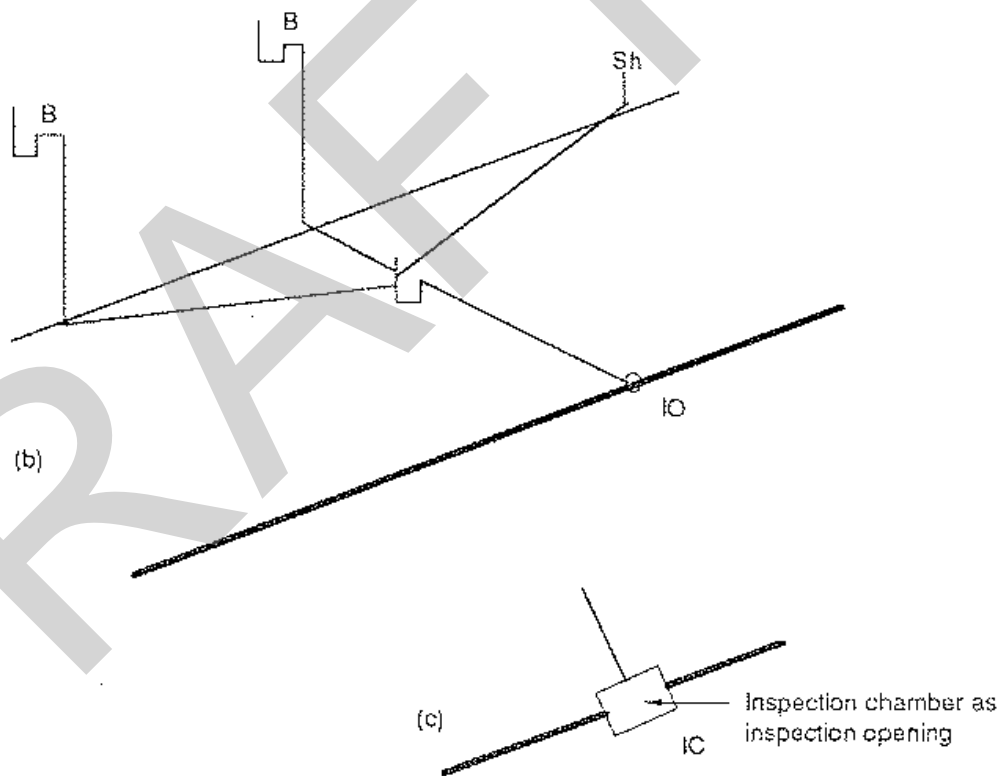
Location

Inspection openings must be provided:

- outside the building on each branch connecting one or more water closet pans
- at intervals of not more than 30 m
- downstream and upstream ends of any section of *drain* that passes under a building
- where any new section of *drain* is connected to an existing *drain*; and
- at the connection to the public sewer.

Appropriate locations are illustrated in Figure DF6.11.2 (overleaf).

Figure DF6.11.2 - Location of Inspection Openings



Size

- a) The size of inspection branches or square junctions must be -
- The same size as the drain for drains up to DN150; and
 - Not less than DN150 for larger drains

The dimensions of inspection chambers must comply with Table DF6.11.3

Table DF 6.11.3 - Size of Inspection Chambers

Minimum internal measurements (mm)			
Depth of floor to chamber	Rectangular		Circular
	Length	Width	Diameter
Less than 600	600	450	600
600 to 900	900	600	900
More than 900	1200	750	1050

Access for Inspection Branches and Square Junctions

Inspection branches and square *junctions* must be so located that it is possible to use them for inspection and for clearing obstructions in the associated sections of the *drain*. When located inside buildings inspection branches and square *junctions* must have their openings readily accessible. Such openings must have airtight removable caps or plugs with gaskets, rubber rings or such other accessories to maintain tightness. When the caps or plugs are removed for inspection/maintenance, the gasket/rubber ring must be replaced with a new one.

Construction of Inspection Chambers

- a) Where required

An inspection chamber is *required* where an inspection branch or square *junction* -

- cannot accommodate all the convergent *drains*; or
- will not permit proper inspection or the clearing of obstructions.

- b) Conduits and channels

The conduits in inspection chambers may be open channels of size and shape equal to the associated *drains*. The floor in inspection chambers must slope at a grade of between 1 in 10 and 1 in 15 towards the channel. Any formed *junction* must have a centre line radius of not less than 300 mm. A fall of at least 30 mm must be provided in the invert of any channel that curves through 45° or more.

- c) Access opening

A circular or rectangular access opening of 530 mm minimum dimension and fitted with a removable water tight cover must be provided at surface level. The cover must have been designed and installed to take any likely load on it. Where the size of the inspection chamber is larger than the size of the access opening, the top section of the chamber may be suitably tapered. Where this is done the full dimensions of the chamber must be maintained for a height from the chamber floor of at least 1.5 m, and the depth of the narrower *shaft* at the top does not exceed 350 mm. The minimum dimension of the *shaft* except at the opening must be 600 mm,

- d) Access ladder

Where the depth of the chamber exceeds 1.2 m rungs or rung ladders must be provided to AS 1657.

- e) Materials of construction

Inspection chambers must have base and walls of a minimum thickness of 150 mm and constructed of:

- base - concrete; and
- walls - concrete or fully grouted concrete block masonry.

The concrete must be of 20 MPa grade. The walls and base must be suitably reinforced if *required*. The channels may be formed of half sections of pipes and fittings. Any access rungs or ladder must be of

galvanised steel. The cover and any frame to seal it must be of reinforced concrete or cast iron with safe lifting devices.

The walls and base of any inspection chamber must be cement rendered to a smooth finish. The render may contain a suitable water proofing agent to ensure a waterproof finish. Where there is any likelihood of seepage of sub-soil water into the manhole the external surfaces of the wall must be plastered to a waterproof finish or a suitable water proofing agent added to the concrete in the walls and base.

f) Inserts

The contact area between pipes or fittings and the walls formed around them, as well as holes broken into or formed in the walls of inspection chambers for insertion of pipes or fittings must be made watertight by -

- the application of a suitable bonding agent around the pipes
- caulking the annular space between the wall and the pipe or fitting with a stiff mix of one part cement and 2 parts sand
- sealing with an epoxy based or other suitable sealant; or
- a combination of these methods.

Junctions

a) Junctions of drains must:

- be swept in the direction of flow or have an oblique *junction* fitting with an upstream angle of no more than 60°
- not be Y *junctions* in the horizontal plane; and
- where unequal *junctions* are used have the soffit of the branch in level with or higher than the soffit of the larger size.

b) Square junctions in drains must only be used:

- at the connection of an inspection shaft to a graded drain
- as the inlet riser of a gully or a floor waste gully
- as an inspection opening; or
- at the top of a drop junction in place of a bend and inspection opening.

DF7 Sanitary Disposal

DF7.1 Specific requirements

Sanitation facilities must ensure-

- no discharge of wastewater of any kind to surface water;
- no discharge to a soil surface that is :
 - less than 1.5 metres above maximum groundwater level; or
 - less than 15 metres from a downstream (coastward) drinking groundwater source (30 meters if upstream drinking groundwater source or if unknown).
- Site inspection by a qualified person and standard special designs are required if system is with 15 meters from a downstream (coastward) drinking groundwater source and 1.5 meters above maximum groundwater level.
- the maximum design loading to a soil surface shall not exceed:
 - 50mm per day for septic tank effluent.
 - 70mm per day for secondary or better treated effluent.
- the effluent distribution system shall achieve a uniform application at or less than the maximum design loading rate.
- system chosen is in accordance with Specifications 7.1A and B in this section

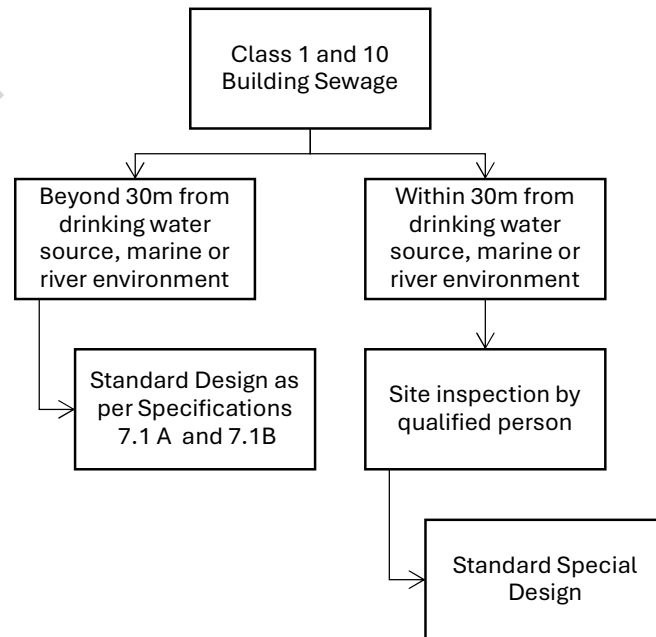


Figure 7.1 Decision matrix

DF7.2 Means of compliance

The requirements of DF7.1 are satisfied if all sanitary disposal works are carried out to the relevant provisions of

- AS/NZS 1546.1 Part 1 On-Site Domestic Wastewater Management Units (Septic Tanks)
- AS/NZS 1547:2012 On-Site Domestic Wastewater Management
- AS/NZS 3500 Part 2 Sanitary plumbing and drainage and its amendments

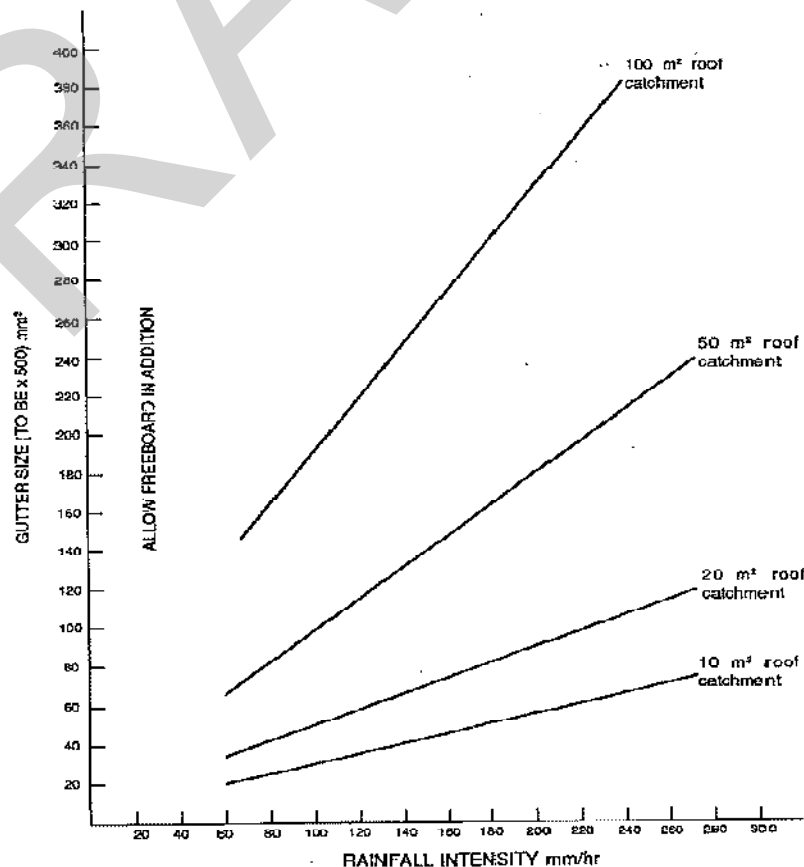
as well as this part of the Code.

DF8 Roof Drainage

DF8.1 Design of roof gutters

a) Roof gutters, where provided, must be sized on the basis of the rainfall intensity using Figure DF8.1. The figure gives the value of the net area of cross section of the gutter for different roof catchment area and different rainfall intensities. Eaves gutters must be sized for a rainfall intensity corresponding to a 20 year return period whereas internal box and valley gutters must be sized to a 100 year return period intensity. For temporary structures it is enough if all gutters are sized for a 5 year return intensity. The Metrological Department may be contacted to supply 100-year, 20-year and 5-year return period intensities in mm/hr of rainfall for representative areas in the country.

Figure DF8.1 Gutter sizes and rainfall intensity



Notes:

- The roof catchment area is the area of the roof drained by one downpipe. It is taken as the area of the roof from ridge to gutter between two adjacent downpipes.
- Values can be interpolated for catchment areas falling between the give figures.
- The gutter sizes do not include any allowance for freeboard. A freeboard of 25 mm for eaves gutters and 35 mm for internal box gutters must be added to the cross-sections derived from the table.

b) Gutters must have a minimum slope of:

- 1 in 500 for eaves gutters; and
- 1 in 200 for internal box gutters.

These slopes must be increased where there is any material risk of clogging of the gutters and downpipes with leaves and other such matter.

Note:

With high fronted eaves with fascia boards there could be overflow from the back of the gutter into the building if the downpipes or gutters are blocked. One method of preventing such overflow is by providing drainage slots along the front of the gutter at a level lower than the back edge. Another method would be to provide sumps and weirs at the ends of the gutter or where the downpipes take off. The risk of overflow into the building from any internal box gutter can be reduced by providing sumps and weirs at the ends of the gutter.

DF8.2 Design of downpipes

The minimum area of cross-section of a downpipe must be the greater of:

- a) half the area of cross-section of the gutter it serves; or
- b) the area calculated for each 10 m² of the roof area drained by it at the rate of:
 - 650 mm² for eaves gutters; and
 - 930 mm² for internal box gutters.

DF8.3 Incompatible metals for gutters

Direct contact between the following metals must be avoided in order to prevent corrosion:

Zinc or aluminium and alloys of either	and	copper or copper alloys and some grades of stainless steel
--	-----	--

Care must be taken to avoid bimetallic corrosion occurring in the guttering and storage tanks.

Further information on roof drainage can be found in the AS/NZS 3500 Part 3 – Stormwater Drainage.

The inclusion of gutter accessories such as Leaf Diverters and First Flush Devices can help minimize debris entering rainwater storage tanks and improve the water quality as described further in section DF9.

DF9 Rainwater Storage

DF 9.1 Introduction

Rainwater collection from the roof depends on a number of factors. Unless these are suitably matched the supply would not be satisfactory. The factors are:

- the average annual rainfall and its variability through the year;
- the roofing material and the available area of the roof;
- the daily rate of consumption of water;
- the storage volume and the material of the tank; and
- the desired reliability of the supply.

DF 9.2 Relationship of rainfall, variability, roof area and storage volume

The higher the average annual rainfall, the smaller the collection area of roof required for a given rate of consumption. In order to allow for variation in actual rainfall from the monthly averages, it is advisable to have the available roof area to be twice the theoretical area.

If the pattern of rainfall is fairly uniform through the year, the size of storage tank for a given rate of consumption would be relatively smaller. The tank size could be as small as to hold 50 days consumption where rainfall is quite uniform through the year. Where most (such as 75%) of the annual rainfall occurs in 3 or 4 months it will be necessary to size the tank to hold 100 to 120 days of consumption. This assumes that the available roof collection area is twice the theoretical area. Where the available roof area is less than about 1.4 times the theoretical area, the required storage volume tends to increase very steeply. The size of the tank determined from these considerations should normally give an average reliability of supply with a failure rate of about once every 5 years. If an average chance of failure of supply of once a year is acceptable, the calculated tank size can be reduced by about 30% in areas of high rainfall and by 40% in areas of lower rainfall.

DF 9.3 Design

The quality of the water in the tank is contingent on managing the potential contamination routes, by implementing the following performance criteria:

- location is minimising the accumulation of leaves on the roof reducing the potential growth of micro-organisms
- installation of a regularly cleaned fly wire screen on the inlet to the tank reduces debris and the breeding of mosquitos
- installation of a first flush system installed to divert any chemical and biological debris collected on the roof away from the storage tank.
- Covered water tank will prevent from direct ashfall contamination.

The theoretical relationship outlined in paragraph 2 above can be expressed as:

- $A = 365 \times C/R$ where
- A is the roof area acting as the catchment in square metres,
- C, the daily average consumption of water by the household in litres, and
- R, the average annual rainfall in millimetres

However, for the reasons stated earlier the practical value of the roof catchment is:

- $A = 2 \times 365 \times C/R = 730 C/R$

In order to assess the size of the storage tanks Vanuatu has been divided into 2 categories

- areas with a more uniform spread of rainfall and
- those with rainfall concentrated over 3 or 4 months of the year.

In the case of the areas with a more uniform rainfall, it is estimated that a storage capacity of 50 days consumption would be adequate to provide a reasonably reliable supply with the risk of failure of only once in 5 years. For a similar level of reliability in areas with an uneven spread rainfall, the estimated storage is equal to 80 days consumption.

Taking a family size of 5 members, each consuming no more than 30 litres per day of the stored water, the minimum roof area and storage capacity required in representative regions in Vanuatu have been

calculated for the average rainfall in those regions. These are shown in Table 3. If the family size and/or daily consumption is different, the required roof area and tank size can easily be calculated from the Table 3 overleaf.

Table 3: Minimum roof area and tank capacity for rainwater collection

Total tank capacity of 7.5 kilolitres		Total tank capacity of 12 kilolitres
Minimum roof catchment to drain into storage (m ²)		
50	30	80
SHEFA SANMA MALAMPA PENAMA	TORBA	TAFEA
<p>Example: If the family size considered in say, TAFEA is 7 and the daily consumption per head is 20 litres, then</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> the required roof catchment = $80 \times 20 \times 7 / (30 \times 5) = 75\text{m}^2$ tank size = $12 \times 20 \times 7 / (30 \times 5) = 11.2$ kilolitres <p>Note: If a risk of failure of supply once a year is acceptable, the tank size can be reduced by 30%.</p>		

DF 9.4 Effect of roofing material and the environment

Rainwater in general is very pure and hence many metals dissolve in it much faster than in land-based water. For instance, if any lead is used in the roof for flashing or in the form of lead-based paint, the rainwater would leach the lead into the storage tank. If this happened, the water would not be potable. The nature of materials used in the roof must be ascertained and their safety confirmed before a decision is taken to use the run-off from the roof. In general, galvanised iron sheets, zinc-aluminium (Colorbond) coated sheets, and a number of other products are safe.

As far as possible leaves and twigs must not be allowed to fall on the roof. The leached extracts from some leaves would make the water unfit for consumption. In addition, the organic matter from leaves and twigs would encourage the growth of micro-organisms in the tank, thereby polluting the water. Accumulation of any dust on the roof, such as from industrial activity nearby would also make the water unfit.

To help prevent organic materials from entering the storage tank or mosquitoes breeding in the tank, water tanks must have an inlet screen. A helpful tip is to place a layer of mosquito netting on top of the inlet screen to help filter out any incoming debris. Further improvements can be made to water quality by installing a PVC Leaf Beater and First Flush Diverter. The tank design can also be modified so that the tank outlet is elevated to 200mm from the floor so that there is less chance that sediments will flow out through the tap.

Regular maintenance of the rain water storage system is recommended including cleaning debris from the roof and gutters, cleaning of the tank inlet screen, flushing out the tank to remove accumulated debris and repairs to the guttering and tank outlet tap.

DF 9.5 Tank material

Tanks are generally made of polyethylene (rotomolded), galvanised or zinc- aluminium coated steel plates and sometimes of fibre glass. Whereas suitable fibreglass would be inert and therefore not affected by the rainwater, galvanised steel could. The greater the purity of the stored water, the greater the risk of the galvanising getting leached out very fast. If the roofing sheets are of galvanised steel, the stored water would already contain some of the zinc from the roofing material and hence the tank

would last longer. This is not the case where the roofing is of zinc-aluminum coated or painted steel or of some other man-made material.

In order to prevent the corrosive effects of pure water on the tank coating, suitably formulated metaphosphates are commercially available. These produce a protective film inside the tank and thus extend the life of metal coated tanks. Such methods must be used from the very first filling of the tank. There are also plastic protective coatings compatible with potability which are applied to metal tanks. The inside of the tank must not be painted with any ordinary paint.

In no case must lead be used in any form such as in sheets for flashing or as paint etc on roofs from which water is collected.

For aluminium tanks installed on timber tank stands, do not cover the timber decking with galvanized flat iron as this will create an ideal environment for bimetallic corrosion to occur when water is trapped in between the two different metal surfaces. Covering the timber decking with corrugated iron would be the preferred option as the corrugations will effectively prevent water sitting between the total metal surfaces.

DF 9.6 Erection of rainwater tanks

It is best to erect the tank in a shady location but away from falling leaves which could clog the strainer, and in the case of translucent material like fibreglass, have a dark colour to exclude light. Organic growth could develop on the sides of tanks in the presence of light and warmth. When the tank is part empty the organic growth would decay and give off gases, discolour the water, and produce corrosive acids. The absorption of the gases and acids could also give the water an unpleasant flavour.

The overflow pipes fitted to tanks for the disposal of excess inflow of rainwater must be adequate to prevent uncontrolled overflow. Such pipe must not terminate very close to storm water drains and soak pits as otherwise unpleasant gases might enter the tank. The pipe end and all opening to the tanks must be fitted with strong, durable mesh to prevent birds, mosquitoes and other insects entering the tank.

No copper pipe should be used with any metal water tank. The inlet pipe must discharge the water through a durable strainer fitted well above the high-water level. The inlet must not be close to the tank wall. Where tanks are interconnected each tank must receive at least some of the water directly from the roof. No tank must get its supply entirely from other tanks. It is convenient to have individual domestic tanks of no greater capacity than 4 or 5 kilolitres (1000 gallons)

Ensure the tank stand is properly designed to ensure that it can hold the weight of a full tank. Tank stands can be with reinforced concrete, timber frame or galvanized posts with timber bearers decking. For timber tank stands, inclusion of diagonal bracing is recommended to improve earthquake resistance. In cyclone prone areas, tanks should be tie down to the tank stand to prevent from being dislodged

DF9.7 Maintenance requirements

The quality of the water in the tank is increased by implementing the following performance criteria:

- routinely emptying of a first flush system installed to divert any chemical and biological debris collected on the roof away from the storage tank
- routinely cleaning of the sludge out from the bottom of the tank either manually or through the fitting of an automatic vacuum valve
- where possible, bulk dosing the tank with chlorine tablets from time-to-time to remove resident pathogens

SPECIFICATION DF7.1

Sanitary Systems

Contents

A. Dry Sanitary Systems For Areas Where There Is No Piped Water Supply	34
1. Scope	34
2. Principles of safe on-site dry sanitation systems	34
3 Location	34
4. Types of dry latrines	34
4.1 Dry ventilated improved pit latrines	34
4.2 Composting Latrines	36
B. Sanitary Systems where there is Piped Water Supply	38
1. Scope	38
2. Principles of safe on-site wet sanitation systems	38
3. Location	38
4. Types of wet latrines	39
4.1 Wet pit latrines	39
4.2 Septic tanks	41
4.2.1 Function of a septic tank	41
4.2.2 Construction	41
4.2.3 Design details	41
4.2.4. Effluent absorption area	48
4.2.5 Soakaway systems	48
4.2.6 Desludging	51
4.2.7. Grease traps	51
4.3 Tailored treatment packages	53

A. Dry Sanitary Systems For Areas Where There Is No Piped Water Supply

1. Scope

This Annexure sets out the requirements in relation to the location and types of latrines in area where there is no piped water supply.

This section could be read in conjunction with guidance the Vanuatu Sanitation and Hygiene guidelines (MoH [website](#), 2003).

2. Principles of safe on-site dry sanitation systems

Principles of safe on-site dry sanitation systems are as follows:

- disease transmitting flies and other insects do not have access to the excreta.
- there is no nuisance to the public or the neighbours.
- the sub-soil water is not polluted if it is likely to be used for domestic purposes.
- the biological oxygen demand (BOD) of any resulting effluent is limited to the requirements of the Department of Health so that streams rivers and oceans are not polluted.
- The slab is easy to maintain
- it is safe and private for all users
- there is a hand-washing basin and soap within 3 m.

3 Location

The latrines must be screened from public view and be located not less than:-

- 30 metres from any well or other similar potable source of water.
- 6 metres from the front or street boundary of the allotment.
- 3 metres from any boundary other than the front or street boundary.
- 3 metres from any dwelling within or outside the allotment.
- it is accessible to all users at all times.

Latrine pits located within 30m of drinking water source or marine and river environment shall be sealed with cement mortar, polyethylene or similar liner to avoid soakage of effluent to marine and river waters. Composting latrines described in section 4.2 comply with this requirement.

4. Types of dry latrines

There are two recommended types of dry on-site sanitary systems: dry pit latrines and composting latrines (Figures 4.1 and 4.2).

4.1 Dry ventilated improved pit latrines

Function and operation of a VIP latrine

Dry pit latrines have no flushing facility (Fig 4.1). They are manually dug pits or mechanically bored holes a few meters deep over which a squatting plate with a bung seal or seat with lid is placed. Gases generated, such as methane, are vented through a tall vent pipe. When pits are dry, a combination of anaerobic and aerobic decomposition takes place. When a pit is almost full, the surface cover is removed and the top of the pit filled with a mixture of lime and earth. A new pit is then dug.

In addition to the section 3, the latrines must be located:

- Preferably at a lower ground than where a potable source of water is located
- So that the prevailing wind around the latrine is not shaded.

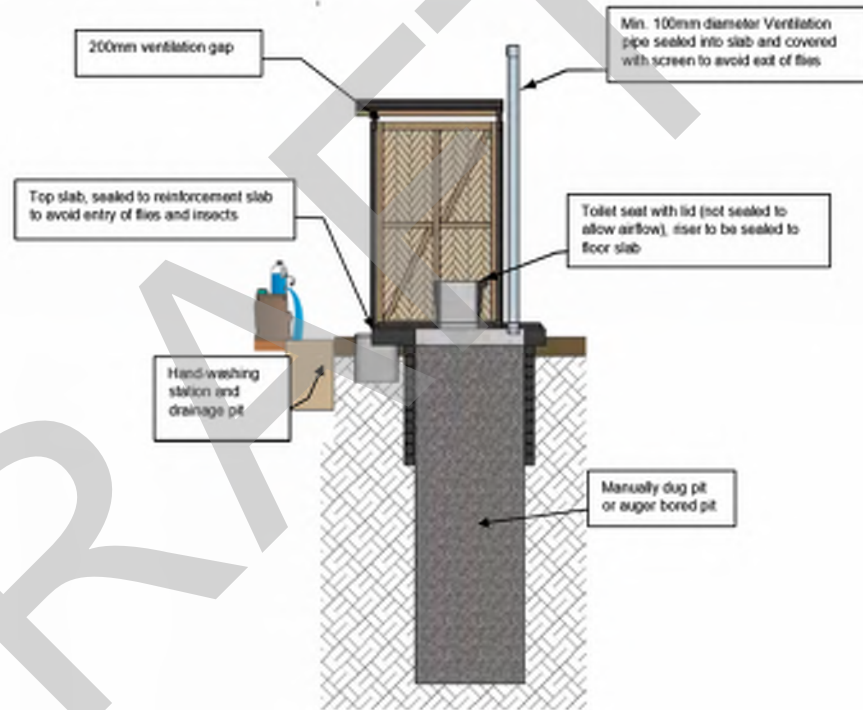


Figure 4.1 Standard ventilated improved (VIP) pit

Calculation of dimensions

The pit volume depends on the number of users, the period for which it is used and a freeboard allowance of 0.5 m depth. If the pit remains dry the annual accumulation of sludge is about 0.08 m³/person. In wet pit latrines or where washing water is allowed to enter it, the accumulation rate could be taken as 0.05 m³.

For example, for a family of 5 which plans to use the pit for 5 years, the volume *required* to hold the sludge would be:

- For a dry pit: $5 \times 0.08 \times 5 = 2.0 \text{ m}^3$
- For a pit area of 0.6 m x 1.0 m, the depth required for the sludge = $2.0 / (0.6 \times 1.0) = 3.3 \text{ m}$
- Add freeboard allowance = 0.5m
- Total depth required = 3.8m

Dimension of a typical cover slab

A pedestal type of cover slab which a user can sit on is the preferred type in Vanuatu.

The cover slab must be placed over the foundation so that it is fully supported without any gaps. Cement mortar may be used to firmly seat the slab over the foundation. The finished surface of the slab must be at least 150 mm above the immediate surrounds.

Vent pipe

A 100mm PVC vent pipe may be erected over the pit to remove foul gases generated by the decomposition of the waste matter. The vent pipe should be painted black and face north to maximize the solar heating effect on the pipe and promote updraft. The squat slab has a matching PVC insert on which the vent pipe can be erected. The vent pipe must be supported to the frame of the shed over the pit. The vent pipe must be at least 2.5 m high and 500 mm above the roof at the point of penetration or the nearest point. The open end of the vent must be covered with durable fly screen to prevent flies and mosquitoes from entering the pit.

A folding lid can be used to keep it covered when it is not in use.

Maintenance

The pit latrine must be kept clean at all times. However, do not use strong disinfectants in large quantities. It is best to use a wet mop or wet rag soaked in diluted disinfectant or cleaning agent to clean the cover slab and seat. If chemicals and cleaning agents are allowed inside the pit, they would drastically affect the bacterial degradation of the waste matter and there could be problems with foul smells and the pit could be filled sooner.

Any erosion of the fill around the foundation must be noted and repaired. The fly screen cover over the vent pipe must also be checked periodically and replaced promptly if damaged. The shed over the pit must be kept in good repair.

Pit closure

When the pit is full to within about 0.5 m of the cover slab it must not be used any more. Another pit must be located at least 3 m away (the deeper the pit, the greater the separation distance). The cover slab, vent pipe, and shed can be re-used over the new pit.

The remaining space in the old pit must be filled with earth. It is good to over-fill and form a mound so that enough surplus earth is available when the material subsides with decomposition. The pit can be dug out after a minimum period of one year and the material safely used as a fertiliser.

4.2 Composting Latrines

Composting Latrines (Fig 4.2a and b) are an alternative to dry pit latrines in areas of challenging environments (coastal areas, high groundwater, frequent flooding, hard rock, dense habitat). The recommended type is the twin-vault batch systems. one vault at a time receives excreta. Urine is drained away in a separate surface channel. The excreta are covered with loose earth, ashes, or sawdust to reduce odors. When the vault is nearly full, it is sealed with lime mortar and left for a few months to compost by anaerobic bacterial action. Contents are then removed and used for fertilizer. During this time the other vault is used as the latrine. This type of latrine work well in warm climates and with little or no urine loading.

The vaults can be above ground or underground.

Figure 4.2(a) Above ground vaults composting latrines

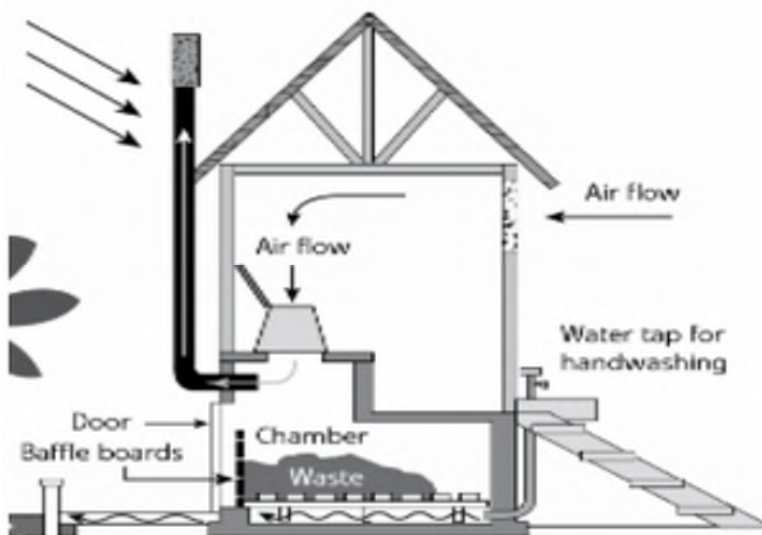
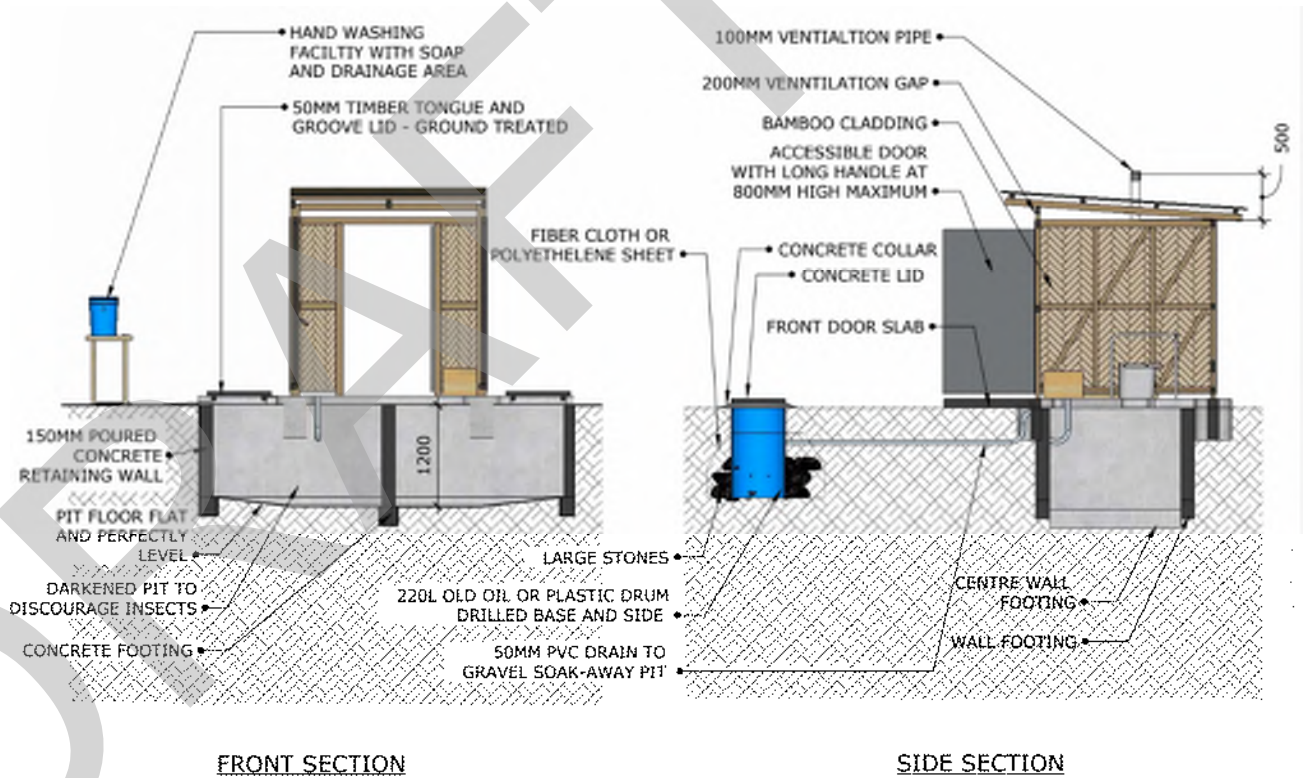


Figure 4.2 (b) Underground vaults composting latrines



B. Sanitary Systems where there is Piped Water Supply

1. Scope

This specification sets out the requirements in relation to the location and types of latrines in area where there is piped water supply.

This specification also applies to both sections DF and NF

This section could be read in conjunction with guidance the Vanuatu Sanitation and Hygiene guidelines (MoH [website](#), 2003).

2. Principles of safe on-site wet sanitation systems

Care must be exercised to ensure that:

- disease transmitting flies and other insects do not have access to the excreta.
- there is no nuisance to the public or the neighbours.
- the sub-soil water is not polluted if it is likely to be used for domestic purposes.
- the biological oxygen demand (BOD) of any resulting effluent is limited to the requirements of the Department of Health so that streams rivers and oceans are not polluted.
- The slab is easy to maintain
- it is safe and private for all users
- there is a hand-washing basin and soap within 3 m.

3. Location

Wet pits, septic tanks and other connected works such as absorption trenches and soak pits must be located at a sufficient distance to prevent contamination of potable water sources and nuisance. Figure 3 shows typical layouts with the minimum separation distances marked on them. It will be seen that a minimum distance of 30 m is *required* between soak pits and potable water sources whereas this distance is only 15 m in the case of absorption trenches.

Another important consideration in the siting of a septic tank is that an adequately absorbent area must be available for discharging the effluent through absorption trenches or soak pits.

The toilet house should be accessible to all users at all times.

Systems located within 30m of a drinking water source, marine or river environment shall be sealed with cement mortar, polyethylene or similar liner, or be designed by a certified engineer, to avoid soakage of effluent to marine and river waters.

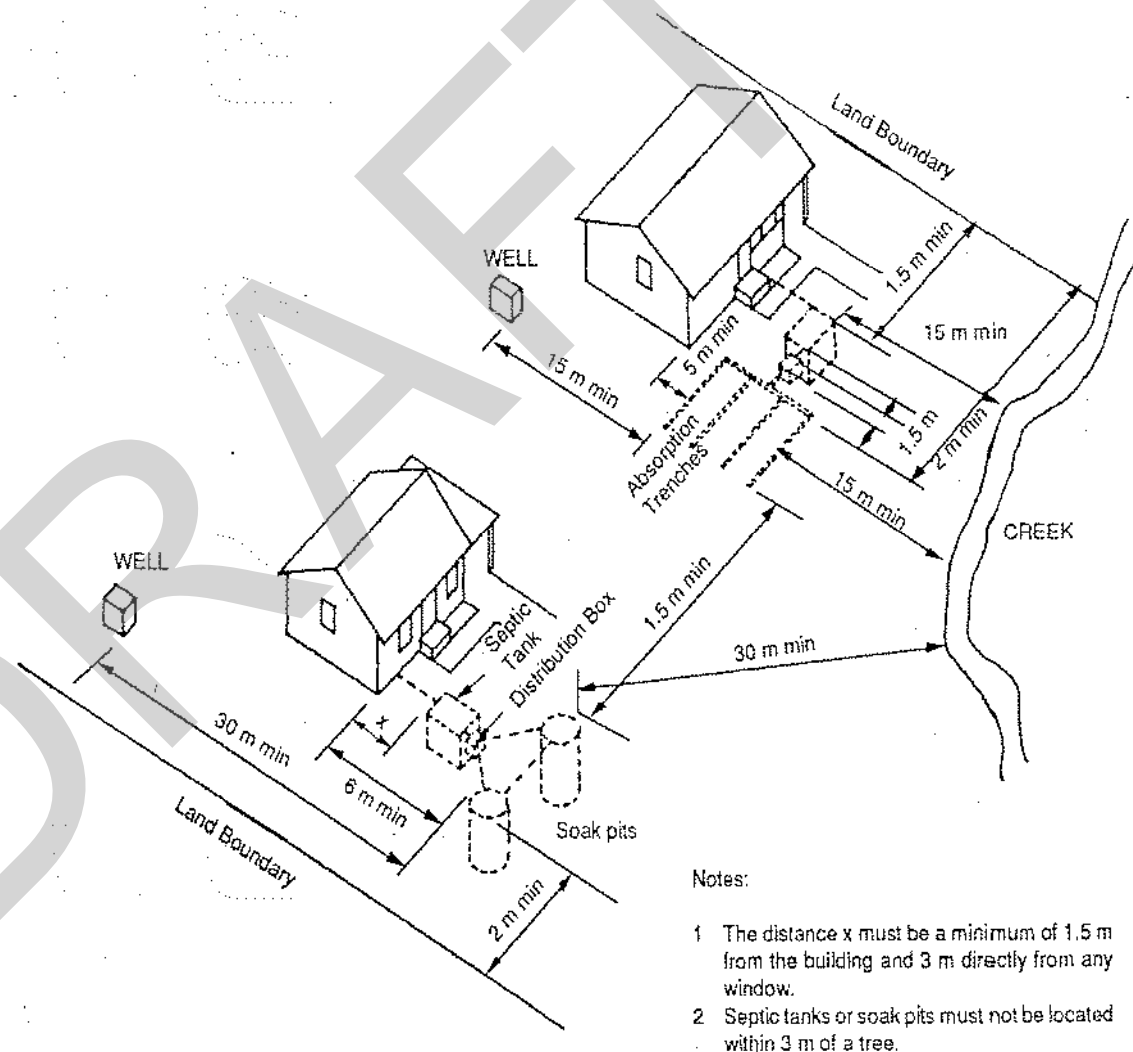


Figure 3 - Typical location of septic tank systems with minimum required separation distances

4. Types of wet latrines

There are three recommended types of Wet on-site treatment: wet pit latrines, septic tanks, and tailored package systems (Figures 4.3, 4.4, 4.5).

4.1 Wet pit latrines

The use of wet pit latrines is recommended, when there is no access to sewage trucks to ensure the required emptying services.

Wet Pit Latrines are bucket-flushed, water-seal, floor-pan latrines with a soak-away pit in porous soil. Digestion of excreta is by anaerobic bacteria below water level. The lower section of the pit is lined to retain water when the pit does not reach the water table. Gases from the digestion are vented through a tall pipe.

Where the pit penetrates through fissured rock or coral through which liquids from the pit might pass unfiltered, the advice of the Health Department must be sought on the location. Otherwise, all the fissures must be closed with concrete or cement mortar.

The *site* must be on firm ground which will not cave in or slump while digging the pit. If there is some problem in this regard, one solution could be to line the affected area with an old drum with both ends removed. The *site* should not be subject to flooding or remain water-logged.

There are two types of wet pit latrines: one with one direct pit, wet pit latrines with two offset pits as figures 4.1 (a) and (b).

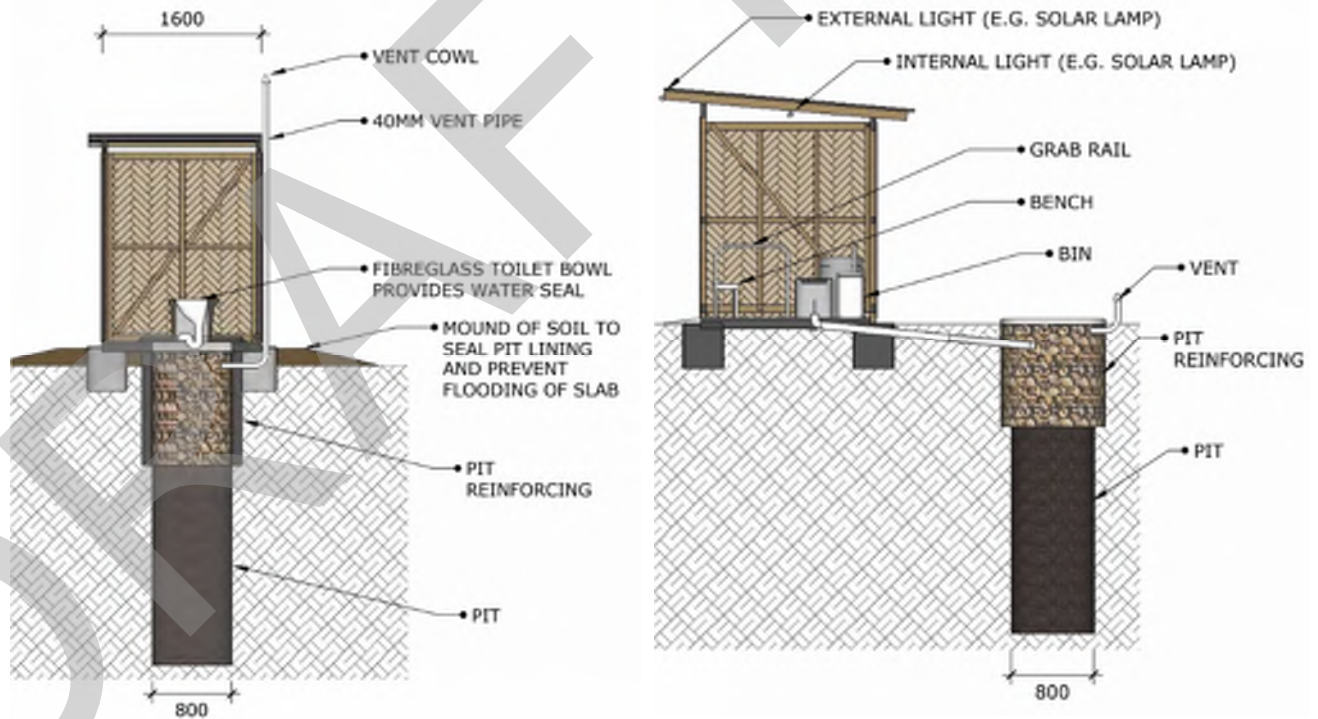


Figure 4.1 a and b wet pit latrines

Further details about the twin-pits arrangements are provided in Figure 4.1 (c)

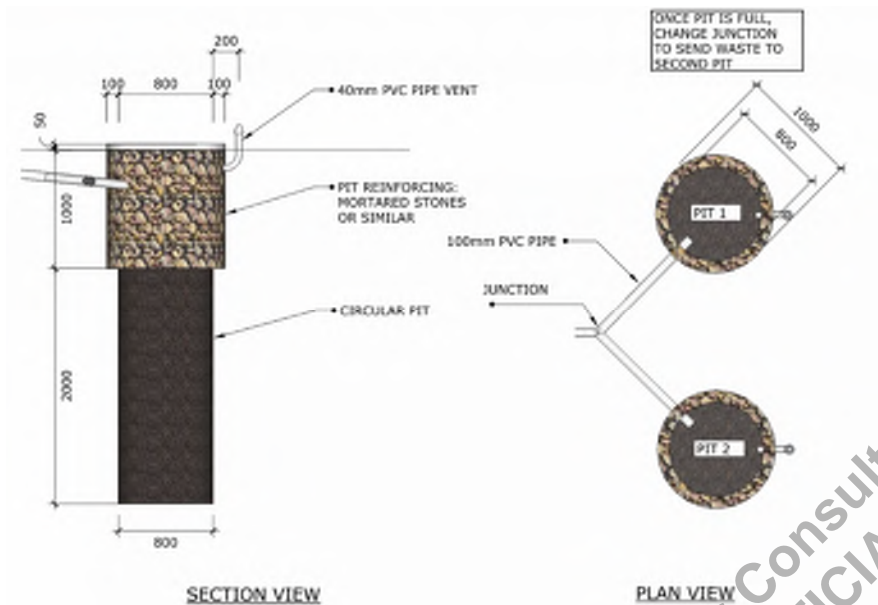


Figure 4.1 c Twin pit arrangements

4.2 Septic tanks

The use of septic tanks is not recommended when there is no access to sewage trucks to ensure the required emptying services.

4.2.1 Function of a septic tank

The basic function of a household septic tank is to receive normal liquid household wastes and to condition them for such a time, and in such a manner, that the clarified effluent may be percolated efficiently into the subsoil, where it is absorbed and evaporated. In order to perform this basic function, all septic tanks must fulfill the following requirements:

a) Remove solids

A septic tank must have a primary or liquefying chamber of such shape and size that the rate flow of all sewage is so reduced that at least the larger solids sink to the bottom and are retained, and the clarified effluent is discharged. The inlet and outlet pipe of this primary chamber must be so shaped and located that the scum which forms on the surface of the sewage is not disturbed. The capacity of the tank is usually kept equal to the inflow for 24 hours to allow a day's retention.

b) Promote bacterial action

To ensure that the solids and liquids in the tank will decompose it is necessary that the tank be designed so that either:

- a variety of bacteria – anaerobic bacteria – which thrive in the absence of free oxygen are present; or
- a variety of bacteria – aerobic bacteria which thrive with access to air is also present.

c) Store sludge

A fine slit-like sludge accumulates at the base of the primary tank. It follows that the primary tank must be of sufficient size to store sludge for a considerable period; otherwise, if the tank is not cleaned out at frequent intervals, the sludge will eventually be scoured from the tank and clog the outlet drain and soakaway system.

4.2.2 Construction

Septic tanks may be of reinforced concrete or of reinforced block masonry walls over a reinforced concrete base. Tanks of precast concrete construction may be made from rectangular slabs which are assembled on the site, or be of cylindrical construction, either as a single cylinders open at the top, or a stack of short, open-ended cylinders.

Fibreglass septic tanks or rotomolded from high density polyethylene shall be permitted where they cater for households of up to 10 persons, provided the tank capacities shall not be less than:

- 2 500 litres, where only toilet waste is treated.
- 4,500 litres, where all sewage, including bathing and kitchen wastewater is treated.

Whatever form of construction or materials are used for the sides and bottoms of septic tanks the resulting work must be impervious to water. For tanks of rectangular section, it is important that all internal angles be well- rounded, so as to minimize shrinkage cracking. Leakage at the corners of tanks of precast concrete construction made from rectangular slabs, or at the joints of precast tanks made from a number of open-ended cylinders, must be detected and corrected in advance.

Every septic tank of block masonry or concrete construction must be covered with reinforced concrete slabs and removable manhole covers fitted over every compartment. The manholes are used when it is necessary to pump out or otherwise clean the tanks. Inspection openings are also required over the inlet and outlet square *junctions*.

4.2.3 Design details

The design of the type of septic tank system will be governed by the results of the investigations of the *site* and locality, taken in conjunction with the results of the percolation test discussed in clauses 4.2.4. Due to its technical aspect, it is not mandatory for individual houses in section DF but is required for Institutional Buildings, Resorts and Hospitals and Industrial systems, in Section NF.

Septic tanks are designed to be emptied before the sludge fills to a level where the effluent retention time decreases below 24 hours. The timing of the emptying of the septic tank can be calculated based on the following AS 1547: 2012 design figures, the number of users and the size of the tank.

AS/NZS 1547 (Design Rates)	All wastewater	Blackwater only
Wastewater flow rate (litres per capita per day)	150 lpcd	50 lpcd
Sludge accumulation rate (litres per capita per year)	80 lpcy	50 lpcy

It is recommended to separate blackwater and greywater treatments in order to minimize the size of septic tanks and associated soakaways. As a rule of thumb, allow 0.2 m³ per user for 'blackwater only' septic tanks with a 6-year emptying frequency noting that:

- h) 'blackwater only' septic tanks will be half the size of 'all wastewater' septic tanks for the same emptying frequency
- i) 'blackwater only' soakaways will be one third the area of an 'all wastewater' soakaway for a given soil condition

Impervious to water

Whatever form of construction or materials are used for the sides and bottoms of septic tanks the resulting work must be impervious to water. For tanks of rectangular section, it is important that all internal angles be well-rounded, so as to minimize shrinkage cracking. Provisions shall be made to prevent sealed septic tanks from floating in high water table areas when emptied.

Inlet and Outlet

Every septic tank of block masonry or concrete construction must be covered with reinforced concrete slabs and removable manhole covers over the inlet and outlet square *junctions* for inspection and emptying. The inlet and the outlet pipes from every septic tank shall fitted with tee pieces and shall be at least DN 100 mm.

Figures 4.2.3a, b and c and Tables 4.2.3a and b give details of the reinforcement *required* and dimension *required* of built-in-situ septic tanks. These figures and tables apply to both Sections DF and NF.

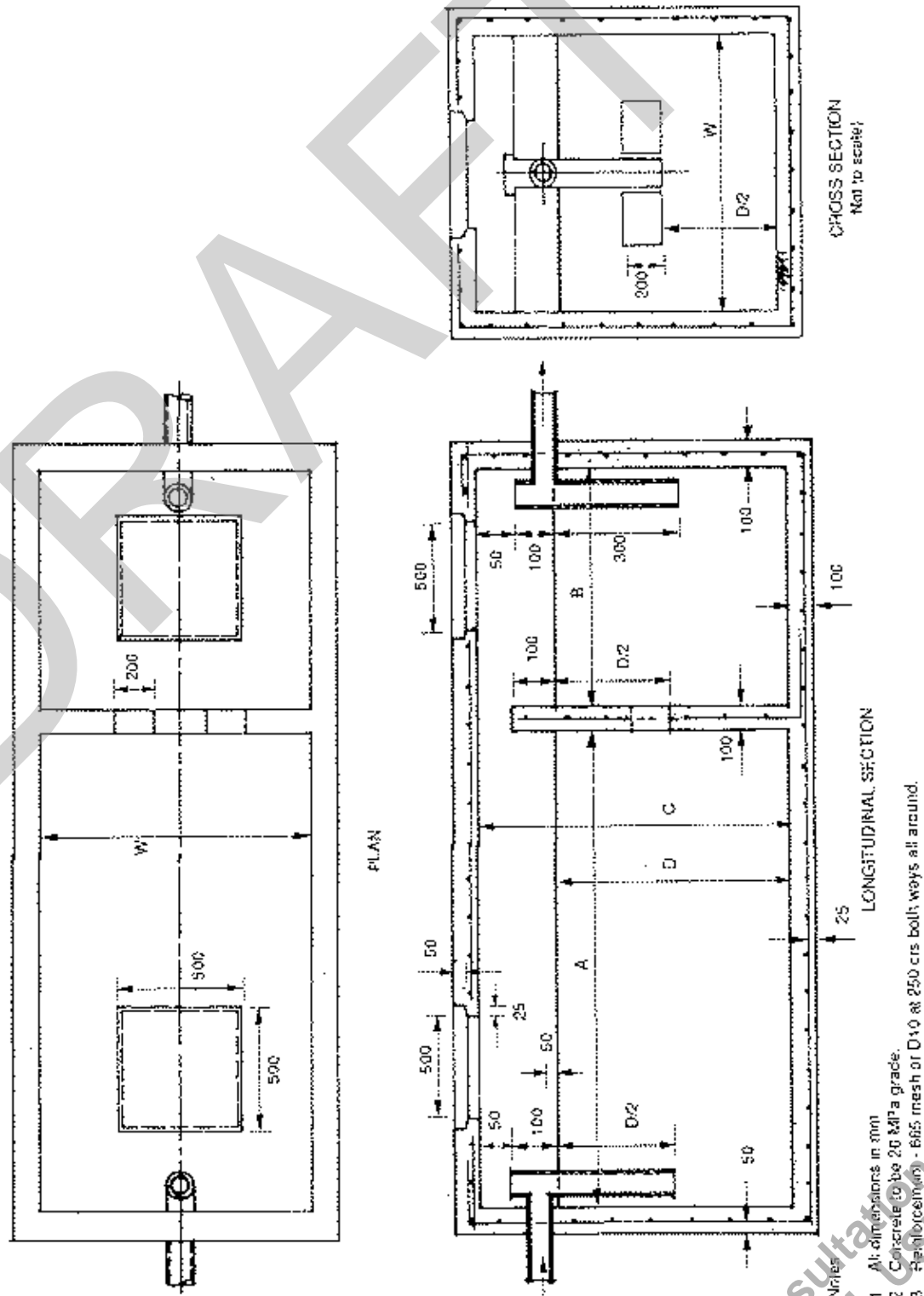


Figure 4.2.3a - Details of reinforced concrete septic tank

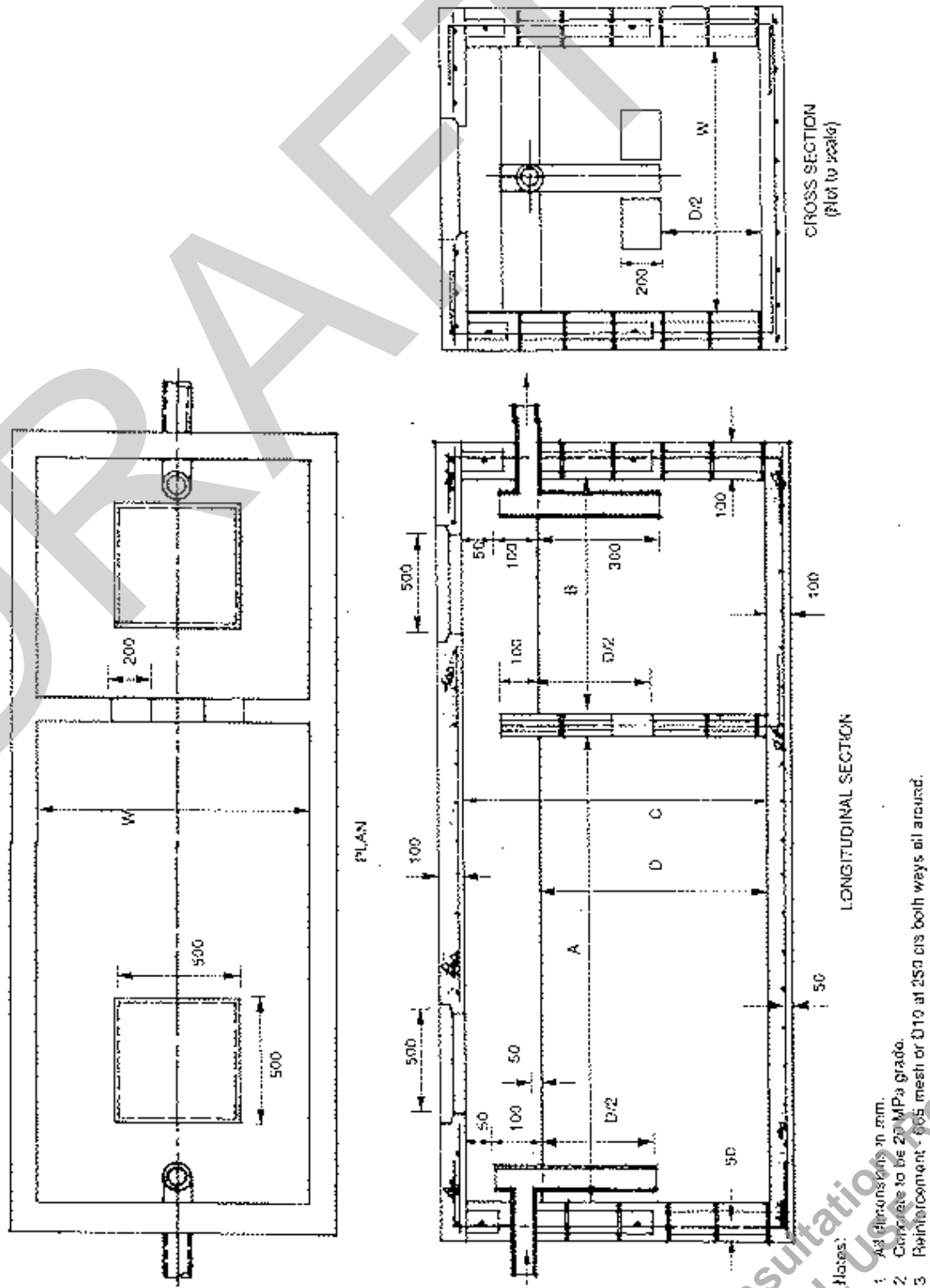


Figure 4.2.3b - Details of reinforced block masonry septic tank

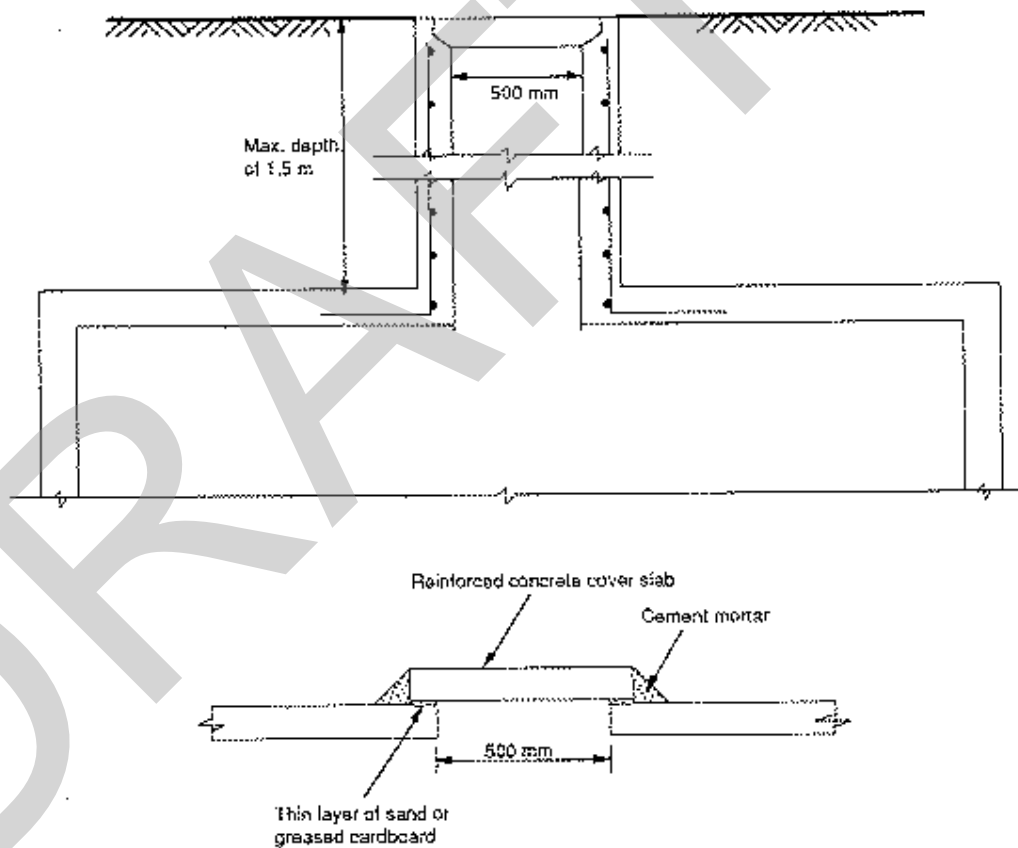


Figure 4.2.3c - Two alternative methods of providing manhole covers

Table 4.2.3a - Reinforcement for masonry septic tanks

Block wall thickness	Height of Tank (m)	Vertical bars	Horizontal bars
150	1.0	D10 @ 600	D12 @ 600
	1.2	D12 @ 600	D12 @ 600
	1.4	D12 @ 400	D12 @ 600
200	1.6	D12 @ 400	D12 @ 600
	1.8	D16 @ 600	D12 @ 600
	2.0	D12 @ 400 fill all cells	D16 @ a 600

Table 4.2.3b - Septic tank dimensions

No. of Persons	BLACKWATER ONLY					
	A	B	C	D	W	V(m ³)
8	1000	400	1000	850	800	0.95
10	1000	600	1000	850	800	1.22
12	1000	600	1000	850	800	1.22
15	1000	600	1200	1050	800	1.34
25	1200	800	1200	1050	1000	2.10
50	1600	800	1400	1250	1000	3.00
100	2400	1200	1400	1250	1200	5.40
150	2600	1400	1600	1450	1400	8.12
200	3000	1600	1600	1450	1600	10.67
300	3400	1800	1800	1650	1800	15.44
400	4000	2200	1800	1550	2000	20.46
500	4200	2200	1800	1550	2400	25.34
600	4400	2400	2000	1850	2400	30.19

No. of Persons	ALL DOMESTIC WASTE					
	A	B	C	D	W	V(m ³)
8	1400	800	1000	850	1000	1.87
10	1400	800	1200	1050	1000	2.31
12	1800	800	1200	1050	1000	2.73
15	1800	800	1200	1050	1200	3.28
25	2000	1200	1400	1250	1400	5.60
50	3200	1600	1600	1450	1600	11.14
100	4000	2000	1800	1650	2200	21.78
150	5000	2400	2000	1850	2400	32.86
200	5600	2400	2000	1850	3000	44.40
300	6600	3400	2000	1850	3600	66.60
400	8000	4000	2000	1850	4000	88.80
500	8200	4200	2000	1850	4800	110.11
600	9000	4800	4000	1850	5200	132.76

V = Volume of Septic Tank;

For details of A, B, C, D and W see Figures 4.2a and 4.2b

Note: 'V' does not include the freeboard volume ; frequency in between the desludging is about 3.5 years ; assuming a 24h minimum retention time at 35 lpcd (wastewater) and 25 lpcy (sludge) at 96% moisture content.

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

4.2.4. Effluent absorption area

An important factor when considering the installation of a septic tank is to determine whether the soil is suitable to absorb the effluent, and whether the soil is of adequate depth and area. Generally, it can be said that the most suitable soil for an absorption area is a sandy or silty loam, and the most unsuitable soil, hard impervious clay, or rock. Where an impervious stratum such as rock or clay is present, it may not be possible to provide an absorption trench. If the slope of the ground allows the provision of imported absorbent fill of sufficient thickness, it will still be possible to have a trench or soak pit.

The absorption rate of the soil may be ascertained by carrying out the following percolation test:

At a number of representative spots within the area to be used for installation of the absorption *drains*, dig holes 300 mm square to the depth of the absorption *drain*. Pour water into the holes to a depth of 150 mm or more, and allow the water to soak away. Again pour water into the holes to a depth of 150 mm and record the times taken for the surface of the water to fall 25 mm.

Due to its technical aspect, percolation tests are not mandatory for individual buildings in section DF but is required for Institutional Buildings, Resorts and Hospitals and Industrial systems, in Section NF.

The recommended dosage of effluent in litres per metre of absorption trench per day, according to the time taken for the water surface to fall 25 mm in the test is given in Table 4.2.4, and the minimum length of the absorption trench in metres may be determined from the formula at the base of the Table.

Table 4.2.4 - Length of absorption trench for different absorption rates

Time for water level in test to fall by 25 mm (minutes)	Dosage of effluent in litres per metre of trench per day (E)
1	75
2	60
5	45
10	30
20	18
30	15
60	11
Notes: a) Length of absorption trench in metres = $1000 V/E$, Where V is the volume given in cubic meters in Table 3.4A. b) If the time taken for a fall in level of 25 mm is more than 60 minutes the soil is not suited for absorption trench method of disposal.	

4.2.5 Soakaway systems

Effluent from domestic household septic tanks shall be piped and discharged into a properly designed soakaway systems.

There are three types of appropriate systems:

- Absorption trenches (recommended)
- Separate soakaway pit
- Integrated soakaway area around the septic tank.

Absorption Trenches

The soakaway may consist of an absorption trench which conforms to the following criteria:

a) Typical dimensions

Typical dimensions for an absorption trench are approximately, width 450 mm and minimum depth of 400 mm. The trenches are packed with 75 mm size hard stone, gravel or coral to a height of 150 mm, over which a line of perforated pipes is laid along the centre of the trench, commencing about 300 mm from the beginning of the trench and thereafter running the full length of the trench. The *drain* pipe conveying the effluent to the trench extends into the trench and butts against the first perforated pipe.

b) Joints between pipes

The joints between the pipes in the trench must not be sealed. The pipes should be surrounded and covered with 75 mm broken hard stone or hard coral to within a few millimetres from the top of the trench, over which should be placed a protective covering of old iron, bag, bark or the like, before covering the trench with soil or turf.

c) Absorption trench construction

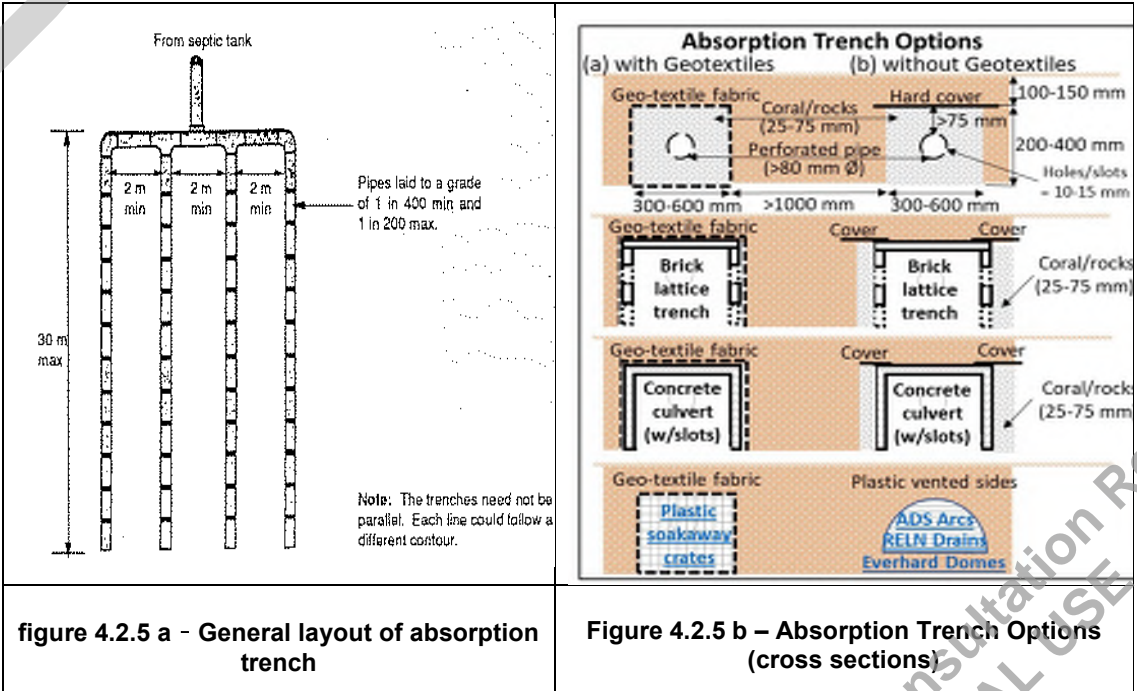
The absorption trench may also be constructed of concrete slabs laid in such a manner that there are many vertical joints left open so as to allow the effluent to escape. Concrete slabs are used to cover the top of the trench, and these may themselves be covered by soil or turf.

d) Position of absorption trench

The absorption trench should be constructed along the general contour of the ground. It must be so positioned that the prepared ground level at the trench is lower than the invert of the outlet pipe from the septic tank so as to prevent the effluent back-flooding into the septic tank. Typical absorption trenches are shown in Fig. 4.2.5 b and their general layout in 4.2.5 a.

e) Vegetation

Moisture-seeking shrubs or other vegetation planted in the vicinity of the trench will assist in the absorption of the effluent, but care should be taken in selecting the shrubs so that their roots are not likely to interfere with the efficiency of the trench. Roof water, and as far as possible surface and ground water, must be excluded from absorption trenches, so as to maintain their efficiency



Soakaway Pits

Where sufficient area for absorption trenches is not available, but there is sufficient depth of absorbent material, soak pits may be used.

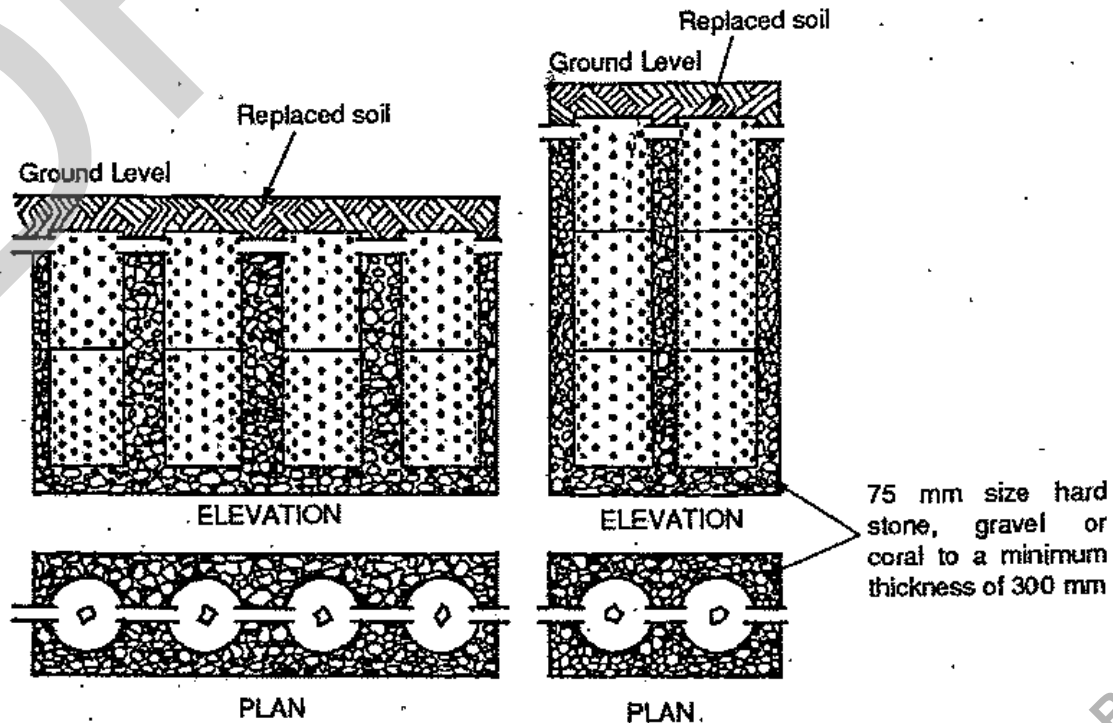
The separate soakaway pit shall conform to the following criteria:

- Minimum surface area of soakaway pit shall be 3m^2 , with depth varying in function of the wastewater flow.
- Base of soakaway pit shall be not less than 2.5 metres above high groundwater level.
- Soakaway pit shall be filled with large pieces of coral not less than 75mm in dimension.
- Coral fill shall be covered with rot resistant fabric, eg. Filter cloth, to stop soil washing into the soakaway.
- Fabric shall be covered with a minimum of 300mm of soil.

Where the soil is not stable, a typical arrangement is shown in Figure 4.2.5c. Old bitumen drums with the ends removed are shown arranged in tiers. The drums are pierced at about 200 mm centres with a pick or so. They are surrounded by 75 mm hard stone, gravel or coral. The effluent is drained into the drums. The minimum thickness of stone surrounding the drums must be 300 mm. The actual dimensions of the soak pit will depend on the nature of the soil and the volume of effluent.

In general, a soak pit is not as effective or desirable a means of disposal as absorption trenches.

Figure 4.2.5c Separate Soakaway

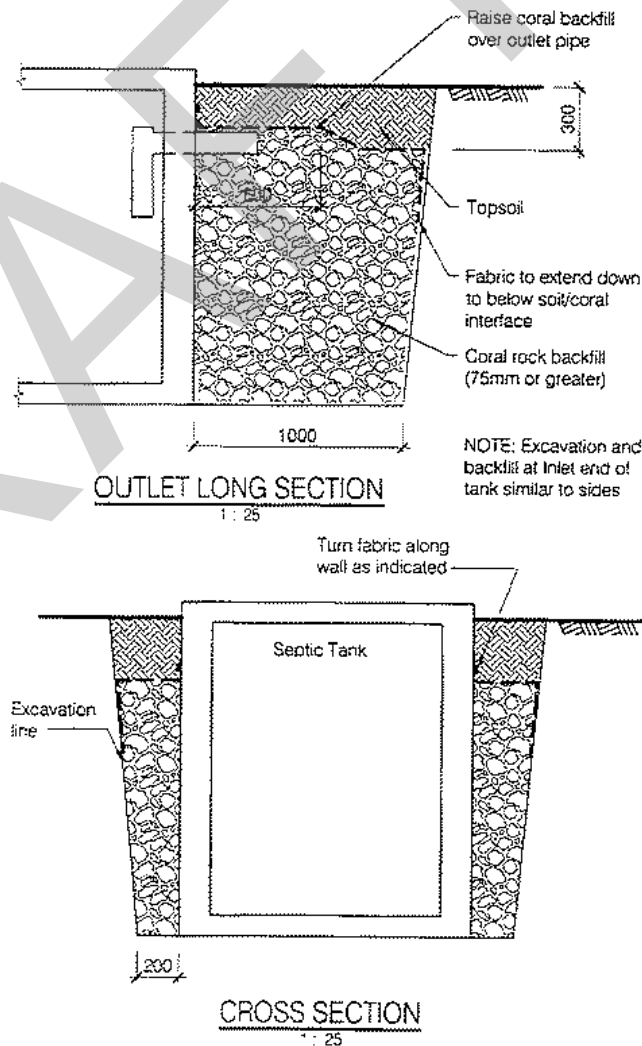


Alternative Soakaway

Alternately the soakaway may be integrated with the septic tank by constructing a soakaway of sufficient area, as above, under and around the base of the tank as follows:

- Excavate the septic tank pit 500mm deeper than usual and backfill with strong coral fill dimensions 75mm or greater to a depth of at least 500mm.
- Cover the coral fill with building plastic prior to placing the concrete base slab of the septic tank.
- Complete the septic tank construction and pipe the effluent so that is evenly dispersed through the soakaway around and underneath the tank.

Figure 4.2.5 d - Integrated Soakaway



4.2.6 Desludging

Desludging shall be carried out every five to eight years, or when the sludge level fills more than half of the first chamber, whichever is the earliest.

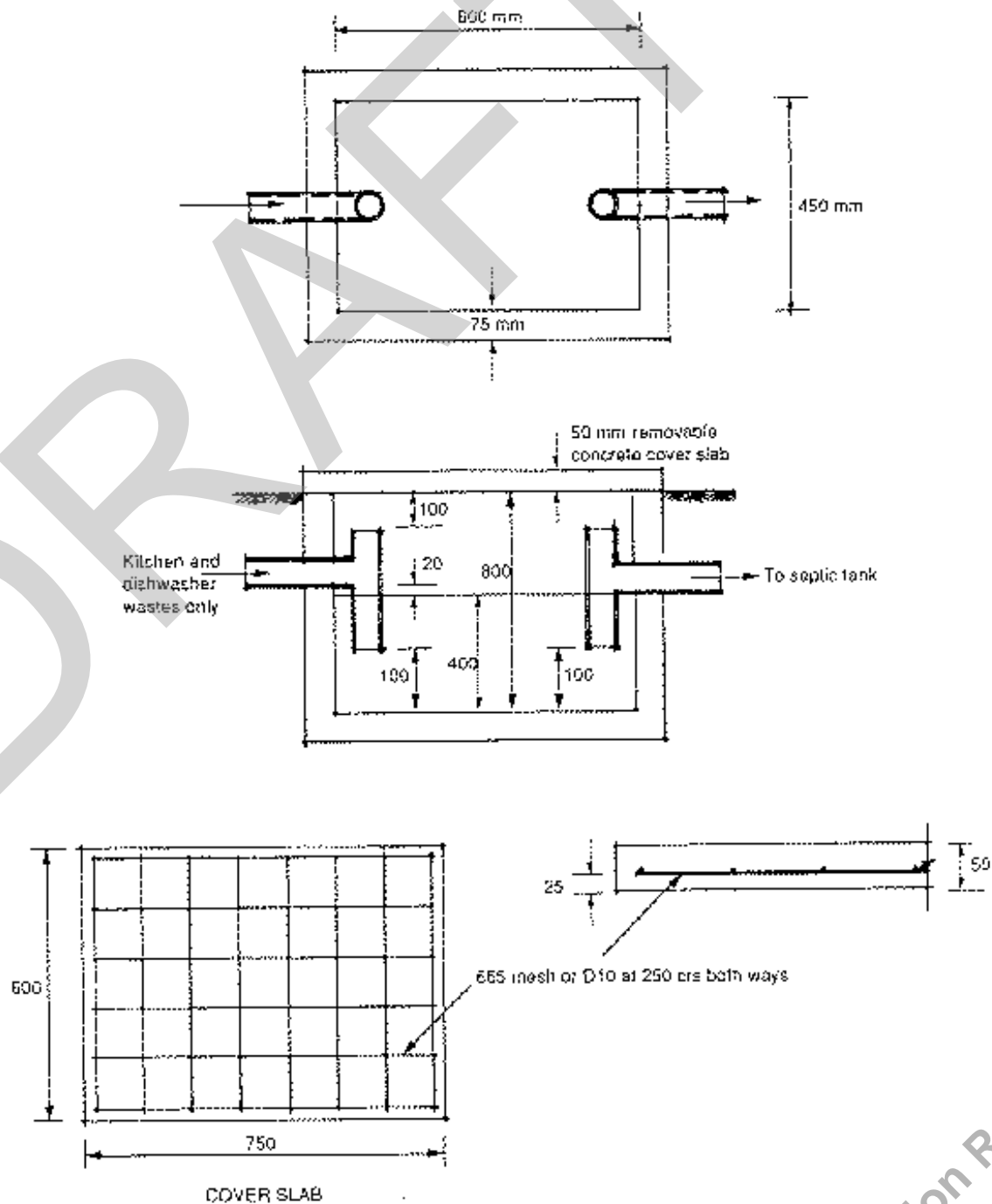
4.2.7. Grease traps

The satisfactory disposal of the discharge from kitchen *waste fixture* is frequently difficult because it is charge with grease which cannot be satisfactorily dealt with in a septic tank. This difficulty may be overcome by a grease trap located near the kitchen through which all discharge from the kitchen must pass before entering the *drain* to the septic tank. For satisfactory working of the trap it is necessary that both laundry and roof waters, and liquid and powder detergents, be excluded from it. A grease trap constructed as shown in Fig 4.2.7 has been found effective in arresting grease.

Alternatively, a smaller precast concrete or other type of grease trap may be installed.

The capacity of the grease trap below the level of the invert of the outlet must be not less than the total capacity of the sinks and dishwashers served. The cover over the trap should be removable to facilitate the cleaning of the trap.

If grease traps are not regularly cleared of the accumulated grease it would give rise to the blocking of drains, unsightly overflow through the sides of the cover slab of the trap and unpleasant odour.



Notes:

- All dimensions in mm.
- Concrete to be 20 MPa grade
- Reinforcement - 665 mash or D10 at 250 ctrs both ways all around.

Figure 4.2.7 - Details of a grease trap

4.3 Tailored treatment packages

Enhanced effluent soakage / filtering systems and Innovative / Alternative Onsite Wastewater Treatment Systems.

4.3.1 Application

Tailored treatment packages such as Enhanced Septic tank Soakage / Filtering systems standards shall apply to septic tanks located within 30m of drinking water source, marine or river environment.

4.3.2 Design

One of the following enhanced systems shall be used:

- Sand filters
- Mounds

A sand filter conforming with the design requirements shown in Figure 4.3.2 (a) shall be constructed in situations where there is sufficient soil cover. In situations where there is rock or tight soil close to the surface the Mound System as shown in Figure 4.3.2 (b) shall be utilised.

In situations where a pump station is required integral with a septic tank, a certified professional shall be engaged to design the system.

Innovative / Alternative Onsite Wastewater Treatment System (I / A OWTS) should be considered to contribute to more effective nitrogen reduction processes, responsible for eutrophication of water bodies and potential human health issues.

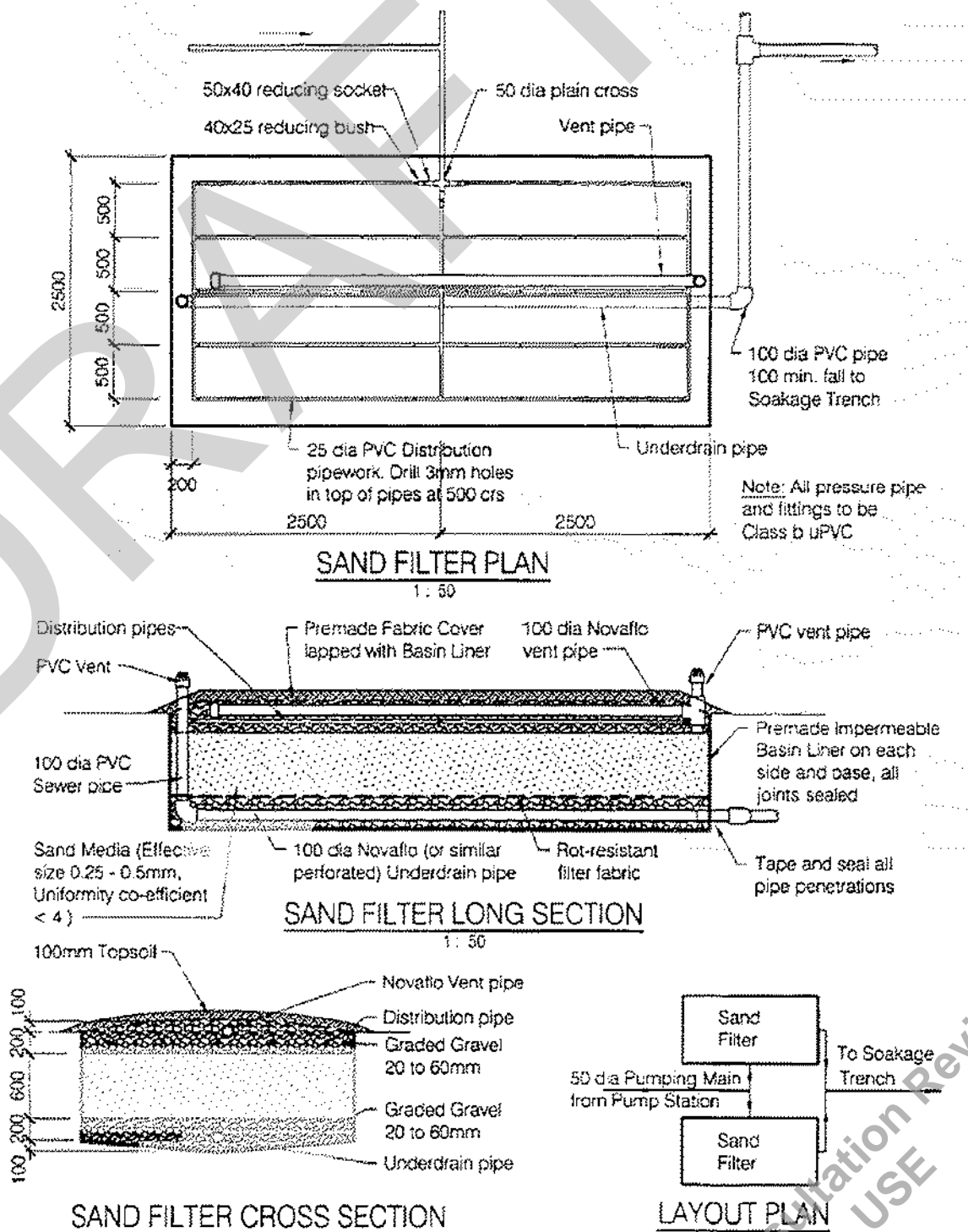
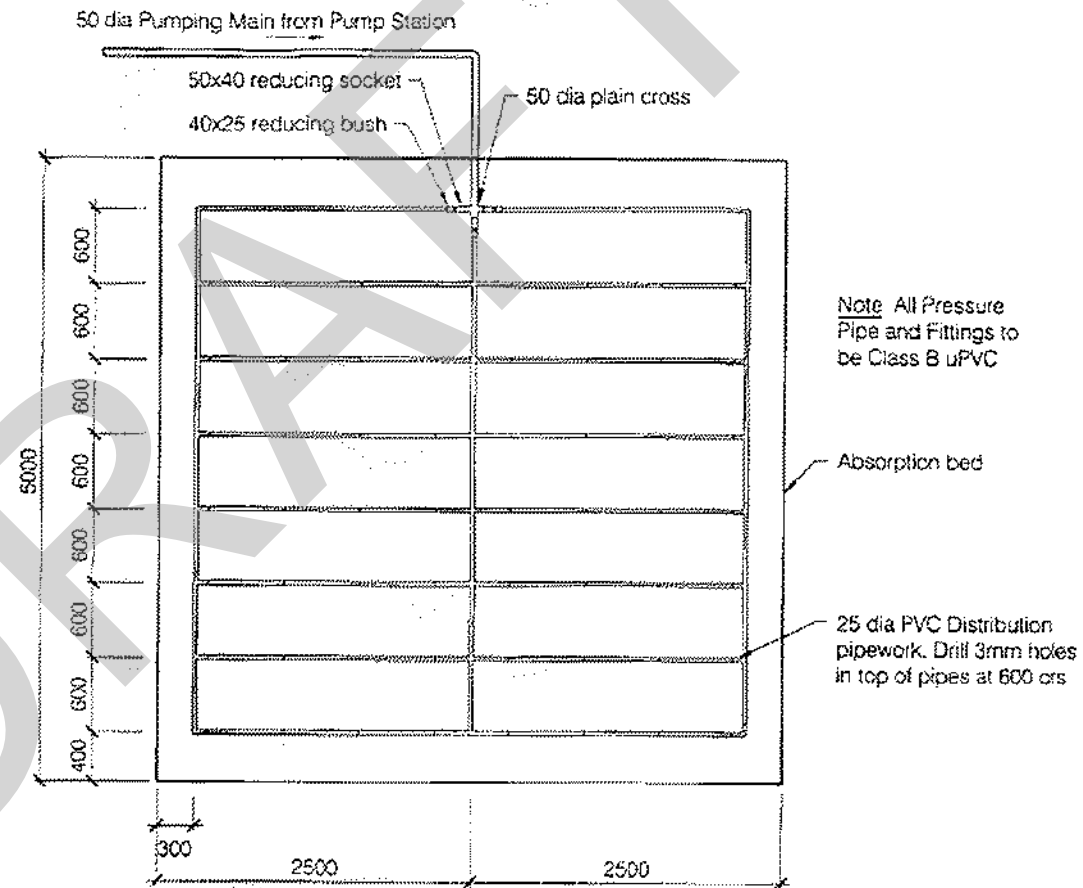
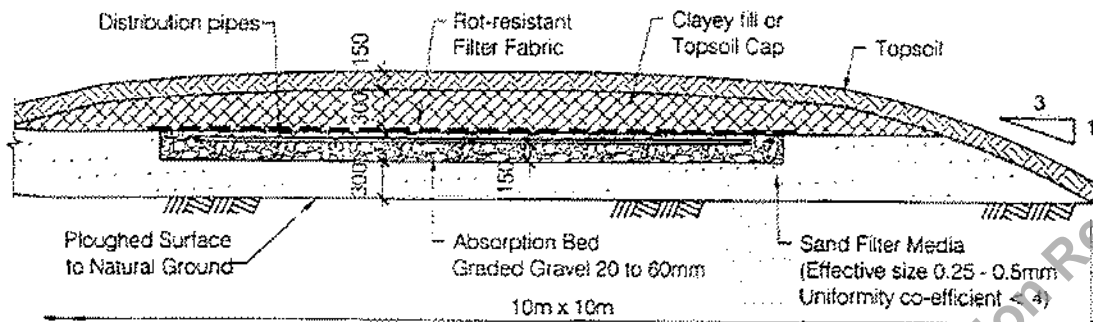


Figure 4.3.2 (a) Intermittent biological sand filter



SAND FILTER PLAN

1:50



TYPICAL SECTION

Figure 4.3.2 (b) mound system for domestic use

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Section

DG



ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO DWELLINGS AND
OUTBUILDINGS (CLASS 1 & CLASS 10)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

)

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS 1

OBJECTIVES AND REQUIRED PERFORMANCE 1

 DGP1 Minor Structures and Components 1

 DGP2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues 1

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS 2

 DG 1 Minor Structures and Components 2

 DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues 2

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES AND REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

This Section contains more specific requirements for particular parts of Class 1 and 10 buildings.

Parts of buildings and structures must be so designed and constructed that the following requirements in addition to those listed for Sections B, DC, and DF where relevant, are fulfilled.

DGP1 Minor Structures and Components

DGP1.1 Swimming pools

Suitable means for the disposal of waste and drainage must be provided to a *swimming pool*.

Access by unsupervised young children to *swimming pools* must be restricted.

DGP1.2 Aesthetics

Any minor structure such as fencing awnings and the like must be suited to the general surroundings as well as the occupancy of the building and the neighbourhood.

DGP1.3 Animal houses

Accommodation for animals and poultry must not lead to unsanitary conditions for the occupier or neighbours and the public. The accommodation must be such that the animals or poultry are not subjected to serious discomfort or overcrowding.

DGP2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues must be adequately constructed or separated to prevent-

- ignition of nearby parts of the building; or
- escape or discharge of smoke to the inside of the building or to adjacent windows, ventilation inlets, or the like.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

DG 1 Minor Structures and Components

DG1.1 Swimming Pools

Drainage: A *swimming pool* must have suitable means of drainage.

Safety fencing: A *swimming pool* with a depth of water more than 300 mm must have suitable barriers or safety fencing in accordance with AS 1926.1 and AS1926.2 to restrict access by young children to the immediate pool surrounds if the *swimming pool* is associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or is a public pool.

Water recirculation systems: A *swimming pool* must have suitable means of water reticulation in accordance with AS 1926.3.

DG1.2 Poultry and Other Domestic Animal Houses

A building used for keeping domestic birds or animals must be not less than:

- 12 m from any Class 1 building;
- 10 m from any boundary; and
- 20 m from the boundary adjoining an allotment containing or intended to contain any building other than a Class 1 building.

The floor of the building must be constructed of suitable material. Suitable arrangements must be made for the collection and disposal of animal wastes, so that they do not create a nuisance or encourage the breeding of flies and other pests. The size and general arrangements in the building must be conducive to the welfare of the poultry or animals.

DG1.3 Fences

Any fencing or free standing wall must be suited to the occupancy of the building within. It must not detract from the general aesthetic appearance of the surroundings. If any barbed wire or other such is used it must be at a height of not less than 2 m above the finished level of any existing or intended adjacent footpath

DG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

NOTE: this clause does not apply to kitchens from traditional materials or “bush kitchens”.

DG2.1 General requirements

A chimney or flue must be constructed:

- a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance to which it is connected
- b) so that the temperature of the exposed faces will not exceed a level that would cause damage to nearby parts of the building
- c) so that hot products of combustion will not -
 - escape through the walls of the chimney or flue; or
 - discharge in a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby *combustible* materials or allow smoke to penetrate through nearby *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like
- d) in such a manner as to prevent rainwater penetrating to any part of the interior of the building
- e) such that its termination is not less than -
 - 600 mm above any point of penetration of or contact with the roof; and
 - 900 above any opening or openable part in any building, which is within 3 m horizontal distance of the chimney or flue; and
- f) so that it is accessible for cleaning.

DG2.2 Open Fireplaces Deemed-to-Satisfy

An open fireplace, or solid-fuel burning appliance in which the fuel-burning compartment is not enclosed, satisfies DG2.1 if it has:

- a) a hearth constructed of stone, concrete, masonry or similar non-combustible material so that -
 - it extends not less than 300 mm beyond the front of the fireplace opening and not less than 150 mm beyond each side of that opening
 - it extends beyond the limits of the fireplace or appliance not less than 300 mm if the fireplace or appliance is free-standing from any wall of the room
 - its upper surface does not slope away from the grate or appliance; and
 - combustible material situated below the hearth (but not below that part required to extend beyond the fireplace opening or the limits of the fireplace) is not less than 155 mm from the upper surface of the hearth
- b) walls forming the sides and back of the fireplace up to not less than 300 mm above the underside of the arch or lintel which -
 - are constructed in 2 separate leaves of solid masonry not less than 180 mm thick, excluding any cavity; and
 - do not consist of concrete block masonry in the construction of the inner leaf;
- c) walls of the chimney above the level referred to in (b) -
 - constructed of masonry units with a net volume, excluding cored and similar holes, not less than 75% of their gross volume, measured on the overall rectangular shape of the units, and with an actual thickness of not less than 90 mm; and
 - lined internally to a thickness of not less than 12 mm with rendering consisting of 1 part cement, 3 parts lime, and 10 parts sand by volume, or other suitable material; and
- d) suitable damp-proof courses or flashing to maintain weatherproofing.

PART

3



PUBLIC BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS (CLASS 2 TO CLASS 9)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Section

NC



FIRE RESISTANCE

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO PUBLIC
BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS
(CLASS 2 to CLASS 9)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES 1	
NCP1 Fire Resistance and Stability.....	1
NCP2 Compartmentation and Separation	1
NCP3 Protection of Openings	1
REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	1
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	3
NC1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY	3
NC1.1 Type of construction required.....	3
NC1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys	3
NC1.3 Mixed types of construction	3
NC1.4 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums.....	3
NC1.5 Lightweight construction	3
NC1.6 Early fire hazard Indices.....	4
NC1.7 Non-combustible building elements.....	4
NC 2 Compartmentation and Separation	5
NC2.1 Application	5
NC2.2 General floor area limitations	5
NC2.3 Large Isolated Buildings of Class 5,6,7,8 or 9b.....	5
NC2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access	5
NC2.5 Class 9a buildings	6
NC2.6 Separation of openings in external walls	6
NC2.7 Separation by fire walls.....	6
NC2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey	7
NC2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys	7
NC2.10 Separation of lift shafts.....	7
NC2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft	7
NC2.12 Separation of equipment	7
NC2.13 Electricity Substations	8
NC3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS	9

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

NC3.1 Application of part	9
NC3.2 Protection of openings in external walls	9
NC3.3 Separation of openings in different fire compartments	9
NC3.4 Acceptable Methods of Protection.....	9
NC3.5 Doorways in fire walls	10
NC3.6 Sliding fire doors.....	10
NC3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits.....	10
NC3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits	10
NC3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits	11
NC3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts	11
NC3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2,3 and 4 buildings	11
NC3.12 Openings in floors for services	11
NC3.13 Openings in shafts.....	11
NC3.14 Openings for service installations.....	12
NC3.15 Installation deemed-to-satisfy	12

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATION NC1.1: Fire-Resisting Construction

SPECIFICATION NC1.5: Structural Test for Lightweight Construction

SPECIFICATION NC1.6: Early Fire Hazard Indices

SPECIFICATION NC3.4: Fire Doors, Smoke Doors, Fire Windows & Shutters

SPECIFICATION NC3.15: Penetration of Walls, Floors & Ceilings by Services

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

The design and construction of buildings must fulfill the following objectives:-

NCP1 Fire Resistance and Stability

- a) A building must be constructed so that it is protected from fire in any other building.
- b) Materials used in the construction must be such that if there is a fire in the building;
 - the spread of fire and the generation of smoke and toxic gases will be minimised;
 - stability will be maintained for a period at least sufficient for the occupants to escape and to ensure the safety of fire-fighters; and
 - there will be little risk of collapse onto adjoining property.

NCP2 Compartmentation and Separation

Buildings must be constructed to localise the effects of fire to the areas of origin. Adequate levels of passive fire protection must be provided so that sufficient time is available for the users and others to escape from the effects of fire and as an alternative, to allow the users to stay safely within unaffected compartments for the duration reasonably required to put out the fire by active means.

NCP3 Protection of Openings

Openings must be protected and service penetrations must be fire-stopped to maintain separation and compartmentation.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

NCP1.1 In order to maintain the *structural adequacy* and stability of any building for a sufficient time for the safety of the users fire fighters and others, the following must be ensured-

- the *loadbearing* elements must have the FRL appropriate to their function in the building,
- the expected fire load density, the fire risk, the height of the building, its location with reference to the availability of external firefighting resources, and the fire control measures available within the building;
- the FRL of structural elements must be at least equal to that of other elements to which they provide support; and
- the collapse of elements with a lower FRL must not result in the collapse of elements with a higher FRL.

NCP21 The size of a *fire compartment* must also be consistent with the fire severity of the fire load density it contains and the likely spread of fire between it and any other compartment, *storey* or building.

Building compartment size and separating construction must be such that the potential size of a fire and the spread of fire and smoke are limited in order to –

- protect the occupants of one part of a building from the effects of fire elsewhere in the building;
- control the spread of fire or smoke to adjoining buildings; and
- facilitate access to the building by fire-fighters.

NCP 3.1 Openings of any nature in the envelope surrounding *fire compartments* must be so protected that they do not allow the passage of dangerous amounts of heat, flames, smoke and gases in the event of a fire within or outside the compartment and for a period sufficient to–

- allow the safe evacuation of all affected people; and
- allow fire fighters to fight the fire.

The sufficiency of the duration allowed must take into account the nature of occupancy of the building as well as the proximity of other buildings and their occupancy.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NC1 FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

NC1.1 Type of construction required

The minimum Type of *fire-resisting construction* of a building must be that give in Table NC1.1, except as allowed for –

- *open spectator* stands and indoor sports stadiums in NC1.4; and
- *lightweight* construction in NC1.5.

Type A construction is the most fire- resistance and Type C the least fire- resistant of the Types of construction.

Table NC1.1 Type of Construction Required

Rise in storeys	Class of building: 2, 3, 9	Class of building: 5, 6, 7, 8
4 or more	Requires specific design	Requires specific design
3	Type A	Type B
2	Type B	Type C
1	Type C	Type C
Note: See Specification NC1.1 for details of Type A, B and C construction.		

NC1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys

In calculating the *rise in storeys*:

- a) a *storey* that has an average internal height of more than 6m is counted as –
 - one *storey* if it is the only *storey* above the ground; or
 - 2 *storeys* in any other case; and
- b) a *storey* is not counted if –
 - it is situated at the top of the building and contains only service units or equipment; or
 - it is situated partly below the finished ground and the underside of the ceilings is not more than 1m above the average finished level of the ground at the *external wall*, or if the *external wall* is more than 12m long, the average for the 12m part where the ground is lowest.

NC1.3 Mixed types of construction

A building may be of mixed Types of construction if no part of the building is supported by, or vertically over, a part of less *fire-resisting* Type.

NC1.4 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums

An *open spectator stand* or indoor sports stadium which has only changing rooms, sanitary facilities or the like below the tiered seating, need not comply with the other provision of this Part if it contains not more than 1 tier of seating and is of Type C and *non- combustible* construction.

NC1.5 Lightweight construction

Lightweight construction must comply with Specification NC1.5 if it is used in construction which is required to be *fire-resisting*.

NC1.6 Early fire hazard Indices

The Early Fire Hazard Indices of materials and assemblies inside Class 2 to 9 buildings must comply with Specification NC1.6.

NC1.7 Non-combustible building elements

a) In a building required to be of Type A or B construction, the following building elements and their components must be non-combustible:

- External walls and common walls, including all components incorporated in them including the facade covering, framing and insulation.
- The flooring and floor framing of lift pits.
- Non-loadbearing internal walls where they are required to be fire-resisting.

b) A shaft, being a lift, ventilating, pipe, garbage, or similar shaft that is not for the discharge of hot products of combustion, that is non-loadbearing, must be of non-combustible construction in:

- a building required to be of Type A construction; and
- a building is to be of Type B construction, subject to C2.10, in:
 - a Class 2, 3 or 9 building; and
 - a Class 5, 6, 7 or 8 building if the shaft connects more than 2 storeys.

c) A loadbearing internal wall and a loadbearing fire wall, including those that are part of a loadbearing shaft, must comply with Specification NC4.1.

d) The requirements of (a) and (b) do not apply to the following:

- Gaskets.
- Caulking.
- Sealants.
- Termite management systems.
- Glass, including laminated glass.
- Thermal breaks associated with glazing systems.
- Damp-proof courses.

e) The following materials may be used wherever a non-combustible material is required:

- Plasterboard.
- Perforated gypsum lath with a normal paper finish.
- Fibrous-plaster sheet.
- Fibre-reinforced cement sheeting.
- Pre-finished metal sheeting having a combustible surface finish not exceeding 1 mm thickness and where the Spread-of-Flame Index of the product is not greater than 0.
- Sarking-type materials that do not exceed 1 mm in thickness and have a Flammability Index not greater than 5.
- Bonded laminated materials where:
 - each lamina, including any core, is non-combustible; and
 - each adhesive layer does not exceed 1 mm in thickness and the total thickness of the adhesive layers does not exceed 2 mm; and
 - the Spread-of-Flame Index and the Smoke-Developed Index of the bonded laminated material do not exceed 0 and 3 respectively.

NC 2 Compartmentation and Separation

NC2.1 Application

This Part does not apply to an *open-deck carpark* or *open spectator stand*.

NC2.2 General floor area limitations

The size of any *fire compartment* in a Class 5,6,7, 8 or 9b building must not exceed the relevant maximum *floor area* and *volume* set out in Table NC2.2 except as permitted in NC2.3.

A part of a building which contains only heating, ventilating, or lift equipment, water tanks, or similar service units is not counted in the *floor area* or *volume* of a *fire compartment* if it is situated at the top of the building.

Table NC2.2 - Maximum Size of Fire Compartments

	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION OF BUILDING			
		Type A	Type B	Type C
CLASS 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9b	Max floor area	2000 m ²	1500 m ²	1000 m ²
	Max volume	12000 m ³	9000 m ³	6000 m ³

NC2.3 Large Isolated Buildings of Class 5,6,7,8 or 9b

The *floor area* of a *fire compartment* in a large isolated building may exceed that specified in Table NC2.2 to the following limits and conditions –

- a) Up to 1800m² if –
 - the building is Class 7 or 8, it contains not more than 2 *storeys* and an *open space* complying with NC2.4 (a) not less than 18m wide is provided around the building; or
- b) More than 1800 m² if –
 - the ceiling height of the fire compartment is not more than 12m, it has a smoke exhaust system in accordance with specification NE2.6 or smoke-and- heat vents and the space below the roof is divided into compartments in accordance with AS 2665; and
 - the ceiling height is more than 12 m, it has a smoke exhaust system in accordance with Specification NE2.6.
- c) If more than one building is on the allotment–
 - each building complies with (a) or (b); or
 - if the buildings are closer than 6m to each other and no building is more than 45m from the required vehicular access, they are regarded as one building and collectively comply with (a) or (b).

NC2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access

- a) An *open space* required by NC2.3 must –
 - be wholly within the allotment except as in third dot point below
 - include vehicular access in accordance with (b);
 - be next to the boundaries of the allotment, and may include any road, river, or public place adjoining the allotment;
 - not be used for the storage or processing of materials; and
 - not be built upon, except for guard houses and services structures (such as substations and pump houses) which may encroach upon the width of the space if they do not unduly impede firefighting at any part of the perimeter of the allotment or unduly add to the risk of spread of fire to any building on an adjoining allotment.

The vehicular access *required* by this Part –

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

- must be capable of providing emergency vehicle access and passage from the public road;
- must have a minimum unobstructed width of 6m and in no part be built upon or used for any purpose other than vehicular or pedestrian movement;
- may be substituted by a public road if the building faces and is accessible from the road, and is no further than 45m from it;
- must be such that reasonable pedestrian access from the vehicular access to the building is available; and
- must be of adequate load bearing capacity and unobstructed height to permit the operation and passage of Fire Brigade vehicles.

NC2.5 Class 9a buildings

The building must be divided into *fire compartments* with a maximum *floor area* of 1700 m² and further:

- a) *Ward areas* must be subdivided with walls of minimum FRL of 60/60/60 into *floor areas* of not more than 850 m² and again subdivided into parts of 425m² maximum *floor area* with smoke proof walls complying with (c);
- b) other than *ward areas* must be subdivided into parts with a maximum *floor area* of 425m² with smoke proof walls complying with (c);
- c) a wall *required* to be smoke-proof must –
- be *non-combustible* and extend to the underside of the floor above or of the roof covering;
 - only have doorways which are fitted with smoke doors complying with Specification NC3.4 and which do not extend higher than 800mm from the underside of an imperforate roof covering, floor or ceiling above it; and
 - not incorporate any other opening which is not smoke-proof; and
- d) *Fire compartments* must be separated from the remainder of the building by *fire walls* and –
- in Type A construction – floors and roof or ceiling as *required* in Specification NC1.1;
 - in Type B construction – floors with a FRL of not less than 90/90/90, and
 - in Type C construction – floors with a FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NC2.6 Separation of openings in external walls

In any building which is other than –

- an open deck car park; or
- of one or two storeys rise,

if any part of a *window* or other opening in an *external wall* (except openings in the same stairway) is situated above another opening in the *storey* next below, the opening must be protected by –

- a) a slab or other horizontal construction that-
- projects outwards from the external face of the wall not less than 1100mm;
 - extends not less than 450 mm beyond the openings concerned; and
 - is of non-combustible material having a FRL not less than 60/60/60; or
- b) a spandrel which –
- is not less than 1100mm in height;
 - extends not less than 600mm above the upper surface of the intervening floor; and
 - is of *non-combustible* material having a FRL not less than 60/60/60; or
- c) providing the *window* or opening in the upper *storey* with a glazing system with a FRL of not less than –/60/30. Any gap in the construction which separates the two *storeys* must be packed with a *non combustible* material that will withstand the relative thermal or structural movements of the walling and glazing without loss of seal.

Note: These requirements are separate from the structural requirements for glazing at B1.4.

NC2.7 Separation by fire walls

A part of a building separated from the remainder of the building by a *fire wall* is treated as a separate building if –

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

a) the *fire wall* –

- extends through all *storeys* and spaces in the nature of *storeys* that are common to that part and any adjoining part of the building;
- is carried through to the underside of the roof covering; and
- has the relevant FRL prescribed by Specification NC1.1 for each of the adjoining parts, and if these are different, the greater FRL;

b) any *openings* in a *fire wall* comply with Part NC3;

c) timber purlins or other *combustible* material do not pass through or cross the *fire wall*; and

d) where the roof of one of the adjoining parts is lower than the roof of the other part, the fire wall extends to the underside of –

- the covering of the higher roof, or not less than 6m above the covering of the lower roof;
- the lower roof if it has a FRL not less than that of the *fire wall* and no openings closer than 3m to any wall above the lower roof, or
- the design of the building must otherwise restrict the spread of fire from the lower part to the higher part.

NC2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey

If a building has parts of different classifications located alongside one another in the same *storey* –

- each building element in that *storey* must have the higher FRL prescribed in Specification NC1.1 for that element for the classifications concerned; or
- the parts must be separated in that storey by a *fire wall* with whichever is the greater of the higher FRL prescribed in Specification NC1.1 for the classifications concerned.

NC2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys

If parts of different classification are situated one above the other in adjoining *storeys* they must be separated as follows:

- Type A or B construction – The floor between the adjoining parts must have a FRL not less than that prescribed in Specification NC1.1 for the classification of the lower *storey*.
- Type C construction – The underside of the floor (including the sides and underside of any floor beams) must have a *fire-protective covering*.

NC2.10 Separation of lift shafts

Any lift (other than if wholly in an *atrium*) must be separated from the remainder of the building by enclosure in a *shaft* with its FRL as prescribed by specification NC1.1 if it connects more than two *storeys* then the openings for the lift landing doors and services must be protected in accordance with Part NC3.

NC2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft

A stairway and lift must not be in the same *shaft* if either the stairway or the lift is *required* to be in a *fire-resisting shaft*.

NC2.12 Separation of equipment

A wall having a FRL of not less than 60/60/60 must bound a room housing equipment comprising –

- a) lift motors and lift control panels;
- b) the main electrical switchboard in a building with an *effective height* of more than 25m;
- c) *required* stair pressurizing equipment; or
- d) boilers, emergency batteries, emergency generators or central smoke control plant, except –
 - equipment located in a separate *storey* (or in the topmost *storey*) and separated from the remainder of the building by floor construction having a FRL of 60/60/60;
 - smoke control exhaust fans located in the air stream if they are constructed for high temperature operation in accordance with Specification NE2.6; or

- equipment that is otherwise adequately separated from the remainder of the building.

NC2.13 Electricity Substations

If an electricity substation is situated within a building–

- it must be separated from any other part of the building by construction having a FRL of not less than 120/120/120.
- doors windows and any other openings on an *external wall* need not have a FRL if such openings are no closer to a *fire source feature* or *exit* than 3m. Any other doorways including those opening to any other part of the building must be protected with *self-closing* -/120/60 fire doors;
- electricity supply cables between a main and the substation, and between the substation and the main switchboard, must be enclosed or otherwise protected by construction having a FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
- any openings, fans or grilles for natural or mechanical ventilation must be located only on an *external wall* unless protected with an *automatic* -/120/60 fire shutter.

NC3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS

NC3.1 Application of part

- a) This Part does not apply to –
- control joints, weep holes, and the like, in masonry construction, and joints between pre-cast concrete panels, if they are not larger than necessary for the purpose; or
 - non-combustible* ventilators for sub-floor or cavity ventilation, if each does not exceed $45 \times 10^3 \text{ mm}^2$ in face area and is spaced not less than 2 m from any other ventilator in the same wall.
- b) This Part applies to openings in building elements *required* to be fire-resisting, including doorways, *windows* (including any associated fanlight or infill panel) and other fixed or openable glazed areas that do not have the *required* FRL.

NC3.2 Protection of openings in external walls

Openings in an *external wall* that is *required* to have a FRL must –

- a) be not less distance from a *fire-source feature* to which it is exposed than –
- 1m in a building not more than 1 *storey* in *rise*; or
 - 1.5m in a building more than 1 *storey* in *rise*;
- b) be protected in accordance with NC3.4 if it is situated closer from a *fire-source feature* to which it is exposed than –
- 3m from a side or rear boundary of the allotment;
 - 6m from the far boundary of a road adjoining the allotment; or
 - 6m from another building on the allotment that is not Class 10; and
- c) if *required* to be protected under (b), not occupy more than 1/3 of the area of the *external wall* of the *storey* in which it is located unless –
- they are in Class 9b building used as an *open spectator stand*; or
 - they face a public road and are located in a *storey* at ground level.

NC3.3 Separation of openings in different fire compartments

Unless they are protected in accordance with NC3.4, the distance between openings in *external walls* in compartments separated by a *fire wall* must not be less than that set out in Table NC3.3.

Table NC3.3 - Distance Between Openings in Different Compartments

Angle between walls	Minimum distance between openings
0° (walls opposite)	6 m
more than 0° to 45°	5 m
more than 45° to 90°	4 m
more than 90° to 135°	3 m
more than 135° to 160°	2 m

NC3.4 Acceptable Methods of Protection

- a) Where protection is *required*, doorways, *windows*, and other openings must be fitted with suitable –
- Doorways** - /60/30 *self-closing* or *automatic* fire doors and fire shutters;
 - Windows** - /60/30 *fire windows* (*automatic* or permanently fixed in the closed position) or - /60/30 *automatic* fire shutters;
 - Other openings** - construction having a FRL not less than /60/30.

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

b) Fire doors, smoke doors, fire windows and fire shutters satisfy (a) if they comply with Specification NC3.4

NC3.5 Doorways in fire walls

The aggregate width of openings for doorways in a *fire wall* which are not part of a *horizontal exit* must not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ of the length of the *fire wall*, and each doorway must be protected by –

- a) Two fire doors or fire shutters, one on each side of the doorway, each of which –
- has a FRL of not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ that *required* by Specification NC1.1 for the *fire wall*; and
 - is *self-closing* unless provided with an *automatic* release mechanism for any hold-open device which will close the door upon actuation of any of the fire/smoke detection systems installed on both sides of the *fire wall*;
- b) a fire door on one side and a fire shutter on the other side of the doorway, each of which complies with (a); or
- c) a single fire door or a non metallic fire shutter, which –
- has a FRL of not less than that *required* by Specification NC1.1 for the *fire wall*; and
 - is *self-closing* unless provided with an *automatic* release mechanism for any hold open device which will close the door upon actuation of any of the fire-smoke detection systems installed on both sides of the *fire wall*. (based on the reliability of the fire alarm, inspection, testing and maintenance servicing capability being assured.)

NC3.6 Sliding fire doors

If a doorway in a *fire wall* is fitted with a sliding fire door which is open when the building is in use –

- it must be held open with a fusible link, or an electromagnetic device which when de-activated, allows the door to be fully closed not less than 20 seconds, and not more than 30 seconds, after release; and
- thermal or smoke detectors as appropriate must be installed on each side of the doorway, in accordance with NZS 4232; and
- an audible warning device located near the doorway and red flashing warning light of a suitable intensity on each side of the doorway must be activated when a *required*
- detector in the part of the building served by the door is activated; and
- signs must be installed on each side of the doorway located directly over the opening stating –

WARNING – SLIDING FIRE DOOR

in capital letters not less than 50 mm high in a color contrasting with the background.

NC3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits

A doorway that is part of a *horizontal exit* must be protected–

- in a Class 7 or 8 building – by 2 fire doors, one on each side of the doorway, each with a FRL of not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ that *required* by Specification NC1.1 for the *fire wall*; or
- in all classes of buildings, by a single fire door which has a FRL of not less than that *required* by Specification NC1.1 for the *fire wall*,

and each door must be *self-closing* or provided with *automatic* release of any hold-open device upon detection of smoke of fire.

NC3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits

a) A doorway that does not open to a road or *open space* must be protected by a *self-closing* or *automatic* -/60/30 fire door if it opens to a *fire-isolated stairway*, *fire-isolated passageway* or *fire-isolated ramp*.

b) A *window* in an *external wall* of a *fire-isolated stairway*, *fire-isolated passageway* or *fire-isolated ramp* must be protected in accordance with NC3.4 if it is within 6 m of, and exposed to –

- a fire-source feature; or

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

- another window or other opening in a wall of the same building, unless they both serve the same fire-isolated enclosure.

NC3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits

Fire-isolated *exits* must not be penetrated by any service other than –

- a) electrical wiring associated with a lighting or pressurizing system servicing the *exit*;
- b) ducting associated with the pressurizing system if it –
 - is constructed of material having a FRL of not less than 60/60/60 where it passes through any other part of the building; and
 - does not open into any other part of the building; or
- c) water supply pipes for the services or domestic use.

NC3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts

a) **Doorways** – If a lift *shaft* is *required* to be fire-isolated under Part NC2, an entrance doorway to that *shaft* must be protected by

- -/60/30 fire doors that –
- comply with AS1735.11; and

are set to remain closed except when discharging or receiving passengers, goods or vehicles.

b) **Lift Indicator panel** - A lift call panel, indicator panel or other panel in the wall of a fire-isolated lift *shaft* must be backed by construction having a FRL of not less than 60/60/60 if it exceeds 35 x 10³mm² in area.

NC3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2,3 and 4 buildings

a) A doorway in a Class 2 or 3 building must be protected if it provides access from a *sole-occupancy unit* to –

- a *public corridor*, public hallway, or the like;
- a room not within a *sole-occupancy unit*;
- the landing of an internal non-fire-isolated *stairway* that serves as a *required exit*; or
- another *sole-occupancy unit*.

b) A doorway in a Class 4 part must be protected if it provides access to any other internal part of the building.

c) Protection for a doorway must be at least –

- in a building of Type A or B construction – a *self-closing* -
- /30/30 fire door; and
- in a building to Type C construction – a *self-closing* tight fitting solid core door not less than 35mm thick in a rebated frame.

d) Other openings in *internal walls* which are *required* to have a FRL to inhibit the lateral spread of fire must not reduce the *fire-resisting* performance of the wall.

NC3.12 Openings in floors for services

In a building of Type A and B construction, services associated with the functioning of the building and passing through a floor must either be installed in *shafts* complying with Specification NC1.1 or protected in accordance with NC3.14.

NC3.13 Openings in shafts

In a building of Type A or B construction, an opening in a wall providing access to a ventilating, pipe, garbage or other service *shaft* must be protected by –

- if it is in a *sanitary compartment* – a door or panel which, together with its frame, has FRL of not less than -/30/-; or
- a *self-closing* -/30/- fire door or hopper; or

- an access panel having a FRL or not less than -/30/-.

NC3.14 Openings for service installations

An electrical, electronic, plumbing, mechanical ventilation or air-conditioning, or other service that penetrates a building element (other than an *external wall* or roof) that is *required* to have a FRL or a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*, must be installed so that the *fire-resisting* performance of the building element is not impaired.

NC3.15 Installation deemed-to-satisfy

Installation satisfies NC3.14 if –

- a) the method and materials used are identical with a prototype assembly of the service and building element which has achieved the *required* FRL or *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*;
- b) it complies with (a) except for the *insulation* criterion relating to the service when –
 - the service is farther than 100mm from any *combustible* material; and
 - it is not located in a *required exit*;
- c) in the case of ventilating or air-conditioning ducts or equipment the installation is in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1;
- d) the service is a metal pipe installed in accordance with Specification NC3.15 and it penetrates a wall, floor or ceiling, but not a ceiling *required* to have a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*;
- e) the service is sanitary plumbing installed in accordance with Specification NC3.15 and it –
 - is of metal or UPVC pipe; and
 - penetrates the floors of a Class 5,6,7,8 or 9b building; and
 - is in *sanitary compartments* which are separated from other parts of the building by walls with the FRL *required* by Specification NC1.1 for a stair *shaft* in the building and a *self-closing* - /60/30 fire door;
- f) the service is a wire or cable, or a cluster of wires or cables installed in accordance with Specification NC3.15 and it penetrates a wall, floor or ceiling, but not a ceiling *required* to have a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*; or
- g) the service is an electrical switch, outlet, or the like, and it is installed in accordance with Specification NC3.15.

SPECIFICATION NC1.1

Fire-Resisting Construction

Contents

1. Scope	14
2. General requirements	14
2.1 Exposure to Fire-source Features.....	14
2.2 Fire Protection for a Support of Another Part.....	14
2.3 Lintels.....	14
2.4 Attachments not to Impair Fire-resistance.....	14
2.5 General Concessions	15
3. Type A Fire-resisting construction.	15
3.1 Fire-resistance of building elements	15
3.2 Concessions for Floors	15
3.3 Floor Loading of Class 5 and 9b Buildings: Concession	17
3.4 Roof Superimposed on Concrete Slab: Concession.....	17
3.5 Roofs: Concession	17
3.6 Roof lights.....	17
3.7 Internal Columns and Walls: Concession.....	17
3.8 Open Spectator Stands and Indoor Sports Stadiums Concession.....	17
3.9 Carpark: Concessions	18
3.10 Mezzanine Floors: Concession.....	18
4. Type B Fire-Resisting Construction	18
4.1 Fire-resistance of Building Elements	18
4.2 Carpark: Concessions	20
5. Type C Fire-resisting construction	20
5.1 Fire-resistance of Building Elements	20
5.2 Carpark: Concessions	21

1. Scope

This Specification contains requirements for the *fire-resisting construction* of building elements.

2. General requirements

2.1 Exposure to Fire-source Features

a) A part of a building element is exposed to a *fire-source feature* if there is no obstruction to any horizontal

- between that part and the *fire-source feature* or a vertical projection of the feature. Where another part of the building obstructs any such horizontal line, the part under consideration will still be considered exposed if the obstruction has –
- a FRL of not less than 30/-/-; or is transparent or translucent.

b) A part of a building element is not exposed to a fire-source feature if the fire-source feature is -

- an external wall of another building that stands on the allotment and the part concerned is more than 15 m above the highest part of that external wall; or
- a side or rear boundary of the allotment and the part concerned is below the level of the finished ground at every relevant part of the boundary concerned.

c) If various distances apply for different parts of a building element -

- the entire element must have the FRL applicable to that part having the least distance between itself and the relevant fire-source feature; or
- each part of the element must have the FRL applicable according to its individual distance from the relevant fire-source feature,

but this provision does not override or permit any exemption from Clause 2.2.

2.2 Fire Protection for a Support of Another Part

A part of a building that gives direct vertical or lateral support to another part *required* to have a FRL, must have a FRL in respect of *structural adequacy* not less than the greater of:

- that *required* for the part it supports; or
- that *required* for the part itself,

and be non-combustible if the part it supports is *required* to be non-combustible.

2.3 Lintels

A lintel must have the FRL *required* for the part of building in which it is situated. It need not have the FRL if it does not contribute to the support of a fire door, fire window or fire shutter, and:

a) it spans an opening in -

- a wall of a building containing only one storey;
- a non-loadbearing wall of a Class 2 or 3 building; or

b) it spans an opening in masonry which is not more than 150 mm thick and -

- not more than 3 m wide if the masonry is nonloadbearing; or
- not more than 1.8 m wide if the masonry is loadbearing and part of one of the leaves of a cavity wall.

2.4 Attachments not to Impair Fire-resistance

A *combustible* material may be used as a finish or lining to a wall or roof, or in a sign, sunscreen or blind, awning, or other attachment to a building element which has the *required* FRL if -

- the material is exempt under clause 7 of Specification NC1.6 or complies with the Early Fire Hazard Indices prescribed in clause 2 of the same Specification.
- it is not located near or directly above a *required exit* so as to make the exit unusable in a fire; and
- it does not otherwise constitute an undue risk of fire spread via the facade of the building.

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

The attachment of a facing or finish, or the installation of ducting or any other service, to a part of a building *required* to have a FRL must not impair the *required* FRL of that part.

2.5 General Concessions

- a) Steel columns - Except in a *fire wall* or *common wall*, a steel column need not have a FRL in a building that contains only one *storey*.
- b) Timber Columns - In a building that contains only one *storey* a timber column may be used provided:
 - in a fire wall or common wall the column has the required FRL.
 - in all other cases, the column has a FRL of not less than 30/-/-.
- c) Structures on roofs - A *non-combustible* structure situated on a roof need not comply with the other provisions of this Specification if it only contains one or more of the following -
 - Hot water or other water tanks.
 - Ventilating ductwork, ventilating fans and their motors.
 - Air-conditioning chillers.
 - *Window* cleaning equipment.
 - Other service units that are *non-combustible* and do not contain *combustible* fluids.

3. Type A Fire-resisting construction.

3.1 Fire-resistance of building elements

In a building *required* to be of Type A construction:

- a) each part mentioned in Table 3, and any beam or column in it, must have a FRL not less than that listed in the Table, for the particular Class of building concerned;
- b) external walls, common walls and floors must be non-combustible;
- c) any *internal wall required* to have a FRL must extend to -
 - the underside of the floor next above;
 - the underside of a roof complying with Table 3; or
 - a ceiling which is immediately below the roof and has a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire* to the roof space of 60 minutes;
- d) an internal wall required to be fire-resisting; and
- e) ventilating, pipe, garbage, or similar shaft that is not for the discharge of hot products of combustion,
- f) must be of non-combustible construction and if of lightweight construction comply with Specification NC1.5;
- g) any flooring and floor framing in a lift pit must be *non-combustible*; and
- h) the FRLs specified in Table 3 for an external column apply also to those parts of an internal column that face and are within 1.5 m of a *window* and are exposed through that *window* to a *fire-source feature*.

3.2 Concessions for Floors

The following floors need not comply with clause 3.1:

- a) A floor laid directly on the ground.
- b) In a Class 2, 3, 5 or 9 building if the space below is not a *storey*, does not accommodate motor vehicles, is not a storage or work area, and is not used for any other ancillary purpose.
- c) It is a timber *stage* floor in a Class 9b building laid over a floor having the *required* FRL if the space below the *stage* is not used as a dressing room, store room, or the like.
- d) It separates 2 *storeys* within the same *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building

Table 3 - Type A Construction: FRL if Building Elements

Building element	FRL:(in minutes) Structural adequacy/integrity/insulation		
	Class of building		
	2, 3 or 4 part		5, 6, 7, 8 or 9
EXTERNAL WALL or other external building element excluding a roof, where the distance from any <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed is -			
For <i>loadbearing</i> parts -			
	less than 1.5 m	90/90/90	120/120/120
	1.5 to less than 3 m	90/60/60	120/90/90
	3 or more	90/60/30	120/60/30
For non- <i>loadbearing</i> parts -			
	less than 1.5 m	90/90/0	120/120/120
	1.5 to less than 3 m	90/60/60	120/90/90
	3 or more	-/-/-	-/-/-
EXTERNAL COLUMN not incorporated in an <i>external wall</i> , where the distance from any <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed -			
	less than 3 m	90/-/-	120/-/-
	3 m or more	-/-/-	-/-/-
COMMON WALLS AND FIRE WALL		90/90/90	120/120/120
INTERNAL WALLS			
<i>Fire-resisting</i> lift or stair <i>shafts</i> -			
	Loadbearing	90/90/90	90/90/90
	Non-loadbearing	90/90/90	90/90/90
Bounding <i>public corridors</i> , public hallways and the like -			
	Loadbearing	90/90/90	90/-/-
	Non-loadbearing	60/60/60	-/-/-
Between or bounding <i>sole-occupancy units</i> -			
	Loadbearing	90/90/90	90/-/-
	Non-loadbearing	60/60/60	-/-/-
Ventilating, pipe, garbage, and like <i>shafts</i> not used for the discharge of hot products of combustion -			
	Loadbearing	90/90/90	90/90/90
	Non-loadbearing	90/90/90	90/90/90
OTHER LOADBEARING INTERNAL WALLS; AND INTERNAL BEAMS, TRUSSES AND COLUMNS		90/-/-	90/-/-
FLOORS		90/90/90	120/120/120
ROOFS		90/60/30	120/60/30
MAIN ROOF BEAMS		90/-/-	120/-/-

3.3 Floor Loading of Class 5 and 9b Buildings: Concession

If a floor in a Class 5 or 9b building is designed for a live load not exceeding 3 kPa:

- the floor next above (including floor beams) may have an FRL, of 90/90/90; or
- the roof if that is next above (including roof beams) may have a FRL 90/60/30.

3.4 Roof Superimposed on Concrete Slab: Concession

A roof not complying with clause 3.1 as to *fire-resisting construction* may be superimposed on a concrete slab roof if:

- the superimposed roof and any construction between it and the concrete slab roof are *non-combustible* throughout; and
- the concrete slab roof complies with Table 3.

3.5 Roofs: Concession

A roof need not comply with Table 3 if:

- a) in other than a Class 2 or 3 building -
 - it has an *effective height* of not more than 25 m and the roof covering and its supporting members are of *non-combustible* construction; or
 - the ceiling immediately below the roof has a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the roof space of not less than 60 minutes; or
 - the building has a *non-combustible* roof covering and the *storey* immediately below the roof has an *automatic sprinkler system* installed throughout; or
- b) in a Class 2 or 3 building -
 - all *internal walls* bounding the *sole-occupancy units* on the topmost *storey* extend to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof covering; or
 - the *sole-occupancy unit* is the only unit in that *storey*.

3.6 Roof lights

If a roof is *required* to have a FRL or be *non-combustible*, a roof light installed in that roof must:

- a) have an area not more than 20% of roof surface;
- b) be not less than 3 m from -
 - any boundary of the allotment other than the boundary with a road or public place;
 - any part of the building which projects above the roof unless that part has the FRL *required* of a *fire wall* and any openings in the wall are protected in accordance with NC3.4;
 - any roof light in an adjoining *sole-occupancy unit* if the walls bounding the unit are *required* to have an FRL; and
 - any roof light in an adjoining *fire-separated section* of the building; and
- c) be installed in a way that will maintain the level of protection to the roof space provided by a required ceiling with a resistance to the incipient spread of fire.

3.7 Internal Columns and Walls: Concession

If under Clause 3.5 a roof that does not have a FRL is used in a building with an *effective height* of not more than 25 m, internal columns which are not those referred to in clause 3.1(f) and load bearing *internal walls* which are not *fire walls*, in the *storey* immediately below that roof may have a FRL of 60/60/60.

3.8 Open Spectator Stands and Indoor Sports Stadiums Concession

In an *open spectator stand* or indoor sports stadium, the following building elements need not have the FRL specified in Table 3:

- a) The roof if it is *non-combustible*
- b) Columns and *loadbearing* walls supporting only the roof if they are *non-combustible*
- c) any *non-loadbearing* part of an *external wall* less than 3 m -
 - from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed if it has a FRL of not less than 60/60/60 and is *non-combustible*; or
 - from an external wall of another open spectator stand if it is *non-combustible*.

3.9 Carparks: Concessions

The FRLs in Table 3.9 apply to a carpark instead of those at Table 3.

Table 3.9 - FRL for Carparks

Building element	FRL
Column or beam – less than 4.5 m from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed	60/-/-
Wall – less than 3 m from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed	60/60/60
Other steel column – ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length not greater than 26 m ² /tonne	-/-/-
Any other column (other than a column supporting only the roof)	60/-/-
Fire wall or lift or stair shaft	90/90/90
Any other steel floor beam – which is in continuous contact with a concrete floor slab and has a ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length not more than 30 m ² /tonne	-/-/-
Any other floor beam	60/-/-
Floor slab or vehicle ramp	60/60/60
Roof and columns supporting only the roof	-/-/-

3.10 Mezzanine Floors: Concession

Except in a Class 9b building which is a spectator viewing area that accommodates more than 100 persons under MD1.13, *mezzanine floors* and any supporting building elements need not have a FRL or be *non-combustible* if every wall or column that supports any part of the building other than the *mezzanine floor* or floors within 6 m of a *mezzanine floor* has its FRL increased from that otherwise required, as set out in Table 3.10.

Table 3.10 - Increased FRLs: Construction Surrounding Mezzanines

Level otherwise required for any FRL criterion (mins)	Increase in level to (not less than):
90	60
60	90
90	120
The increase in level applies to each FRL criterion (<i>structural adequacy, integrity or insulation</i>) relevant to the building element concerned.	

4. Type B Fire-Resisting Construction

4.1 Fire-resistance of Building Elements

In a building required to be of Type B construction:

each part mentioned in Table 4, and any beam or column in it, must have a FRL not less than that listed a) in the Table for the particular Class of building concerned;

b) a common wall, the flooring and floor framing in any lift pit, and an external wall where a FRL is listed in Table 4, must be non-combustible;

c) if a stair shaft supports any floor or a structural part of it -

- the floor or part must have a FRL of 60/ - / - or more; or
- the junction of the stair shaft must be constructed so that the floor or part will be free to sag or fall in a fire without causing structural damage to the shaft;

Table 4 - Type B Construction: FRL of Building Elements

Building element		FRL: (in minutes) structural adequacy/integrity/insulation	
		Class of building	
		2, 3 or 4 part	5, 6, 7, 8 or 9
EXTERNAL WALL or other external building element excluding a roof, where the distance from any <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed is -			
For <i>loadbearing</i> parts:			
	less than 1.5 m	60/60/60	90/90/90
	1.5 to less than 3 m	60/60/30	90/90/60
	3 or more	60/30/-	90/30/30
For <i>non-loadbearing</i> parts:			
	less than 1.5 m	60/60/60	90/90/90
	1.5 to less than 3 m	60/60/30	90/90/60
	3 or more	-/-/-	-/-/-
EXTERNAL COLUMN not incorporated in an <i>external wall</i> , where the distance from any <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed:			
	less than 3 m	90/-/-	120/-/-
	3 m or more	-/-/-	-/-/-
COMMON WALLS AND FIRE WALL		90/90/90	120/120/120
INTERNAL WALLS			
Fire-resisting lift or stair shafts:			
	Loadbearing	60/60/60	60/60/60
	Non-loadbearing	60/60/60	60/60/60
Bounding <i>public corridors</i> , public hallways and the like:			
	Loadbearing	60/60/60	60/-/-
	Non-loadbearing	60/60/60	-/-/-
Between or bounding <i>sole-occupancy units</i> :			
	Loadbearing	60/60/60	60/-/-
	Non-loadbearing	60/60/60	-/-/-
OTHER LOADBEARING INTERNAL WALLS; AND INTERNAL BEAMS, TRUSSES AND COLUMNS		60/-/-	60/-/-
FLOORS		60/30/30	60/60/60
MAIN ROOF BEAMS		60/-/-	60/-/-
Note: See NC2.5(d) for Class 9a buildings			

d) any internal wall which is required to have a FRL must extend to -

- the underside of the floor next above;
- the underside of a ceiling having a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or
- the underside of the roof covering if it is non-combustible, or 450 mm above the roof covering if it is combustible, and must not be crossed by timber purlins or other combustible material,

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

unless the wall bounds a sole-occupancy unit in the topmost (or only) storey and there is only one unit in that storey -

e) an internal wall required to be fire-resisting must be of non-combustible construction, and if it is of lightweight construction, it must comply with Specification NC1.5;

f) lift, ventilation, pipe, garbage, and similar shaft which are not for the discharge of hot products of combustion and not loadbearing, must be of non-combustible construction in Class 2 to 9 buildings; and

g) all external walls and fire walls within 1.5 m of the boundary, excluding a boundary adjoining a public road or stream or other open water channel, must be extended to not less than 450 mm above the adjoining roof line to form a parapet.

4.2 Carparks: Concessions

The FRLs in Table 4.2 apply to a carpark instead of those at Table 4.

Table 4.2 - FRL for Carparks

Building element	FRL
Column or beam - less than 4.5 m from a <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed	60/-/-
Wall - less than 3 m from a <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed	60/60/60
Other steel column - ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length not greater than 26 m ² /tonne	-/-/-
Any other column	60/-/-
Fire wall or lift or stair shaft	60/60/60
Any other steel floor beam - which is in continuous contact with a concrete floor slab and has a ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length not more than 30 m ² /tonne	-/-/-
Any other floor beam	60/-/-

5. Type C Fire-resisting construction

5.1 Fire-resistance of Building Elements

In a building *required* to be of Type C construction:

a) A building element listed in Table 5, and any beam or column incorporated in it, must have a FRL not less than that listed in the Table for the particular Class of building concerned.

b) An *external wall* that is *required* by Table 5 to have a FRL may be considered to have a FRL if the outer part of the wall has the *required* FRL.

c) A *fire wall* or an *internal wall* bounding a sole occupancy unit or separating adjoining units, if it is of *lightweight construction*, must comply with Specification NC1.5.

d) In a Class 2 or 3 building an *internal wall* which is *required* by Table 5 to have a FRL must extend

- to the underside of the floor next above if that floor has a FRL of at least 30/30/30 or to a fire protective covering on the underside of the floor;
- to the underside of a ceiling having a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire* to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or
- to the underside of the roof covering if it is *non-combustible*, or 450 mm above the adjoining roof covering if it is *combustible*, and must not be crossed by timber purlins or other *combustible* material,

unless the wall bounds a *sole-occupancy unit* in the topmost (or only) storey and there is only one unit in that storey.

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

e) All *external walls* and *fire walls* within 1.5 m of the boundary, excluding a boundary adjoining a public road or stream or other open water channel, must be extended to not less than 450 mm above the adjoining roof line to form a parapet.

Table 5 - Type C Construction: FRL of Building Elements

Building element	FRL: (in minutes)			
	Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation			
	Class of building			
	2	3 or 4 part	5, 6, 7, 8 or 9	
EXTERNAL WALL or other external building element excluding a roof, where the distance from any <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed is:				
	less than 1.5 m	60/60/60	60/60/60	60/60/60
EXTERNAL COLUMN not incorporated in an <i>external wall</i> , where the distance from any <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed:				
	less than 1.5 m	60/-/-	60/-/-	90/-/-
COMMON WALLS AND FIRE WALL		60/60/60	60/60/60	60/60/60
INTERNAL WALLS				
Bounding <i>public corridors</i> , public hallways and the like:		30/30/30	60/60/60	-/-/-
Between or bounding <i>sole-occupancy units</i>		30/30/30	60/60/60	-/-/-
Bounding a Stair if required to be rated		30/30/30	60/60/60	-/-/-
Note: See NC2.5(d) for floors of Class 9a buildings				

5.2 Carparks: Concessions

The FRLs in Table 5.2 apply to a carpark instead of those at Table 5.

Table 5.2 - FRLs for Carparks

Building element	FRL
Column or beam: less than 1.5 m from a <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed	60/-/-
Wall: less than 1.5 m from a <i>fire-source feature</i> to which it is exposed	60/-/-
Other steel column: ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length not greater than 26 m ² /tonne	-/-/-
Any other column	60/-/-
Any other steel floor beam: which is in continuous contact with a concrete floor slab and has a ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length not more than 30 m ² /tonne	-/-/-
Any other floor beam	60/-/-

SPECIFICATION NC1.5

Structural Tests for Lightweight Construction

Contents

1. Scope	22
2. Definition	22
3. Application	22
4. Test methods.....	22
5. Test specimens	23
6. Criteria of compliance.....	23
7. Wall systems	24
8. Construction bounding means of egress	24
9. Requirements for certain Class 9b buildings.....	24
10. Lift Shafts	24

1. Scope

This Specification contains the tests to be applied and criteria to be satisfied by *lightweight construction*.

2. Definition

Lightweight construction is –

a) *fire-resisting construction* which –

- is not in continuous contact with the principal construction that it protects from fire; or
- is of sheet or board material, plaster, render, sprayed application, or other material similarly susceptible to damage by pressure or abrasion;

b) *fire-resisting construction* which incorporates or comprises –

- concrete containing pumice, perlite, vermiculite, or other soft material; or
- masonry having a thickness less than 70mm.

3. Application

The tests prescribed in this Specification apply to construction other than concrete or masonry which need not be tested in accordance with this Specification if it is designed –

- in accordance with this Code; and
- to resist, as serviceability loads, the appropriate pressure and impact defined in this Specification.

4. Test methods

Tests must be carried out in accordance with the following:

- Materials tests** – in accordance with the methods specified for the constituent materials of construction in the Standards adopted by reference in this Code.

SECTION NC – FIRE RESISTANCE

b) **For resistance to static pressure** – The provisions for testing walls under transverse load in ASTM E72-22, except that the chamber method must not be used.

- the load must be applied dynamically at a frequency not less than 1 Hz and not more than 3 Hz; and
- it is sufficient to test one specimen with the pressure applied from the side of the construction on which the lift will operate.

c) **For resistance to Impact** – The provisions for testing wall systems in ASTM E695-03, except that –

- the points of impact must be set at 1.5m above finished floor level or 1.5m above the part of the specimen that corresponds to finished floor level; and
- the diameter of the impact bag must be between 225mm and 260mm and the bag must weigh 27.2 ± 0.1 Kg;
- the mass must be achieved by putting loose, dry sand into the bag and must be adjusted before each series of impact tests; and
- the method may be used also for wall that depart from the vertical or that are curved and in cases where the pendulum bag and suspension cannot be vertical at the instant of impact on a concave surface or a surface inclined towards the impact, the height of drop is the net height at the point of impact.

d) **For resistance to surface indentation** – for all materials irrespective of composition: AS 2185.

e) **For resistance of lift shaft construction to repetitive load** – as for 3 (b) except that –

- the load must be applied dynamically at a frequency not less than 1 Hz and not more than 3 Hz; and
- it is sufficient to test one specimen with the pressure applied from the
- side of the construction on which the lift will operate.

5. Test specimens

Tests must be carried out on construction in situ or on specimens of the construction in accordance with clause 4 except that –

- test specimens of the construction must be supported at top and bottom (or at each end if tested horizontally by components identical with, and in a manner identical with, the actual construction; and
- the heights of the test specimens (or lengths, if the specimens are tested horizontally) must be identical with the height between those supports in the actual construction.

6. Criteria of compliance

The following criteria must be adopted to determine compliance with the specification:

a) **Material** – Must comply with the applicable Standard adopted by reference in this Code.

b) **Damage** – The construction must show no crack, penetration or permanent surface- deformation to a depth of more than 0.5mm nor must there be any other non-elastic deformation nor fastener failure.

c) **Deflection – Static pressure** - Under static pressure the deflection of the construction must not be more than –

- $1/240^{\text{th}}$ of the height between supports (the span of the construction as tested);
- 30mm; or
- 20mm for lift *shafts* unless the requirements of Clause 15.2(a) of AS1735.2 are fulfilled.

d) **Deflection - Impact** - Under impact the instantaneous deflection of the construction must not be more than –

- $1/120^{\text{th}}$ of the height between supports (the span of the construction as tested);
- 30mm; or
- 20mm for lift *shafts* unless the requirements of /clause 15.2(a) pf AS1735.2 are fulfilled.

e) **Surface indentation** (AS 2185) – No impression must be more than 5mm in diameter.

7. Wall systems

Wall systems that are *required* to be *fire resisting* bounding *public corridors*, public hallways and the like, and between or bounding *sole-occupancy units* must be subjected to the following tests and must fulfill the following criteria:

- The materials tests of clause 4(a) and the materials properties criteria of clause 6 (a)
- A static test by the imposition of a uniformly distributed load (or its equivalent) of 0.25kPa in accordance with clause 4(b) and the damage and deflection criteria of clauses 6(b) and (c) respectively.
- A dynamic test by the imposition of the impact of the impact bag falling through a height of 100 mm in accordance with clause 4(c) and the damage and deflection criteria of clause 6(b) and (d) respectively.
- The surface indentation test of clause 4(d) and the surface indentation criterion of clause 6(e).

8. Construction bounding means of egress

Construction bounding means of egress including wall systems for use in-lift *shafts*, stair *shafts*, *fire-isolated passageways* and *fire-isolated ramps* that are *required* to be *fire-resisting* must be subjected to the following tests and must fulfill the following criteria:

- The materials tests of clause 4(a) and the materials properties criteria of clause 6(a).
- A static test by the imposition of a uniformly distributed load (or its equivalent) or 0.35 kPa in accordance with clause 4 (b) and the damage and deflection criteria of clauses 6(b) and (c) respectively.
- A dynamic test with the impact bag falling through a height of 150mm in accordance with clause 3(c) and the damage and deflection criteria of clause 6(b) and (d) respectively.
- The surface indentation test of clause 4(d) and the surface indentation criterion of clause 6(e).

9. Requirements for certain Class 9b buildings.

Wall systems for use in spectator stands, sports stadia, cinemas or theatres, railway or bus station, or airport terminals in –

a) lift *shafts* or stair *shafts*;

b) external and *internal walls* bounding *public corridors*, public hallways and the like, including fire-isolated and non-*fire-isolated passageways* or ramps,

must be subjected to the following tests and must fulfill the following criteria;

- The materials tests of clause 4 (a) and the materials properties criteria of clause 6(a).
- A static test by the imposition of a uniformly distributed load (or its equivalent) of 1.0kPa in accordance with Clause 4(b) and the damage and deflection criteria of clauses 6(b) and (c) respectively.
- A dynamic test with the impact bag falling through a height of 350 mm in accordance with Clause 4(c) and the damage and deflection criteria of clauses 6(b) and (d) respectively.
- The surface indentation test of clause 4(d) and the criterion of clause 6(e).

10. Lift Shafts

In addition to the requirements of clauses 8 and 9, *wall systems* for use in lift *shafts* that are *required* to be *fire-resisting* must be subjected to dynamic test by the imposition of 10^6 cycles of a uniformly distributed load (or its equivalent) between 0 and 0.35kPa in accordance with clause 4(e) and must fulfill the damage criteria of clause 6(b).

SPECIFICATION NC1.6

Early Fire Hazard Indices

Contents

1. Scope	25
2. Class 2 to 9 buildings: General requirements	25
3. Fire-isolated exits	25
4. Class 2,3 and 9 buildings: Public areas	26
5. Acceptable materials	26
6. Fire-retardant coatings.....	26
7. Exempted building parts and materials	26

1. Scope

This Specification sets out requirements in relation to the Early Fire Hazard Indices of materials, linings and surface finishes inside buildings.

2. Class 2 to 9 buildings: General requirements

Except where superseded by clause 3 or 4, any material or component used in a Class 2,3,5,6,7,8 or 9 building must

- a) in the case of a *sarking-type material*, have a *Flammability Index* not more than 5;
- b) in the case of other materials, have –
 - a *Spread-of-Flame Index* not more than 9; and
 - a *Smoke-Developed Index* not more than 8 if the *Spread-of- Flame Index* is more than 5;
- c) be completely covered on all faces by concrete or masonry not less than 50mm thick; or
- d) in the case of a composite member or assembly, be constructed so that when assembled as proposed in a building –
 - any material which does not comply with (a) or (b) is protected on all sides and edges from exposure to the air;
 - the member or assembly, when tested in accordance with Specification A2.4, has a *Smoke-Developed Index* and a *Spread-of- Flame Index* not exceeding those prescribed in (b); and
 - the member or assembly retains the protection in position so that it prevents ignition of the material and continues to screen it from access to free air for a period of not less than 10 minutes.

3. Fire-isolated exits

In a *fire-isolate stairway*, *fire-isolated passageway*, or *fire-isolated ramp* in a Class 2 to 9 building –

- a) a *material*, other than a *sarking-type material*, used in a ceiling, as an attachment to a *structural member* or as the finish, surface or lining of a *structural member* must –
 - have a *Spread-of-Flame Index* of 0;
 - have a *Smoke-Developed Index* of not more than 2; and
 - if combustible, be attached directly to a non-combustible substrate and not exceed 1mm in finished thickness;

b) a *sarking-type* material used in the form of an exposed wall or ceiling, or as a finish or attachment thereto, must have a *Flammability Index* of 0.

4. Class 2,3 and 9 buildings: Public areas

A material other than a *sarking-type material* must have a *Spread-of-Flame Index* of 0 and a *Smoke-Developed Index* not more than 5 if it is used –

- a) in a Class 2,3, 9a or 9b building – as a finish, surface, lining or attachment to any wall or ceiling in an internal *public corridor*, hallway, or the like, which is a means of egress to –
- a stairway *required* to be fire- isolated or an external stairway used instead; or
 - a passageway, or ramp, *required* to be fire-isolated; or
- b) in a class 9b building which is used as a theatre, public hall, or the like –
- as a finish, surface, lining, or attachment to any ceiling, wall or floor;
 - as the covering of fixed seating in the audience seating area; or
 - in a cinema projection room.

5. Acceptable materials

A material complies with clauses 2,3 or 4 if it is –

- plaster, cement render, concrete, terrazzo, ceramic tile or the like; or
- a *fire-protective covering*.

6. Fire-retardant coatings

When paint or fire-retardant coatings are used in order to make a substrate comply with a *required Spread-of-Flame Index*, *Smoke-Developed Index* or *Flammability Index*, this fact must be clearly marked on an easily visible label or labels and permanently fixed to the building element so that the coating will not be scraped off or otherwise made ineffective, without re-coating to preserve the fire-retardant properties. If any coating used will retain the *required* fire-retardant properties for only a limited period, it must be replaced before the expiry of such period so that the *required* properties are not diminished.

7. Exempted building parts and materials

The requirements in this Specification for a *Spread- of-Flame Index*, *Smoke-Developed Index* or *Flammability Index* do not apply to –

- a) timber-framed *windows*;
- b) solid timber handrails or skirtings;
- c) timber-faced solid-core or fire doors;
- d) electrical switches, outlets, cover plates or the like;
- e) materials used for –
- roof covering or membranes, or roof insulating material, applied in continuous contact with a substrate;
 - adhesives; or
 - damp-proof courses, flashings, caulking, sealing, ground moisture barriers, or the like;
- f) paint, varnish, lacquer or similar finish, other than nitro-cellulose lacquer;
- g) a clear or translucent rooflight of glass fibre reinforced polyester if –
- the roof in which it is installed forms part of a building in Type C construction;
 - the material is used as part of the roof covering;
 - it is not prohibited by any other clause of this Code;
 - it is not closer than 1.5m from another rooflight of the same type;
 - each rooflight is not more than 14m² in area; and
 - the area of the rooflights is not more than 20% of roof surface; or
- h) any other material which does not significantly increase the hazards of fire.

SPECIFICATION NC3.4

Fire Doors, Smoke Doors, Fire Windows & Shutters.

1. Scope

This Specification sets out requirements for the construction of fire doors, smoke doors, fire *windows* and fire shutters.

2. Fire doors

A *required* fire door must comply with NZS 4232 or AS1905.1, except that –

- a) it may be fully glazed or incorporate glazing if the tested prototype was similarly glazed;
- b) the radiation level at a distance of 365 mm from the face of the glazing must not exceed 10 kW/m² during the period corresponding to that for *insulation* in the *required* FRL;
- c) the rise in average temperature on the side of the tested prototype remote from the furnace must not exceed 140°C (except in any glazed part) during the first 30 minutes of the fire test.

2. Smoke doors

A *required* smoke door –

- a) may have one or 2 door leaves;
- b) must swing –
 - in the direction of egress; or
 - in both directions if the path of travel to *exits* is in either direction;
- c) must be *self-closing* and may be fitted with an *automatic* release device; and
- d) must be constructed of –
 - solid-core timber at least 35mm thick, glazed panels in a timber frame at least 35mm thick, or a metal frame, with a mid-rail or suitable crash bar; or
 - PVC, or other suitable material;
 - and if necessary, be fitted with smoke seals.

3. Fire shutters

A *required* fire shutter must –

- a) be a shutter that –
 - is identical with a tested prototype that has achieved the *required* FRL;
 - is installed in the same manner and in an opening that is not larger than the tested prototype; and
 - did not have a rise in average temperature on the side remote from the furnace of more than 140°C during the first 30 minutes of the test; or
- b) is a steel shutter complying with NZS 4232 or AS1905.1 if a metallic fire shutter is not prohibited by NC3.5.

4. Fire Windows

A *required* fire window must be –

- a) identical in construction with a prototype that has achieved the *required* FRL, and
- b) installed in the same manner and in an opening that is not larger than the tested prototype.

SPECIFICATION NC3.15

Penetration of Walls, Floors & Ceilings by Services

1. Scope	28
2. Application	28
3. Metal pipes	28
4. Pipes penetrating sanitary compartments	28
5. Wires and cables	29
6. Electrical switches and outlets	29
7. Fire-stopping	29

1. Scope

This Specification prescribes materials and methods of installation for services that penetrate walls, floors and ceilings *required* to have a FRL.

2. Application

This Specification applies to installations permitted under this Code as alternatives to systems that have been demonstrated by test to fulfill the requirements of NC3.14.

This Specification does not apply to installations in ceilings *required* to have a *resistance* to the incipient spread of fire not to the installation of piping that contains or is intended to contain a flammable liquid or gas.

3. Metal pipes

a) A metal pipe that is not normally filled with liquid must not penetrate a wall, floor or ceiling within 100mm of any *combustible* material unless wrapped or fire stopped to satisfy the requirements of Clause 7, and must be constructed of –

- copper alloy or stainless steel with a wall thickness of at least 1 mm; or
- cast iron or steel (other than stainless steel) with a wall thickness of at least 2 mm.

b) An opening for a metal pipe must –

- be neatly formed, cut or drilled;
- be no closer than 200mm to any other service penetration; and
- accommodate only one pipe

c) A metal pipe must be wrapped but must not be lagged or enclosed in thermal insulation over the length of its penetration of a wall, floor or ceiling unless the lagging or thermal insulation fulfills the requirements of clause 7.

d) The gap between a metal pipe and the wall, floor or ceiling it penetrates must be fire- stopped in accordance with clause 7.

4. Pipes penetrating sanitary compartments

If a pipe of metal or UPVC penetrates the floor of a *sanitary compartment* in accordance with NC3.15(e) of this Code –

- a) the opening must be neatly formed and no larger than is necessary to accommodate the pipe or fitting; and
- b) the gap between pipe and floor must be fire- stopped in accordance with clause 7.

5. Wires and cables

If a wire or cable or cluster of wires or cables penetrates a floor, wall or ceiling –

- a) the opening must be neatly formed, cut or drilled and no closer than 50mm to any other service opening; and
- b) the opening must be no larger in cross-sectional area than –
 - 2000mm² if only a single cable is accommodated and the gap between cable and wall, floor or ceiling is no wider than 15mm; or
 - 500mm² in any other case; and
- c) the gap between the service and the wall, floor or ceiling must be fire-stopped in accordance with clause 7.

6. Electrical switches and outlets

If an electrical switch, outlet, socket or the like is accommodated in an opening or recess in a wall, floor or ceiling –

- a) the opening or recess must not –
 - be located opposite any point within 300mm horizontal nor 600mm vertically of any opening or recess on the opposite side of the wall; or
 - extend beyond half the thickness of the wall; and
- b) the gap between the service and the wall, floor or ceiling must be fire-stopped in accordance with clause 7.

7. Fire-stopping

a) **Material:** The material used for fire-stopping of service penetrations must be in accordance with AS 4072.1 concrete, high temperature mineral fibre, high-temperature ceramic fibre or other material that does not flow at a temperature below 1120°C when tested in accordance with AS 1038.15, and must have –

- demonstrated in a system tested in accordance with NC3.15(a) of this Code that it does not impair the *fire-resisting* performance of the building element in which it is installed; or
- demonstrated in a test in accordance with (e) that it does not impair the *fire-resisting* performance of the test slab.

b) **Installation:** Fire-stopping material must be packed into the gap between the service and wall, floor or ceiling in a manner, and compressed to the same degree, as adopted for testing under 7(a) (i) or (ii).

c) **Hollow construction:** If a pipe penetrated a hollow wall (such as a stud wall, a cavity wall or a wall of hollow blockwork) or a hollow floor/ceiling system, the cavity must be so framed and packed with fire-stopping material that the material is –

- installed in accordance with 7(b) to a thickness of 25mm all round the service for the full length of the penetration; and
- restrained, independently of the service, from moving or parting from the surfaces of the service and of the wall, floor or ceiling.

d) **Recesses:** If an electrical switch, socket, outlet or the like is accommodated in a recess in a hollow wall or hollow floor/ceiling system –

- the cavity immediately behind the service must be framed and packed with fire-stopping material in accordance with 7(c); or
- the back and sides of the service must be protected with refractory lining board identical with and to the same thickness as that in which the service is installed.

e) **Test:** The test to demonstrate compliance of a fire-stopping material with this Specification must be conducted as follows:

- The test specimen must comprise a concrete slab not less than 1m square and not more than 100mm thick, and appropriately reinforced if necessary for *structural adequacy* during manufacture, transport and testing.
- The slab must have a hole 50mm in diameter through the centre and the hole must be packed with the fire-stopping material.
- The slab must be conditioned in accordance with AS 1530.4.
- Two thermocouples complying with AS 1530.4 must be attached to the upper surface of the packing each about 5mm from its center.
- The slab must be tested on flat generally in accordance with Section 10 of AS1530.4.

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Section

ND



ACCESS & EGRESS

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO PUBLIC
BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS
(CLASS 2 to CLASS 9)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES	1
NDP1 Provision for Escape	1
NDP2 Construction of Exits	1
NDP3 Access for People With Disabilities	1
REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	1
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	1
ND1 Provision for Escape	1
ND1.1 Application	1
ND1.2 Number of Exits Required	1
ND1.3 When Smoke or Fire-isolated Exits are Required	1
ND1.4 Exit Travel Distances	1
ND1.5 Distance Between Alternative Exits	2
ND1.6 Dimensions of Exits	2
ND1.7 Travel via Smoke or Fire-isolated Exits	3
ND1.8 External Stairways	3
ND1.9 Travel by Non-fire-isolated Stairways or Ramps	3
ND1.10 Discharge from Exits	4
ND1.11 Horizontal Exits	4
ND1.12 Non-required Stairways or Ramps	5
ND1.13 Number of Persons Accommodated	5
ND1.14 Measurement of Distances	7
ND1.15 Method of Measurement	7
ND2 Construction of Exits	8
ND2.1 Application of part	8
ND2.2 Fire-isolated stairways and ramps	8
ND2.3 Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps	8
ND2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights	8
ND2.5 Open access ramps and balconies	8
ND2.6 Smoke lobbies	8
ND2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel	9
ND2.8 Enclosure of space under fire-isolated stairs and ramps	9

ND2.9 Width of Stairways	9
ND2.10 Ramps	9
ND 2.10.1 Pedestrian ramps	9
ND2.10.2 Service ramps	10
ND2.11 Fire-isolated passageways	10
ND2.12 Roof as open space	11
ND2.13 Treads and risers	11
ND2.13.1 Straight Flights	11
ND2.13.2 Curved Stairs	12
ND2.14 Landings	12
ND2.15 Thresholds	13
ND2.16 Balustrades	13
ND2.17 Handrails	14
ND2.18 Fixed platforms, walkways and ladders	14
ND2.19 Doorways and doors	14
ND2.20 Swinging doors	14
ND2.21 Operation of Latch	15
ND2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits	15
ND3 Access for People with Disabilities	16
ND3.1 Application of part	16
ND3.2 Access to Buildings	16
ND3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible	17
ND3.4 Common Building Elements	17

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

A building must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives are fulfilled:

NDP1 Provision for Escape

There must be adequate means of escape in case of fire or other emergency from all parts of the building to a place of safety.

NDP2 Construction of Exits

- a) Stairways, ramps and passageways must be such as to provide safe passage for the users of the building.
- b) Stairways and ramps must not be uncomfortable or strenuous to use.
- c) Stairways, ramps, floors and balconies, and any roof to which people normally have access, must have bounding walls, balustrades or other barriers where necessary to protect users from the risk of falling.
- d) Vehicle ramps and any floor to which vehicles have access must have kerbs or other barriers where necessary to provide protection to pedestrians and to the structure of the building.

NDP3 Access for People with Disabilities

Reasonable provision must be made in the design of a building, having regard to its use and location, to facilitate access and circulation by people with disabilities.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

NDP1.1 The design and construction of buildings must allow all occupants in any or all *fire compartments* to get to:

- a) any one of more than one exit within 2.5 minutes; or
- b) in the case of buildings with 3 or fewer stories or a basement of less than 50 m² floor area, to a single exit within 1 minute.

NDP2.1 The design and construction of *exits* must allow for the following optimum conditions during evacuation in any emergency:

- a) a density in the *exit* of 2.0 persons/ m² of *exit floor area*
- b) a speed of movement along the slope of the *exit* of 0.5 m/s; and
- c) an average flow of 1.18 persons per second per metre effective width of *exit*.

In the case of occupancies such as hospitals where evacuation needs the assistance of others and/or of equipment, additional consideration must be given to the design of *exits*.

The *pitch* of any stairway or slope of a ramp must not be unsafe or uncomfortable.

The size of openings in any bounding wall, balustrade or the like must be such as to prevent very young mobile children from going through them and injuring themselves. These must also be designed to discourage young children under 5 years of age from gaining any foothold and climbing over them.

NDP3.1 People with disabilities must have the facility to gain reasonable access to buildings so that they are not at any material disadvantage when compared with others.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

ND1 Provision for Escape

ND1.1 Application

This Part applies to all buildings except the internal parts of a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part.

ND1.2 Number of Exits Required

- a) **All buildings:** Every building must have at least one *required exit*.
- b) **Class 2 to 8 buildings:** In addition to any *horizontal exit*, not less than two *exits* must be provided from each *storey* if the building has a rise of three or more *storeys* or an *effective height* of more than 10 m.
- c) **Basements:** In addition to any *horizontal exit*, not less than 2 *exits* must be provided from any *storey* if egress from that *storey* involves an upward vertical climb within the building of more than 1.5 m, unless:
- in addition to a single *exit* other than a *horizontal exit*, one or more openable or easily breakable *windows* or other openings are available in which case the top of the sill must be no higher than 1.5 m from the floor level of the room. In addition the *windows* or openings must have one clear dimension of at least 600 mm and a minimum opening of 0.6 m². The *windows* or openings must be clear of any surrounding ground by at least 1 m horizontally and the vertical drop from the sill to the ground outside, no more than 2 m; or
 - the area of the *storey* is not more than 50 m² as well as the distance of travel from any point on the floor to a single *exit*, not more than 20 m.
- d) **Class 9 buildings:** In addition to any *horizontal exit* and subject to (e) and (f) not less than 2 *exits* must be provided from -
- each *storey* if the building has a rise of three or more *storeys* or an *effective height* of more than 10m
 - any *storey* which includes a ward area in a Class 9a building
 - each *storey* in a Class 9b building used as an early childhood centre; and
 - any *storey* or mezzanine that accommodates more than 100 persons, calculated under ND1.13.
- e) **Exits from divided wards:** In a Class 9a building, at least one *exit* must be provided from every portion of a *storey* which has been divided in accordance with NC2.5.
- f) **Exits in open spectator stands:** In an *open spectator stand* containing more than one tier of seating, every tier must have not less than 2 stairways or ramps, each forming part of the path of travel to not less than 2 *exits*.

ND1.3 When Smoke or Fire-isolated Exits are Required

Every *required exit* other than an external stairway or open ramp must be:

- a) smoke isolated to the relevant requirements of ND2.6(b) and (c) if it connects 3 or more consecutive stories ; and
- b) fire isolated if it connects 5 or more consecutive stories.

Exception: These requirements do not apply to *exits* that form part of an *open spectator stand*.

ND1.4 Exit Travel Distances

- a) Class 2 and 3 buildings and class 4 parts -
- The entrance doorway of any *sole-occupancy unit* must be not more than 6m from an *exit* or from a point at which travel in different directions to 2 *exits* is available. Further the route of

travel within the unit from any point other than from a kitchen or cooking area, to the doorway must not traverse through a kitchen or cooking area; and

- no point on the floor of a room which is not in a *sole-occupancy unit* must be more than 20 m from an *exit* or from a point at which travel in different directions to 2 *exits* is available, in which case the maximum distance to one of those *exits* must not exceed 40 m from the starting point.

b) Class 5 to 9 buildings -

Subject to (c), (d) and (e) -

- No point on a floor must be more than 20 m from an *exit*, or a point from which travel in different directions to 2 *exits* is available, in which case the maximum distance to one of those *exits* must not exceed 40 m from the starting point.
- In a Class 5 or 6 building, the distance to a single *exit* serving at the level of access to a road or *open space* may be increased to 30 m.

c) Class 9a buildings: In a *ward area* in a Class 9a building -

- no point on the floor must be more than 12 m from a point from which travel in different directions to 2 of the *required exits* is available; and
- the maximum distance to one of those *exits* must not be more than 30 m from the starting point.

d) Open spectator stands: The distance of travel to an *exit* in a Class 9b building used as an *open spectator stand* must be not more than 60 m.

e) Assembly buildings: in a Class 9b building other than a *school* or *early childhood centre*, the distance to one of the *exits* may be 60 m if -

- the path of travel from the room concerned to that *exit* is through another area which is a corridor, hallway, lobby, ramp or other circulation space
- the room is smoke-separated from the circulation space by construction such that
 - any wall be *non-combustible* and extend to the underside of the floor above or of the roof covering
 - only have doorways which are fitted with smoke doors complying with Specification NC3.4 and which do not extend higher than 800 mm from the underside of an imperforate roof covering, floor or ceiling above it; and
- the maximum distance of travel does not exceed 40 m within the room and 20 m from the doorway to the room through the circulation space to the *exit*.

ND1.5 Distance Between Alternative Exits

Exits that are *required* as alternative means of egress must be:

a) distributed as uniformly as practicable within or around the *storey* served:

b) not less than 9 m apart; and

c) not more than -

- 45 m apart in a Class 2 or 3 building or a *storey* containing a *ward area* in a Class 9a building; or
- 60 m apart in all other cases.

ND1.6 Dimensions of Exits

In a *required exit* or path of travel to an *exit*:

a) the unobstructed height throughout must be not less than 2 m

b) if the *storey* or mezzanine pertains to a Class 2 or 3 buildings or accommodates not more than 100 persons, the unobstructed width except for doorways must be -

- not less than 1 m; or
- 2 m in a passageway from a *ward area*

c) if the *storey* or mezzanine accommodates more than 100 persons and not more than 200 persons the aggregate width, except for doorways, must be not less than -

- 1 m plus 250 mm for each 25 persons (or part) in excess of 100; or
- 2 m in a passageway from a *ward area* in class 9a buildings

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

d) if the *storey* or mezzanine accommodates more than 200 persons, the aggregate width, except for doorways, must be increased to -

- 2 m plus 500 mm for every 60 persons (or part) in excess of 200 persons if egress involves a change in floor level by a stairway or ramp with a gradient more than 1:12; or
- in any other case, 2 m plus 500 mm for every 75 persons (or part) in excess of 200

e) in an *open spectator stand* which accommodates more than 2000 persons the width except for doorways must be increased to 17 m plus a width (in meters) equal to the number in excess of 2000 divided by 600

f) the clear openings of a doorway must be not less than -

- in *ward areas* – 1.6 m wide or 1.25 m if it is a *horizontal exit*
- in areas used by students in a *school* – 870 mm wide
- the width of *exit required* by (b), (c), (d) or (e), minus 250 mm, or
- in any other case except where it opens to a *sanitary compartment* or bathroom – 760 mm wide; and

g) the *required* width of *exit* must not diminish in the direction of travel to a road or *open space*.

ND1.7 Travel via Smoke or Fire-isolated Exits

a) A doorway from a room must not open directly into a stairway, passageway or ramp that is *required* to be smoke or fire-isolated unless it is from -

- a public lobby, *public corridor*, hallway, or the like
- a *sole-occupancy unit* occupying all of a *storey*; or
- a *sanitary compartment*, airlock or the like.

b) Each stairway or ramp that is *required* to be smoke or fire isolated must provide independent egress from the *storey* served and discharge -

- directly, or by way of a *fire-isolated passageway*, to a road or *open space*; or
- into a *storey* or space within the confines of the building that is enclosed for not more than 1/3 of its perimeter and used only for pedestrian movement, car parking, or the like, to a point where an unimpeded path of travel not further than 20 m is available to a road or *open space*.

c) if more than 2 access doors, other than from a *sanitary compartment* or the like, open to a fire-isolated *exit* in the same *storey* -

- a smoke lobby in accordance with ND2.6 must be provided; or
- the *exit* must be pressurised in accordance with NE2.7.

d) A ramp must be provided at any change in level less than 600 mm in a fire-isolated passageway in a Class 9 building.

ND1.8 External Stairways

An external stairway may serve as a *required exit* instead of a smoke isolated or *fire-isolated stairway* in a building with an *effective height* of not more than 25 m if the stairway (including any connecting bridges) is of *non-combustible* construction throughout, and:

a) if any part of the stairway is exposed to, and less than 4 m from, a *window*, doorway or the like in an external wall, the stairway must be fully shielded in the affected area from such *window* or doorway by *non-combustible* construction with a FRL of not less than 60/60/60

b) if any part of the stairway is exposed to, and less than 4 m but more than 3 m from, a *window*, doorway or the like in an *external wall* of any building, the *window* doorway or the like must be protected in accordance with NC3.4.

ND1.9 Travel by Non-fire-isolated Stairways or Ramps

a) A non-*fire-isolated stairway* serving as a *required exit* must provide a continuous means of travel by its own flights of stairs and landings from every *storey* served to the level at which egress to a road or *open space* is provided.

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

b) in a Class 2, 3 or 4 building, the distance between the doorway of a room or *sole-occupancy unit* and the point of egress to a road or *open space* by way of any *required* stairway or ramp that is not fire-isolated must not exceed -

- 30 m in a building of Type G construction; or
- 60 m in all other cases.

c) In a Class 5 to 9 building, the distance from any point on a floor and a point of egress to a road or *open space* by way of a *required non-fire-isolated stairway* or ramp must not exceed 80 m.

d) In a Class 2, 3 or 9a building, a *required non-fire-isolated stairway* or ramp must discharge at a point not more than -

- 15 m from a doorway providing egress to a road or *open space* or from a *fire-isolated passageway* leading to a road or *open space*; or
- 30 m from one of 2 such doorways or passageways if travel to each of them from the stairway or ramp is in opposite or approximately opposite directions.

e) In a Class 5 to 8 or 9b building, a *required non-fire-isolated stairway* or ramp must discharge at a point not more than -

- 20 m from a doorway providing egress to a road or *open space* or from a *fire-isolated passageway* leading to a road or *open space*; or
- 40 m from one of 2 such doorways or passageways if travel to each of them from the stairway or ramp is in opposite or approximately opposite directions.

f) If 2 or more *exits* are *required* and are provided by means of internal *non-fire-isolated stairways* or *non-fire isolated ramps*, each *exit* must -

- provide separate egress to a road or *open space*; and
- be suitably smoke-separated from each other at the level of discharge.

ND1.10 Discharge from Exits

a) An *exit* must not be blocked at the point of discharge and where necessary, suitable barriers must be provided to prevent vehicles from blocking the *exit*, or access to it.

b) if a *required exit* leads to an *open space*, the path of travel to the road must have an unobstructed width throughout of not less than:

- the minimum width of the *required exit*; or
- 1 m; whichever is the greater.

c) If an *exit* discharges to *open space* that is at a level different from the public road to which it is connected, the path of travel to the road must be by -

- a ramp or other incline having a grade of not more than 1:8 at any part, or 1:14 if *required* by Part ND3; or
- a stairway complying with this Code, except if the *exit* is from a Class 9a building.

d) The discharge point of alternative *exits* must be located as far apart as practicable.

e) In a Class 9b building which is an *open spectator stand* that accommodates more than 500 persons a *required stairway* or *required ramp* must not discharge to the ground in front of the stand.

f) In a Class 9b building containing an auditorium which accommodates more than 500 persons, not more than 2/3 of the *required* width of *exits* must be located in the main entrance foyer.

ND1.11 Horizontal Exits

Horizontal exits must:

a) not be counted as a *required exit*, when -

- between sole-occupancy units; or
- in a Class 9b building used as an *early childhood centre*, primary or secondary school;

b) not comprise more than 50% of the number of *required exits* from any part of a storey which has been divided by a *fire wall*; and

c) have a clear area on each side of the *fire wall* to accommodate the total number of persons (calculated under ND1.13) from both parts of the *storey*, of not less than -

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

- 2.5 m² per patient in a Class 9a building; and
- 0.5 m² per person in any other case.

NDI.12 Non-required Stairways or Ramps

Non-required non-fire-isolated stairways or pedestrian ramps:

- a) must not be used in a *ward area* in a Class 9a building
 - b) may connect any number of *storeys* if they are -
 - in an *open spectator stand* or indoor sports stadium
 - in a carpark or an *atrium*; or
 - c) outside a building
 - d) must not connect, directly or indirectly, more than two consecutive *storeys* at any level in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building; and
- in any other case, must not connect more than two consecutive *storeys*, provided that one of those *storeys* is situated at a level at which there is direct egress to a road or *open space*.

ND1.13 Number of Persons Accommodated

The number of persons accommodated in a *storey*, room or *mezzanine floor* must be determined with consideration to the purpose for which it is used and the layout of the *floor area* by:

- a) calculating the sum of the numbers obtained by dividing the *floor area* of each part of the *storey* by the number of square metres per person listed in Table ND1.13 according to the use of the part, excluding spaces set aside for -
 - stairs, ramps, corridors, hallways, lobbies, and the like
 - service ducts and the like, *sanitary compartments* or other ancillary uses
- b) reference to the seating capacity in an assembly building or room; or
- d) any other suitable means of assessing its capacity.

Table ND1.13 - Area Per Person According to Use

Type of use		m ² per person
Art gallery, exhibition area, museum		4
Bar, café, church, dining room		1
Board room		2
Boarding house		15
Computer room for main frame and computers		25
Court room	Judicial	10
	Public seating	1
Dance floor		0.5
Dormitory		8
Early childhood centre		4
Factory	(a) Machine stop, fitting shop, or like place for cutting, grading, finishing or fitting of metals or glass, except in the fabrication of structural steelwork or manufacture of vehicles or bulky products	5
	(b) Areas used for fabrication and processing other than those in (a)	50

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

Type of use		m ² per person
	(c) A space in which the layout and natural use of fixed plant or equipment determine the number of persons which will occupy the space during working hours	Area per person determined by the use of the plant or equipment
Garage	Public	30
Gymnasium		3
Hospital ward area		10
Hostel, hotel, motel, guest house		15
Indoor sports stadium arena		10
Kiosk		1
Kitchen, laundry (other than domestic) and laboratory		10
Library:	Reading space	2
	Storage space	30
Office, including one for typewriting or document copying or with desk-top computers		10
Plant room for:	Ventilation, electrical or other service units	30
	Boilers or power plant	50
Reading room		2
Restaurant		1
School	Common staff room	2
	Individual staff room	10
	General classroom	2
	Only as for others	
	Multi-purpose hall	1
	Trade and practical area:	
	Primary	4
	Secondary	As for workshop
Shop	Space for sale of goods	
	(a) At a level entered direct from the open air or any lower level	3
	(b) All other levels	5
Showroom	Display	5
Skating rink, based on rink area		1.5
Spectator stand, audience viewing area:		
	Bench seating	450 mm/person
	Fixed seating	number of seats
	Seating not fixed	1
	Standing viewing area	0.3

Type of use		m ² per person
Storage space		30
Swimming pool, based on pool area		1.5
Telephone exchange – private		30
Theatre dressing room		4
Transport terminal		2
Workshop	For maintenance staff	30 (in the whole area)
	For manufacturing processes	as for factory

ND1.14 Measurement of Distances

The nearest part of an *exit* means in the case of:

- a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway, fire-isolated ramp, the nearest part of the doorway providing access to them
- a non-fire-isolated stairway, the nearest part of the nearest riser
- a non-fire-isolated ramp, the nearest part of the junction of the floor of the ramp and the floor of the storey
- a doorway opening to a road or open space, the nearest part of that doorway
- a horizontal exit, the nearest part of the doorway.

ND1.15 Method of Measurement

The following rules apply:

- In the case of a room that is not a *sole-occupancy unit* in a class 2 or 3 building or class 4 part of a building, the distance includes the straight-line measurement from any point on the floor of the room to the nearest part of a doorway leading from it, together with the distance from that part of the doorway to the single *required exit* or point from which travel in different directions to 2 *required exits* is available.
- Subject to (d) and (f), the distance from the doorway of a room or *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2, 3 or 4 building is measured in a straight line to the nearest part of the *required single exit* or point from which travel in different direction to 2 *required exits* is available.
- Subject to (d) and (f), the distance between *exits* is measured in a straight line between the nearest parts of those *exits*.
- Only the shortest distance is taken along a corridor, hallway, external balcony or other path of travel that curves or changes direction.
- If more than one corridor, hallway, or other similarly defined internal path of travel connects *required exits*, the measurement is along the path of travel through the point at which travel in different directions to those *exits* is available.
- If a wall (including a demountable *internal wall*) that does not bound -
 - a room; or
 - a corridor, hallway or the like.

causes a change of direction in proceeding to a *required exit*, the distance is measured along the path of travel past that wall.

- If permanent fixed seating is provided, the distance is measured along the path of travel between the rows of seats.

ND2 Construction of Exits

ND2.1 Application of part

Except for ND2.13 and ND2.16, this Part does not apply to the internal parts of a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or Class 3 building or a Class 4 part.

ND2.2 Fire-isolated stairways and ramps

A stairway or ramp (including any landings) that is *required* to be within a *fire-resisting shaft* must be constructed:

- a) of *non-combustible* materials; and
- B) so that if there is local failure, it will not cause structural damage to, or impair the fire-resistance of the *shaft*.

ND2.3 Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps

In a building having a rise of more than two *storeys*, *required* stairs and ramps (including landings and any supporting *structural members*) which are not *required* to be within a *fire-resisting shaft*, must be constructed according to ND2.2, or only of:

- a) reinforced or prestressed concrete
- b) steel in no part less than 6 mm thick; or
- c) timber that -
 - has a finished thickness of not less than 40 mm
 - has an average density of not less than 800 kg/m³ at a moisture content of 12%; and
 - has not been joined by means of glue unless it has been laminated and glued with resorcinol formaldehyde or resorcinol phenol formaldehyde glue.

ND2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights

If a stairway serving as an *exit* is *required* to be fire-isolated:

- a) there must be no direct connection between a flight of stairs rising from a *storey* below the lowest level of access to a road or *open space*; and a flight of stairs descending from a *storey* above that level; and
- b) any construction that separates or is common to the rising and descending flights of stairs must be *non-combustible* and have a FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

ND2.5 Open access ramps and balconies

A *required* open access ramp or balcony must:

- a) have ventilation openings to the outside air which -
 - have a total unobstructed area not less than the *floor area* of the ramp or balcony; and
 - are evenly distributed along the open sides of the ramp or balcony; and
- b) not be enclosed on its open sides above a height of 1 m except by an open grille or the like having a free air space of not less than 75% of its area.

ND2.6 Smoke lobbies

A smoke lobby *required* by ND1.7 must:

- a) have a *floor area* not less than 6 m²
- b) be separated from the occupied areas in the *storey* by walls which are impervious to smoke, and -
 - have a FRL of not less than 30/30/- (which may be plasterboard, face brickwork, glass blocks or glazing)

- extend from floor to floor, or to the underside of a ceiling with a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire* of 60 minutes which covers the lobby
- construction joints between the top of the walls and the floor, roof or ceiling must be smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material

c) at any opening from the occupied areas, have smoke doors to Specification NC3.4, which are *self-closing* or held open by a fail-safe *automatic* magnetic release device; and

d) be pressurised to NE2.7 as part of the *exit* if the *exit* is *required* to be pressurised.

ND2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel

a) Access to service *shafts* and services other than to fire-fighting or detection equipment as permitted in Section NE, must not be provided from a *fire-isolated stairway, passageway or ramp*.

b) An opening to any chute or duct conveying hot products of combustion must not be located in any part of a *required exit* or any corridor, hallway, lobby or the like leading to a *required exit*.

c) Gas or other fuel services must not be installed in a *required exit*.

d) Services or equipment must not be installed in a *required exit* or in any corridor, hallway, lobby or the like leading to a *required exit* if it comprises -

- electricity meters, distribution boards or duds
- central telecommunications distribution boards or equipment; or
- electrical motors or other motors serving equipment in the building

unless it is enclosed by *non-combustible* construction or a fire protective covering.

ND2.8 Enclosure of space under fire-isolated stairs and ramps

a) **Fire-isolated stairways and ramps:** If the space below a *required fire-isolated stairway or ramp* is within the fire-isolated *shaft*, it must not be enclosed to form a cupboard or similar enclosed space.

b) **Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps:** The space below a *required non-fire-isolated stairway* (including an external stairway) or *ramp* must not be enclosed to form a cupboard or other enclosed space unless -

- the enclosing walls and ceilings have a FRL of not less than 60/60/60; and
- any access doorway to the enclosed space is fitted with a *self-closing* -/60/30 fire door.

ND2.9 Width of Stairways

a) The *required* width of a stairway must -

- be measured clear of all obstructions such as handrails, projecting parts of balustrades, columns, beams, and the like; and
- extend without interruption, except for ceiling cornices, to a height not less than 2 m vertically above a line along the nosings of the treads or the floor of the landing.

b) A *required* stairway that exceeds 2 m in width is counted as having a width of only 2 m unless it is divided by a balustrade or handrail continuous between landings and each division is less than 2 m wide.

ND2.10 Ramps

ND 2.10.1 Pedestrian ramps

a) A *fire-isolated ramp* may be substituted for a *fire-isolated stairway* if the construction enclosing the ramp and the width and ceiling height comply with the requirements for a *fire-isolated stairway*.

b) A ramp serving as a *required exit* must be designed as follows:

Slope: 1:20 is the recommended minimum for a non-assisted person in a wheelchair. The slope can be increased to 1:14 where the wheelchair user is assisted. Greater than 1:12 is considered a hazard.

Width: Varies according to use, configuration and slope, but the minimum is 1 m.

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

Landings: Provide at least every 9 m, at every change of direction and at the top and bottom of every ramp. Landing width should be a minimum 1 m and clear from obstructions. >

Handrails: Provide on both sides and along the full length of every ramp, 900 mm to 1 m high, returning at ends or turning down to minimise injuries. Handrails should extend for a distance of minimum 300 mm at the top and bottom of ramps. For ramps wider than 3 m, an intermediate rail could be installed.

The **floor surface** of a ramp must have a non-slip finish.

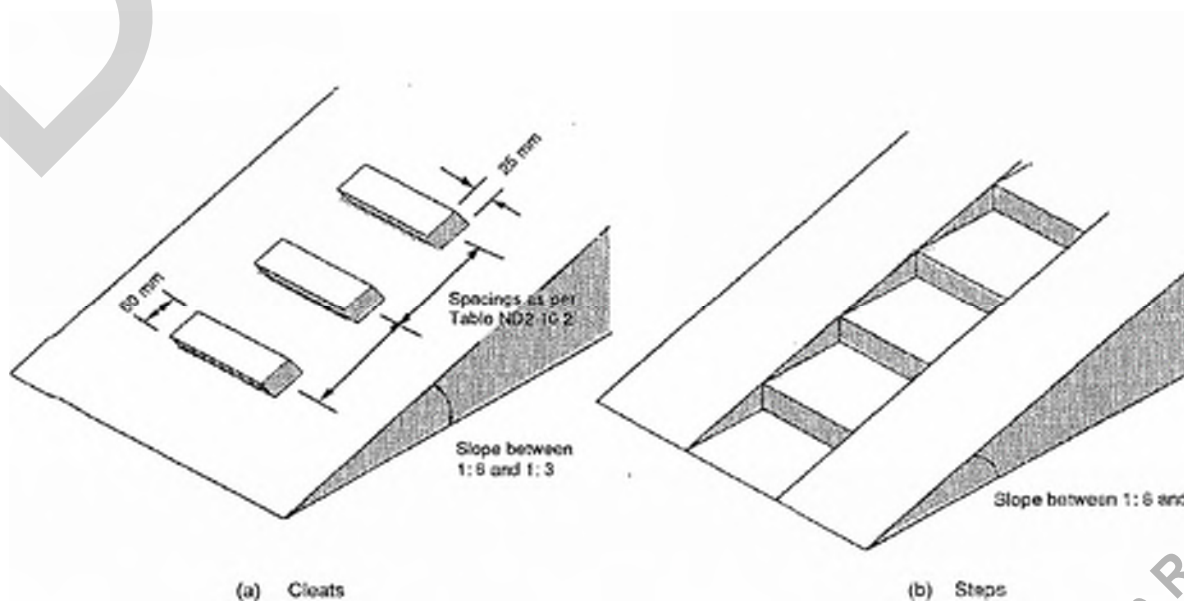
ND2.10.2 Service ramps

Service ramps must not be steeper than 1:3. Where they are steeper than 1:8 cleats must be provided at the spacing shown in Table ND2.10.2. Two examples are shown in figure ND2.10.2.

Table ND2.10.2 - Spacing of Cleats for Service Ramps

Ramp slope not more than	Cleat spacing (mm)	
	Goods carried	No goods carried
1:6	360	460
1:5	330	430
1:4	300	400
1:3	280	380

Figure ND2.10.1 - Examples of Service Ramps With Cleats



ND2.11 Fire-isolated passageways

A *fire-isolated passageway* must be enclosed by walls, floors, and ceilings of *non-combustibles* construction with a FRL of –

- not less than that *required* for the stairway or ramp *shaft* if the passageway discharges from a *fire-isolated stairway* or ramp; or
- in any other case – not less than 60/60/60.

ND2.12 Roof as open space

If an *exit* discharges to a roof of a building, the roof must:

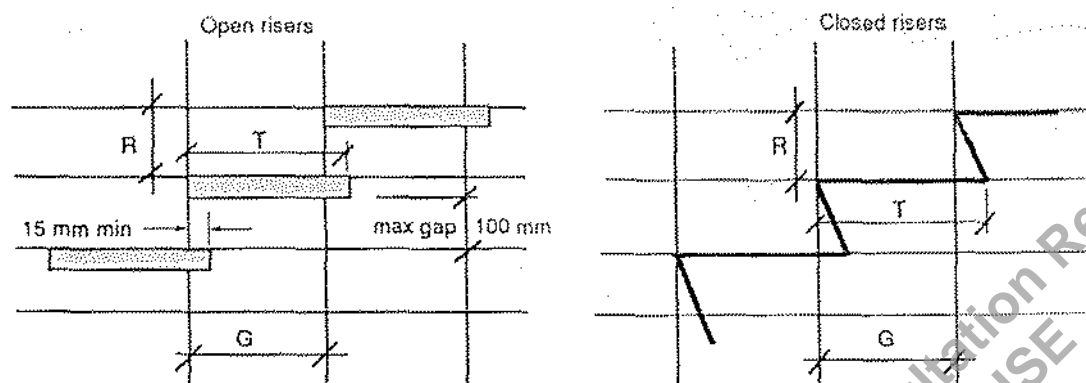
- have a FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
- not have any roof lights or other openings within 3 m of the path of travel of persons using the *exit* to reach a road or *open space*.

ND2.13 Treads and risers

ND2.13.1 Straight Flights

- A stairway must be suitable to provide safe passage in relation to the nature, volume and frequency of likely usage.
- A stairway in any building (including a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part) satisfies (a) if it has -
 - not more than 18 nor less than 2 risers in each flight, except in a Class 9 building subject to ND1.7(d)
 - subject to (ix), going and riser dimensions in accordance with Figure ND2.13.1 and Table ND2.13.1 that are constant throughout each flight
 - risers which do not have any openings that would allow a 100 mm sphere to pass through between the treads
 - treads which have a non-slip finish or a suitable non-skid strip near the edge of the nosings
 - treads of solid construction (not mesh mother perforated material) if the stairway is more than 10 m high or connects more than three *storeys*
 - in a Class 9 building - not more than 36 successive risers and landings without a change in direction of at least 30°; and
 - across fall of between 1:100 and 1:50 where the stairway is subject to wetting
 - treads do not exceed the goings by more than 30 mm; and
 - in a sole occupancy unit in a class 2 building or class 4 part, or where it is not part of a *required exit* and to which there is no normal access to the public, going and riser dimensions to Table DD1.1.

Figure ND2.13.1 - Measurement of Riser Going and Tread



Note: R = Riser
G = Going
T = Tread

Table ND2.13.1 - Riser Dimensions (mm) to Match Going

Pitch	GOING (mm)								
	250	260	270	280	290	300	310	320	330
37°	188								
36°	182	188							
35°	175	182	189						
34°	168	175	182	188					
33°	162	169	175	181	188				
32°	156	162	168	174	181	187			
31°	150	156	162	167	174	180	186		
30°		150	156	161	167	173	179	185	
29°			150	155	161	167	173	179	183
28°				150	155	160	165	170	175
27°					148	153	158	163	168
26°						146	151	156	161
25°								149	154
24°									147

Notes:

a) Actual riser dimension may be selected to suit the inter-landing height. However the value of the riser dimension must not be outside the maximum or minimum dimensions shown for each value of going.

Tb) he dimensions shown within the outlined box are preferred because they are less strenuous for individuals on crutches or with minor disabilities.

ND2.13.2 Curved Stairs

Curved stairs must comply with the relevant requirements of ND2.13.1 as well as the following:

a) For the purposes of satisfying Table ND2.13.1 or Table DD1.1 in the case of stairs in ND2.13.1 (ix), the going must be measured -

- along half way across the width of the stair where the clear width is less than 900 mm; and
- 300 mm from each side of the stair where the clear width is 900 mm or more

b) All steps must have the same uniform taper

c) The going at the narrow end of the steps must be not less than 75 mm

d) Winders are not permitted.

ND2.14 Landings

In a stairway:

a) landings having a maximum slope of 1:50 may be used in any building to limit the number of risers in each flight and each landing must -

- be not less than 750 mm long measured 500 mm from the inside edge of the landing; and
- have a non-slip finish throughout or a suitable non-skid strip near the edge of the landing where it leads to a flight of stairs below; and

in a Class 9a building -

- the area of any landing must be sufficient to move a stretcher, 2 m long and 600 mm wide, at an incline not more than the slope of the stairs, with at least one end of the stretcher on the

- landing while changing direction between flights; or
- the stair must have a change of direction of 180°, and the landing a clear width of not less than 1.6 m and a clear length of not less than 2.7 m.

ND2.15 Thresholds

The threshold of a doorway must not incorporate a step or ramp at any point closer to the doorway than the width of the door leaf unless:

- a) in patient-care areas in a Class 9a building, the door sill is not more than 25 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony or the like to which the doorway opens
- b) in other cases -
 - the doorway opens to a road, *open space* or external balcony; and
 - the door sill is not more than 190 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony, or the like, to which the doorway opens.

ND2.16 Balustrades

a) in a Class 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 9 building and a Class 7 building used as a *public carpark*, a continuous balustrade must be provided along the side of any stairway or ramp, or any corridor, hallway, balcony, bridge or the like, if -

- it is not bounded by a wall; and
- the change in level is more than 1 m

except at the perimeter of a *stage*, rigging loft, loading dock, an area accessible only to maintenance staff, or the like.

b) A balustrade *required* by (a) must prevent, as far as practicable -

- children climbing over or through it
- persons accidentally falling from the floor; and
- objects which might strike a person at a lower level accidentally falling from the floor surface.

c) in low risk areas such as *fire-isolated stairways*, *fire-isolated ramps* or external stairways that are provided instead of *fire-isolated stairways*, other areas used exclusively for emergency purposes and other stairways and ramps (including access bridges and landings), where the change in level is not more than 2 m a balustrade satisfies (b) if -

- the balustrade has a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosings of the stair treads and the floor of the landing, access bridge or the like; and
- the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade (including any openable *window* or panel) is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of any opening is not more than 100 mm.

d) At balconies a balustrade satisfies (b) if -

- it has a height of not less than 930 mm above the balcony floor
- the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm
- all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold; and

e) In stairways and ramps (including access bridges and landings) where the change in level is more than 2 m, a balustrade satisfies (b) if -

- it has a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosings of the stair treads and the floor of the landing, balcony, corridor, hallway, access bridge or the like
- the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade (including any openable *window* or panel) is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm; and
- all parts of the balustrade more than 150 mm and less than 760 mm from the floor or nosings are vertical or otherwise do not provide a toe-hold.

f) A balustrade or other barrier in front of fixed seating in a *mezzanine floor* or balcony in a Class 9b building satisfies (b) if it complies with (d), or -

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

- it is not less than 700 mm in height above the *mezzanine floor* or balcony floor and a horizontal projection extends not less than 1 m outwards from the top of the balustrade; and
- the space between balusters or the width of any opening in the balustrade is not more than 100 mm except where the space between rails or the height of the opening is not more than 100 mm.

ND2.17 Handrails

a) Except in a Class 7 or 8 building other than a *public carpark*, suitable handrails must be provided where necessary to assist and provide stability to persons using a ramp or stairway.

b) Handrails satisfy (a) if they are -

- located along at least one side of the ramp or flight of stairs
- located along each side if it is a Class 9b building that is used as an *early childhood centre* or as a primary *school*, or if the total width of the stairway or ramp is 2 m or more
- not more than 2 m apart in the case of intermediate handrails; fixed at a height of not less than 700 mm above the nosings of stair treads in a Class 9b building that is used as a primary *school*
- in any other case fixed at a height of not less than 865 mm above the nosings of stair treads and the floor surface of the ramp, landing, or the like; and
- continuous between stair flight landings and have no obstruction on or above them that will tend to break a hand-hold.

c) Handrails in a Class 9a building must be provided along at least one side of every passageway or corridor used by patients, and must be -

- fixed not less than 50 mm clear of the wall; and
- where practicable, continuous for their full length.

ND2.18 Fixed platforms, walkways and ladders

Fixed platforms, walkways, non-*required* stairways, handrails, balustrades and ladders must comply with AS 1657 in:

- a Class 7 or Class 8 building, or part of a building; and
- lift motor rooms, plant rooms, and the like.

ND2.19 Doorways and doors

A doorway serving as a *required exit*, forming part of a *required exit*, or in a patient-care area of a Class 9a building:

a) must not be fitted with a revolving door

b) must not be fitted with a roller shutter or tilt-up door unless -

- it serves a Class 6, 7 or 8 building or part with a *floor area* not more than 200 m²
- the doorway is the only *required exit* from the building or part; and
- it is held in the open position while the building or part is lawfully occupied

c) must not be fitted with a sliding door unless -

- it leads directly to a road or *open space*; and
- the door can be opened manually under a force of not more than 10 kg; and

d) if fitted with a door which is power-operated -

- it must be able to be opened by hand under a force of not more than 10 kg if there is a malfunction or failure of the power source; or
- it must open automatically if there is a power failure or on the activation of a fire or smoke alarm anywhere in the part served by the door.

ND2.20 Swinging doors

A swinging door in a *required exit* or forming part of a *required exit*:

a) must not encroach -

- at any part of its swing by more than 500 mm on the *required* width of a *required* stairway, passageway or ramp, including the landings; and

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

- when fully open, by more than 100 mm on the *required* width of the *required exit*, and the measurement of encroachment in each case is to include door handles or other furniture or attachments to the door
- b) must swing in the direction of egress unless -
 - it serves a building or part with a *floor area* not more than 200m², it is the only *required exit* from the building or part and it is fitted with advice for holding it in the open position; or
 - it serves a *sanitary compartment* or airlock (in which case it may swing in either direction); and
- c) must not otherwise impede the path or direction of egress.

ND2.21 Operation of Latch

A door in a *required exit*, forming part of a *required exit* or in the path of travel to a *required exit* must be readily openable without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress, by a single-hand downward or horizontal pushing action on a single device which is located between 900 mm and 1200 mm from the floor, unless:

- a) it serves a vault, strong room, *sanitary compartment*, or the like; or
- b) it serves only, or is within -
 - a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part
 - a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 5, 6, 7 or 8 building with a *floor area* not more than 200 m²; or
 - a space which is otherwise inaccessible to persons at all times when the door is locked; or
- c) it serves a bank or other occupancy where special arrangements for security are necessary and it can be immediately unlocked -
 - by operating a fail-safe control switch, not contained within a protective enclosure, to actuate a device to unlock the door; or
 - by hand by a person or persons, specifically nominated by the owner, properly instructed as to the duties and responsibilities involved and available at all times when the building is lawfully occupied so that persons in the building or part may immediately escape if there is a fire or other emergency; or
- d) it is fitted with a fail-safe device which automatically unlocks the door upon the activation of any *sprinkler system* or smoke or thermal detector system installed throughout the building.

ND2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits

Doors must not be locked from inside a *fire-isolated stairway*, *fire-isolated ramp* or *fire-isolated passageway* enclosure to prevent re-entry to the *storey* or room it serves in:

- a) a Class 9a building; or
- b) a building more than 25 m in *effective height* unless all the doors are automatically unlocked by a fail-safe device upon the activation of a fire alarm, and at least at every fourth *storey* the doors are not able to be locked and a sign is fixed on it stating that re-entry is available.

ND3 Access for People with Disabilities

ND3.1 Application of part

This Part applies to all Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings. For Class 1, 2, 4 and 10 buildings refer DD 2.1.

ND3.2 Access to Buildings

Access for people with disabilities must be provided to all buildings as set out in Table ND 3.2 by means of a continuous path of travel and as described in the Australian Department of Foreign Affairs (DFAT): Accessibility Design Guide: Universal Design principles for Australia's Aid Program - Annex A – Built Environment - (Available free of charge DFAT website):

- a) from the boundary of the allotment
- b) from any carpark space on the allotment (whether within or outside the building):
 - that is set aside for people with disabilities using the building; or
 - if there are no carpark spaces set aside for people with disabilities, from any carpark area that serves the building; and
- c) from any other building on the allotment to which access for people with disabilities is *required*.

Table ND3.2 - Requirements for Access for People With Disabilities

Class of building	Access requirements
Class3 (a) If the building contains: more than 10 units up to 49 units more than 49 but not more than 99 more than 99 units .. (b) If accommodation is provided for more than 10 persons other than in <i>sole-occupancy units</i> : up to 49 beds more than 49 but not more than 99 more than 99. (c) Common areas of buildings that are <i>required</i> to be accessible	To and within: 1 sole-occupancy unit. 2 sole-occupancy units. 3 sole-occupancy units. To and within: 2 beds. 4 beds. 6 beds. The entrance floor and to all public areas on that floor.
Class 5 and 6	To and within the entrance floor if its <i>floor area</i> is more than 500 m2.
Class 7	To and within the entrance floor if the total <i>floor area</i> of the building is more than 3000 m2
Class 8	To and within the entrance floor if the total <i>floor area</i> of the building is more than 3000 m2
Class 5, 6, 7 and 8	To and within any floor if irrespective of <i>floor area</i> , the floor is not more than 190 mm at the point of entrance above or below the adjacent finished ground level; and within any other floor to which vertical access by way of a ramp, step or kerb ramp, or passenger lift is provided.
Class9a	To and within all areas normally accessible to the public, patients or staff.
Class9b-	

SECTION ND – ACCESS AND EGRESS

Class of building	Access requirements
An assembly building not being a school or an early childhood centre.	To and within every room that accommodates more than 100 persons, and if fixed seating is provided, not less than 1 wheelchair space for each 200 seats, or part, with a minimum of 2 spaces; and within any other floor to which vertical access by way of a ramp, step or kerb ramp, or passenger lift is provided. To and within every room used by children.
Notes The calculation of <i>floor area</i> and the number of persons accommodated are in accordance with ND1.13. For the purposes of this Table, a double/queen/king bed counts as 1 bed. A kerb ramp is a plastic or rubber ramp with a maximum 1:10 slope that is designed to provide easy access over or up a kerb for wheelchairs, pedestrians or vehicles.	

ND3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible

a) Access for people with disabilities, in particular those with a physical or visual impairment, must be provided -

- from the doorway at the entrance floor providing access to any *sanitary compartment required* for the use of people with disabilities; and
- to areas normally used by the occupants, including emergency exits but excluding any plantroom, commercial kitchen, cleaners' store room, maintenance accessway, rigging loft, or the like.

b) A path of travel providing *required* access must not include a stairway, turnstile, revolving door, escalator or other impediment which would prevent a person in a wheelchair using it.

c) Access, finishes and fittings, including passageways, ramps, step or kerb ramps, passenger lifts, signs, doorways and other parts of the building *required* by this Part must comply at least with the provisions set out in the Australian Department of Foreign Affairs (DFAT): Accessibility Design Guide: Universal Design principles for Australia's Aid Program - (Available free of charge DFAT website).

ND3.4 Common Building Elements

Common building elements for accessibility include:

- a) Controls and operating mechanism – e.g. vending machines, electrical switches, wall sockets etc.
- b) Colour contrast – persons with vision impairment need colours to contrast sharply against background for them to successfully identify the objects, walls and obstacles
- c) Flooring – non slip
- d) Lighting – good lighting and contrasting environmental features to highlight them against their background
- e) Tactile pathway – tactile guiding blocks (line type) indicate correct path/route to follow and tactile warning blocks (dot-type) to indicate an approaching hazard or change in direction
- f) Signage – for: direction, information, identification, instructive, health and safety.

Section

NE



SERVICES & EQUIPMENT

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO PUBLIC
BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS
(CLASS 2 to CLASS 9)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES	1
NEP1 Fire-fighting Equipment	1
NEP2 Smoke Control	1
NEP3 Lift Installations	1
NEP4 Emergency Lighting, Exit Signs & Alarms.....	1
NEP5 Maintenance of Safety Installations	1
NEP6 Electrical Work.....	1
REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	2
NEP1.1 Active Fire Fighting	2
NEP2.1 Smoke Control	2
NEP3.1 Lift Installations.....	2
NEP4.1 Emergency Lighting	2
NEP4.2 Fire and Smoke Alarms	2
NEP4.3 Electrical Safety	3
NEP4.4 Electrical Amenity	3
NEP4.5 Energy Efficiency	3
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	4
NE1 Fire-Fighting Equipment.....	4
NE1.1 Application of part	4
NE1.2 Fire mains and Water Supply.....	4
NE1.3 Riser main system	4
NE1.4 Where Hydrants are Required	4
NE1.5 Hose Reels.....	5
NE1.6 Portable Fire Extinguishers	5
NE1.7 Fire and smoke alarms.....	5
NE1.8 Fire precautions during construction	6
NE1.10 Provision for special hazards	7
NE2 Smoke Control.....	8
NE2.1 Smoke Venting	8
NE2.2 Exclusion of smoke from fire-isolated exits.....	8

SECTION NE – SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

NE2.3 Natural smoke venting	8
NE2.4 Air-handling systems	9
NE2.5 Roof vents	9
NE3 Lift Installations	10
NE3.1 Application of Part	10
NE3.2 Stretcher Facility in Lifts	10
NE3.3 Warning Against Use of Lifts in Fire or Earthquake.....	10
NE3.4 Emergency Lifts.....	10
NE 4 Emergency Lighting, Exit Signs & Warning System	11
NE4.1 Application of Part	11
NE4.2 Emergency Lighting Requirements	11
NE4.3 Measurement of Distance.....	11
NE4.4 Design and Operation of Emergency Lighting.....	12
NE4.5 Exit Signs.....	12
NE4.6 Direction Signs	12
NE4.7 Class 2, 3 and 4 buildings: Exemptions.....	12
NE4.8 Design and Operation of Exit Signs	12
NE 5 Inspection, Test & Maintenance of Safety Installations	13
NE5.1 Application of part	13
NE5.2 Maintenance Requirements	13
NE6 Electrical Work	15
NE6.1 Electrical Safety.....	15
NE6.2 Amenity.....	15

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATION NE1.2: Fire Mains and Water Supply Services
SPECIFICATION NE1.7: Fire Detection and Alarm Systems
SPECIFICATION NE1.11: Occupancies of Excessive Fire Hazard
SPECIFICATION NE2.4: Air Handling Systems in Buildings
SPECIFICATION NE2.6: Smoke Exhaust Systems

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

A building must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives are fulfilled:

NEP1 Fire Fighting Equipment

Having regard to the size and use of the building and its Type of construction, adequate in-built and external fire protection services must be provided to:

- a) restrict the growth to the compartment of origin
- b) prevent fire spread to adjoining buildings or allotments; and
- c) facilitate the fighting of fire to minimize damage to the building and its contents.

NEP2 Smoke Control

Air-handling systems installed in a building must:

provide suitable air for the health and safety of the occupants; and
incorporate reasonable measures to minimize the spread of smoke in the event of fire to escape paths from the building to other compartments and to enable access by fire fighters.

NEP3 Lift Installations

Lifts where provided must have regard to the nature of any emergency –

- a) to assist in the evacuation of the occupants; and
- b) to facilitate access by fire-fighting and other emergency personnel.

NEP4 Emergency Lighting, Exit Signs & Alarms

a) Emergency lighting and *exit* signs must be provided where necessary to facilitate safe egress in an emergency upon failure of the normal lighting.

b) Suitable alarm systems must be provided to alert occupants of an emergency, initiate *automatic* counter measures and summon emergency personnel.

NEP5 Maintenance of Safety Installations

Equipment, installations and components critical to the safety of the building or the occupants must be adequately maintained in such condition that will enable their proper performance.

NEP6 Electrical Work

All electrical work must meet the following objectives:

- a) It must prevent electrocution, burns or fire
- b) It must satisfy the reasonable expectations of the users by ensuring that it is adequate for their intended use, both current and anticipated.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

NEP1.1 Active Fire Fighting

In determining the type and extent of active fire-fighting systems that must be provided for a building, the following must be taken into account:

- a) the class of occupancy
- b) proximity to fire-source features
- c) Type of construction in relation to fire resistance
- d) size of fire compartments
- e) effective height
- f) the flow rate and pressure of available water supply
- g) the capacity of the Fire Brigade or other firefighting organisation that serves the area where the building is located; and
- h) the technical resources available locally to satisfactorily install and regularly test and maintain the active fire-fighting system.

NEP2.1 Smoke Control

Air handling systems in buildings must be no more complex than what is given in the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions unless satisfactory evidence is produced to show that the level of expertise available on an on-going basis would be adequate to keep them regularly tested serviced and maintained in a sound condition. Air handling systems must be such that smoke is not transported from the compartment or locality of origin to escape paths and other *fire compartments or storeys* to a concentration that might affect the safety of the occupants or hinder the work of fire fighters.

NEP3.1 Lift Installations

Lift installations in tall buildings must be capable of transporting stretches without discomfort. Effective warning must be displayed against the use of lifts during fires or earthquakes. In very tall buildings at least one lift must be such that it can be safety operated during emergencies such as fire and be switched during the emergency for operation by only emergency personnel such as fire fighters.

NEP4.1 Emergency Lighting

In three storey or higher residential buildings, in other than small buildings where the occupants are transient, and in all other buildings emergency lighting must be provided to clearly indicate, *exits* and the doors guarding such *exits* must be identifiably marked. Such buildings must also have emergency lighting available to facilitate the occupants to reach the *exits* without confusion and to safely negotiate the *exits* until they can be in a road or *open space*. The route to the *exits* must be identifiably marked. In hospitals and in areas where emergency personnel operate, there must be adequate emergency lighting to avoid patient trauma or 'hardship and to permit the staff to carry out emergency functions.

All emergency lighting must automatically operate in the event of any failure of normal lighting for a period long enough for the evacuation of all the occupants, plus a margin. Such lighting must give an adequate level of illumination to allow evacuation without hindrance.

NEP4.2 Fire and Smoke Alarms

Reliable detection and warning systems must be installed for *automatic* operation in the event of a fire or generation of unacceptable levels of smoke. In the case of:

- a) all buildings of 4 stories and above
- b) buildings of medium size or larger, frequented by the public and where flammable and consumer goods are displayed; and

SECTION NE – SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

c) occupancies of excessive hazard of moderate size or larger,

the detection systems on initiation must automatically activate suitable fire-fighting systems and automatically notify the fire services.

NEP4.3 Electrical Safety

The supply system must:

a) have suitable devices of adequate interruptive duty to automatically shut off the supply in the event of a fault-or overload. Such devices must allow easy reinstatement of the supply after interruption.

b) have devices which are clearly identified and easily reached to isolate live parts from the incoming supply.

c) be constructed and installed to ensure that no part of the system can be subjected to a voltage higher than that for which the system was designed.

d) when the neutral of the supply is earthed, have socket outlet or plug - socket adaptor construction - which would ensure that the live, neutral and earth conductors can only be connected to the corresponding live, neutral and earth conductors of the plug.

e) where it is a common simply system be so compatible that the safety features of the system itself are not impaired.

f) where it has a multiple earthed neutral system, have an adequate connection between the neutral conductor and earth at each consumer's premises.

g) be adequately protected against damage arising from exposure to weather, water or excessive dampness mechanical loads and other such agents expected under normal conditions of use; and

h) ensure that the main switch is normally accessible only to the occupants.

NEP4.4 Electrical Amenity

The supply system must have an adequate capacity to serve the reasonable anticipated needs of the users.

NEP4.5 Energy Efficiency

All buildings, including the operation and use of fixed appliances and building services (lighting, heating, domestic hot water, ventilation and air conditioning systems) must be designed and constructed to provide opportunities to reduce solar heat gain and promote cooling of the interior appropriate to:

a) the function and use of the building, facility and/or site;

b) the promotion of human comfort, health and safety in the interior environment;

c) the safe operation of storage, handling and fabrication of products and/or hazardous substances

d) the geographic location, topography, hydrology and natural features,

e) buildings, facilities, site works and site servicing on adjacent property, and

Key Energy Efficiency aspects should align with the Vanuatu National Policy (NEESAP), the URA Regulation and Vanuatu Electricity Supplies Act and the SIEAPI Guidelines on Energy Efficiency.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NE1 Fire Fighting Equipment

NE1.1 Application of part

This Part applies to Class 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings.

NE1.2 Fire mains and Water Supply

a) Where a permanently charged *fire main* and water supply system are available, these must provide a continuous supply of water at sufficient pressures and rates of flow to enable effective firefighting on any adjoining building. The system must in addition have *hydrants* located free of obstructions at appropriate intervals. The location of the *hydrants* must be suitably marked for ease of identification by the fire service.

b) In the case of buildings with a *rise* of 4 *storeys* or more where an adjoining permanently charged *fire main* and water supply system is not available, adequate on *site* water storage and suitable fire pumps must be provided to give the rates and pressures of flow for fire fighting, as per NZS4510.

c) A *fire main* and water supply system must comply with Specification NE1.2

NE1.3 Riser main system

Riser mains to NZS4510 must be provided in buildings with a *rise* of 5 *storeys* or more. In buildings with a *rise* of up to 8 *storeys* a *charged dry riser main system* is allowable; for taller buildings a *wet riser main system* is *required*. Any *wet riser main system* must be connected to a permanently charged *fire main*. In buildings with a *rise* of more than 8 *storey* a dedicated automatic starting fire pump or pumps in accordance with NZS4510 must be installed in the system to boost the pressure and/or the rates of flow to the values *required* by the Standard.

NE1.4 Where Hydrants are Required

a) General

One or more *hydrants* must be provided -

- in each *storey* with a *floor area* of more than 750 m²
- in every *storey* if the building contains 5 *storeys* or more; and
- on the roof if the building has a *rise* of more than 8 *storeys* except on
 - a roof having a pitch of more than 10°; or
 - a roof of a plant room or other subsidiary structure on the main roof.

b) External *hydrants*

The configuration and location of a building and of adjacent external *hydrants* must be such that the farthest point on the *storeys* to which direct access from a street is available for the fire service, must be within reach of a 6 m spray from the nozzle of a 120 m fire hose.

External *hydrants* must be located:

- not closer than 6 m from a building unless protected from it with a wall having a FRL of not less than 60/60/30 extending at least 2 m each side and 3 m above the *hydrant* outlets; and
- not more than 20 m unobstructed distance from hard-standing access for a fire-pump appliance.

c) Internal *hydrants*

- The *riser main* system must provide for sufficient number and disposition of internal *hydrants* such that any point on any *storey* is within reach of a 6 m spray from the nozzle of a 45 m fire hose.
- Internal *hydrants* must be located on the floor not more than 4 m from a *required exit*, or in a *required* stairway, passageway or ramp so as not to encroach on the required width of the exit.

d) *Hydrants* for the ground floor of a building may be *external hydrants*

NE1.5 Hose Reels

Hose reels must be installed in buildings as listed in Table NE1.5 and must:

- a) not be located -
- within a fire-isolated *exit*, or
 - so that the hose will need to pass through the doorway fitted with a fire or smoke door; except a door to a *sole-occupancy unit* in a class 2, 3 or 4 building

Table NE1.5 - Requirements for Firehose Reels

Occupancy	Fire hose reels required
Class 2	if more than 4 residential storeys contained
Class 3	if more than 2 residential storeys contained
Class 5,6,7,8 or 9b	any storey if floor area of storey more than 750 m ²
Class 9a	all buildings
AND All Classes	where an internal hydrant is required,

- b) be located -
- not more than 4 m from a *required exit* on each floor of the building (including the ground floor and adjacent to any *hydrants required* within the building; and
 - so that the nozzle end of a fully-extended fire hose fitted to the reel and laid to avoid any partitions or other physical barriers will reach every part of the floor
- c) serve only the floor on which they are located except that a hose reel may serve a *sole-occupancy unit* of not more than 2 storeys, or a unit with a *mezzanine floor*, if the hose reel is located at the level of egress from that unit; and
- d) comply with AS/NZS 1221 and NZS 4503.

NE1.6 Portable Fire Extinguishers

Portable fire extinguishers containing an extinguishing agent suitable for the risk being protected must be installed in accordance with NZS 4503 in all buildings except:

- a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
- b) in the case of water-type extinguishers, a building or part of a building served by a fire hose reel.

Table NE1.6, overleaf, shows the commonly available portable extinguishers and their selection for appropriate class and type of fires.

NE1.7 Fire and smoke alarms

NE1.7.1 A suitable *automatic* fire and smoke alarm system complying with Specification NE1.7 must be installed in –

- a) each storey if the building has a rise of 5 to 8 storeys;
- b) a Class 3 building –
- if rooms for residential use are above a height of 2 storeys; or
 - in a special accommodation house or home for the aged, children, sick or physically or mentally disabled persons or the like; and
- c) a Class 9a building –

SECTION NE – SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- if more than 20 patients are accommodated in wards or bedrooms; or
- in a clinic or day surgery, having areas where surgical procedures are performed at a height of 3 storeys or more.

Table NE1.6 - Portable Fire Extinguisher Selection Chart

Class and type of fire/ type of extinguisher		Contents of Extinguisher are			
		Electrically conductive		Electrically non-conductive	
		WATER	FOAM	DRY CHEMICAL	CARBON DIOXIDE
A	Ordinary combustibles (wood, paper, etc)	✓ YES MOST SUITABLE	✓ YES	✓ YES	✓ YES
B	Flammable liquids	X NO	✓ YES SPECIAL FOAM REQUIRED FOR ALCOLHOL- TYPE FIRE	✓ YES	✓ YES
C	Flammable gases	X NO	X NO	✓ YES	✓ YES
D	Combustible metals	X NO	X NO	X NO	X NO
USE SPECIAL PURPOSE EXTINGUISHERS ONLY					
E	Fire involving live electrical equipment	X NO	X NO	✓ YES	✓ YES

NE1.7.2 A manually operated evacuation alarm system to the relevant provisions of Specification NE1.7 must be provided in any building of –

- Class 3 containing more than 20 beds where the rooms for residential use are located up to a height of only 2 storeys.
- Class 5 with a rise of 3 or 4 storeys and a storey floor area of more than 500 m²;
- Class 6,7 or 8 excluding a public carpark with a rise of up to 4 storeys and a storey floor area of more than 500 m²;
- Class 9(a) with a rise of up to 4 storeys; and
- In the residential part of a school accommodating more than 20 persons at a level above or below the entrance level. Also in all other class 9b buildings (including schools) with a rise of up to 4 storeys and a storey floor area of more than 250 m²; and

Type A, B or C alarm systems are acceptable for Class 3 buildings, Type B or C for Class 6 and 9 other than schools, and a Type A system for Class 7 and 8 buildings and schools.

NE1.8 Fire precautions during construction

In a building under construction –

- not less than one fire extinguisher to suit Class A, B and C fires and electrical fires must be provided at all times on each floor adjacent to each required exit or temporary stair or exit and;
- after the building has reached an effective height of 12 m –
 - the required hydrants and hose reels must be operational in at least every storey that is covered by the roof or the floor structure above, except the 2 uppermost storeys; and

- *any required fire brigade booster connection* must be installed.

NE1.10 Provision for special hazards

Suitable additional provision must be made if special problems of fighting fire could arise because of –

- a) the nature or quantity of materials stored, displayed or used in a building or on the allotment such as occupancies of excessive hazard, all as described in Specification NE1.11; or
- b) the location of the building in relation to a water supply for fire fighting purposes.

NE2 Smoke Control

NE2.1 Smoke Venting

Buildings must have a system to control smoke as listed in Table NE2.1.

Table NE2.1 Requirements for smoke control

BUILDING	SYSTEM
<i>Sole-occupancy units</i> in Class 2,3 or 4 buildings. Single storey buildings where the <i>floor area</i> of a <i>fire compartment or storey</i> does not exceed 500m ² and is not served by a central mechanical ventilation plant.	No requirement
Single <i>storey</i> buildings, or the top <i>storey</i> of <i>multistorey</i> buildings	Either: a) <i>Windows</i> , panels or the like in accordance with NE2.3; b) Roof vents in accordance with NE2.5; or c) Smoke exhaust systems in accordance with NE2.6.
Multistorey buildings excluding the top <i>storey</i>	<i>Windows</i> , panels or the like in accordance with NE2.3.
Class 6 buildings with enclosed malls exceeding 40 m in length	Smoke exhaust systems in accordance with NE2.6.

NE2.2 Exclusion of smoke from fire-isolated exits

Smoke must be excluded from fire-isolated *exits* in accordance with Table NE2.2

Table NE2.2 Means of excluding smoke from fire-isolated exits

EXIT TYPE	REQUIREMENT
<i>A required fire-isolated stairway</i> serving any <i>storey</i> above an <i>effective height</i> of 25m. <i>A required fire-isolated stairway</i> serving 3 or more below ground <i>storeys</i> . <i>A required fire-isolated ramp or fire-isolated passageway</i> having a path of travel more than 60m along it to a road or <i>open space</i> .	Either – a) a pressurisation system in accordance with NE2.7; or b) open access ramps or balconies in accordance with ND2.5.
Note: A below ground <i>storey</i> is one where egress involves an upward vertical climb of more than 1.5m	

NE2.3 Natural smoke venting

Windows, doors, panels, or the like, provided to control the movement of smoke must –

- a) be as evenly distributed as practicable; and
- b) be readily openable, except that if *windows* and panels or the like are provided on the ground level *storey*, they need only be shatterable.

NE2.4 Air-handling systems

If an air-handling system is installed in a building it must operate in accordance with Specification NE2.4.

NE2.5 Roof vents

Required roof vents must comply with AS2665, except that –

- a) smoke curtains may divide the space below the roof into compartments with area not more than 1500m².
- b) all roof vents within the same compartment must open at the same time; and
- c) roof vents must be activated by-
 - a fire detection and alarm system which complies with AS1670 or NZS 4512; or
 - smoke detectors spaced not more than
 - 30 m apart and 15m from any smoke curtain and with not less than one detector for each 500 m² of *floor area*; or
 - rate of rise heat detectors spaced not more than 15 m apart and 7.5 m from any smoke curtain and with not less than one detector for each 250 m² of *floor area*.

NE3 Lift Installations

NE3.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to Class 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings.

Lift installations must comply with AS1735 Parts 1 and 2.

NE3.2 Stretcher Facility in Lifts

a) If passenger lifts are installed in any building with an *effective height* of more than 25 m, at least one lift serving all *storeys* of the building must have a stretcher facility in accordance with (b).

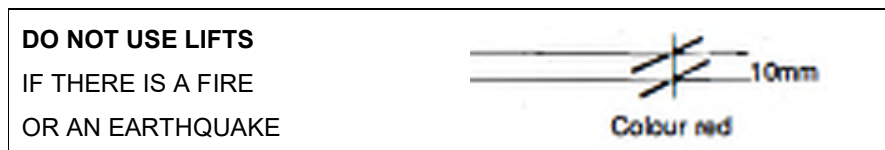
b) A lift *required* to comply with NE3.2(a) or NE3.4(b) must accommodate a raised stretcher with a patient lying on it horizontally by providing a clear space 600 mm wide x 2000 mm long x 1200 mm high above the floor level.

NE3.3 Warning Against Use of Lifts in Fire or Earthquake

A warning sign must:

- a) be displayed where it can be readily seen -
 - near every call button panel for a passenger lift or group of lifts throughout a building; except
 - a small lift such as a dumb-waiter or the like that is for the transport of goods only; and
- b) comply with the details and dimensions of Figure NE3.3 and consist of -
 - incised, inlaid or embossed letters on a metal, wood, plastic or similar plate securely and permanently attached to the wall; or
 - letters incised or inlaid directly into the surface of the material forming the wall.

Figure NE3.3 Warning Sign for Passenger Lifts



NE3.4 Emergency Lifts

a) Among the lifts serving every *storey* of a building with an *effective height* of 75 m or more, at least one must be capable of being used as an emergency lift.

- b) An emergency lift *required* by (a) must -
 - comply with AS 1735.2
 - be of sufficient size to take a stretcher facility in accordance with NE3.2(b), and
 - have a rating of at least 612 kg.

NE 4 Emergency Lighting, Exit Signs & Warning System

NE4.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to Class 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings.

NE4.2 Emergency Lighting Requirements

An emergency lighting system must be installed:

- a) in every *fire-isolated stairway*, *fire-isolated ramp* or *fire-isolated passageway* located in Class 2 buildings of 5 *storeys* or more, Class 3 buildings containing 30 beds or more, a building with Class 4 parts located at or higher than 15 m *effective height*, and in all Class 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings
- b) in every *storey* of a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building where the *storey* has a *floor area* more than 500 m²
 - in every passageway, corridor, hallway, or the like, which is part of the path of travel to an *exit*
 - in any room having a *floor area* more than 250 m² if it does not open to a corridor or space which has emergency lighting.
- c) in every passageway, corridor, hallway, or the like, having a length of more than 6 m from the entrance doorway of any *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building of 5 *storeys* or more, in a Class 3 building containing 30 beds or more, in a Class 4 part located at or above 15 m *effective height*, to the nearest doorway opening directly to -
 - a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated ramp or fire-isolated passageway
 - an external stairway serving instead of a smoke or *fire-isolated stairway* under ND1.8
 - an external balcony leading to a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated ramp or fire-isolated passageway; or
 - a road or *open space*,
- d) in every *required non-fire isolated stairway*, ramp or passageway connecting more than 3 consecutive *storeys* in other than Class 2 buildings
- e) in a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 5, 6, or 9 building if -
 - the *floor area* of the unit is more than 500 m²; and
 - an *exit* from the unit does not open to a road or *open space* or to an external stairway, passageway, balcony or ramp, leading directly to a road or *open space*
- f) in every room or space to which there is public access in every *storey* in a Class 6 or 9b building where -
 - the *floor area* in that *storey* is more than 1000 m²
 - any point on the floor of that *storey* is more than 30 m from the nearest doorway opening directly to a stairway, ramp, passageway, road or *open space*
 - egress from that *storey* involves a vertical upward climb within the building of more than 1.5 m, or
 - the *storey* provides a path of travel from any other *storey required* by (i), (ii), or (iii) to have emergency lighting
- g) in a Class 9a building -
 - in every passageway, corridor, hallway, or the like, serving a *ward area* or patient treatment room; and
 - in every *ward area* or patient treatment room having a *floor area* of more than 200 m².

NE4.3 Measurement of Distance

Distances, other than vertical *rise*, must be the shortest measurement along the corridor or the path of travel whether by straight lines, curves or a combination of both.

NE4.4 Design and Operation of Emergency Lighting

- a) Emergency lighting systems must -
- be *automatic* in operation
 - provide sufficient illumination without undue delay for safe evacuation of all areas of the building where it is *required*
 - if it is a central system, be suitably protected from damage by fire; and
 - operate without interruption for a minimum of 1 hour.
- b) Emergency lighting in accordance with AS/NZS 2293.1 satisfies (a).

NE4.5 Exit Signs

Exit signs must be installed and be clearly visible to persons approaching the *exit*, on or near:

- a) every door providing direct egress from a *storey* to -
- an enclosed stairway, passageway or ramp serving as a *required exit*
 - an external stairway, passageway or ramp serving as a *required exit*, and
 - an external access balcony leading to a *required exit*
- b) every door from an enclosed stairway, passageway or ramp at every level of discharge to a road or *open space*
- c) every horizontal exit, and
- d) every door serving as, or forming part of, a *required exit*.

NE4.6 Direction Signs

If the *exits* will not otherwise be readily apparent to persons occupying or visiting the building, *exit* signs with directional arrows must be installed in appropriate positions in corridors, hallways, lobbies, and the like, indicating the direction to a *required exit*.

NE4.7 Class 2, 3 and 4 buildings: Exemptions

NE4.5 does not apply to:

- a) a Class 2 building in which every door referred to is clearly and legibly labelled on the side remote from the *exit* or balcony -
- with the word "EXIT" in capital letters 25 mm high in a colour contrasting with that of the background, or
 - by some other suitable method, and
- b) an entrance door of a Class 2, 3 or 4 *sole-occupancy unit*.

NE4.8 Design and Operation of Exit Signs

- a) Every *required exit* sign must -
- be clear and legible and have letters and symbols of adequate size
 - be illuminated at a level sufficient for it to be clearly visible at all times when the building is occupied by any person having the right of legal entry to the building
 - be installed so that if the normal power
 - supply fails, emergency illumination is provided to the sign in the case of those buildings covered by NE3.2, and
 - if illuminated by an emergency lighting system incorporating wiring and a power source, comply with NE4.4.
- b) Exit signs in accordance with AS/NZS 2293.1 satisfy (a).

NE 5 Inspection, Test & Maintenance of Safety Installations

NE5.1 Application of part

This Part applies to Class 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 buildings.

NE5.2 Maintenance Requirements

Safety installations in buildings must be adequately maintained to the requirements of Table NE5.2.

Table NE5.2 - Schedule of Maintenance

Item to be inspected or tested	Nature of inspection and/or test, and frequency
1. Opening protection	
A <i>required</i> fire door, fire window, fire shutter or smoke door	Operate and inspect for compliance with the provisions of part NC3 and specification NC3.4 Monthly
2. Means of egress	
a) Exits and paths of travel including doors, doorways and exit signs	Inspect to ensure compliance with section ND Monthly
b) Required handrails and balustrades	Annually
c) Arrangements for safe egress in buildings with special security provisions	Monthly
3. Signs	
a) Signs concerning use of lifts in the event of fire	Inspect for legibility and installation in compliance with part NE4 Annually
b) <i>Exit</i> sign illumination: internally-illuminated signs	Check that the lamp matches the approved lamp rating marked on the sign fitting Monthly
c) externally-illuminated signs	Check that the illumination is adequate Monthly
4 Emergency lighting	
<i>Required</i> emergency lighting	a) Operate in conditions of simulated failure of power to the distribution board concerned and check for compliance with the provisions of part NE4 Monthly b) Where batteries are involved: Test and inspect as prescribed in AS 1670 as though they are installed pursuant to the provisions of that standard or where AS 1670 is not relevant, test or inspect as appropriate Monthly c) Check battery charger for correct operation Monthly

SECTION NE – SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

Item to be inspected or tested	Nature of inspection and/or test, and frequency
5. Fire-fighting services & equipment	
<i>Required</i> portable fire extinguishers	As prescribed in NZS 4503
<i>Required</i> fire hose reels	As prescribed in NZS 4503
<i>Required</i> hydrants and riser main system	As prescribed in NZS 4503
6. Air-handling systems	
a) Simulate activation of detectors	Operate and check for correct operation in accordance with specification NE2.4 and NE2.6. Ensure that the system is left in correct operating condition all as in NZS 4512
b) Detectors Associated batteries	Test and inspect as though they are prescribed for installations under NZS 4512 Check battery charger for correct operation all as in NZS 4512
c) Fire situations	Check to ensure compliance with AS 1668.1 Annually
d) Fire-control panels	Test and inspect as though the panel is installed as a fire indicator board under NZS 4512
e) Pressurising of stairs, ramps and passageways	Operate, test and inspect to ensure compliance with AS 1668.1 Monthly
7. Manual fire alarms	Operate to see if in working order all as in NZS 4512
8. Automatic fire alarms	
a) Required automatic alarms	As prescribed in NZS 4512
b) Special situations and precautions and outdoor applications	Inspect for compliance with NZS 4512
9. Lifts	
Lifts and associated equipment for operation in event of emergency	Operate under simulated emergency conditions and check for compliance with the provisions of NE3 Quarterly
10. Structural fire protection	
Compartmentation and fire protection of <i>structural members</i>	Ascertain that any work performed or any occurrence, accidental or otherwise, has not resulted in any reduction in the FRL or other fire protection provision of any part of the building installed as <i>required</i> Annually

NE6 Electrical Work

NE6.1 Electrical Safety

NE6.1.1 General requirements

All electrical wiring and installations in or on any class 2 to 9 buildings must ensure safety from electric shock and fire. This requirement is satisfied if all electrical work associated with the building is done to comply with AS/NZS 3000 – Electrical installations – buildings, structures and premises (known as the SAA Wiring Rules) The capacity of the system must allow for the long term anticipated requirements of the occupants.

NE6.1.2 Plug sockets

Plug sockets must:

- a) have their individual switch;
- b) be located so that
 - cords need not be taken across doorways;
 - trailing cords do not have to cross circulation routes;
- c) not be located behind door-swings; and
- d) in the kitchen be located 250 mm above worktops at the back of benches or on a return wall where it exits.

NE6.1.3 Meter and distribution board

The meter must be located in a position from which it can easily be read. If the main switches and circuit breakers/fuses are not located with the meter they must be located at a height of not less than 1.8m from the floor where they can be found easily in the dark

NE6.1.4 Photovoltaic Energy System

All photovoltaic energy systems shall fully comply with the requirements of AS/NZS 5033. Photovoltaic panel systems shall be fixed to the main structure of the building. Fixings shall be designed in accordance with the requirements of Section B – Structure.

NE6.2 Amenity

NE6.2.1 Light switch layout

- a) The layout of light switches must follow the main nighttime circulation routes such as from the entrance hall to the living area to the bed-rooms to the bathroom and toilet. Crossing any major space in the dark must be avoided. The switches must be located close to door openings.
- b) All stairs must have two-way switching at the top and the bottom.

SPECIFICATION NE1.2

Fire Mains and Water Supply Services

Contents

1 Scope	16
2. General requirements	16
3. Fire pump enclosures	17
4. Booster and charged dry riser main connections and cabinets	17

1 Scope

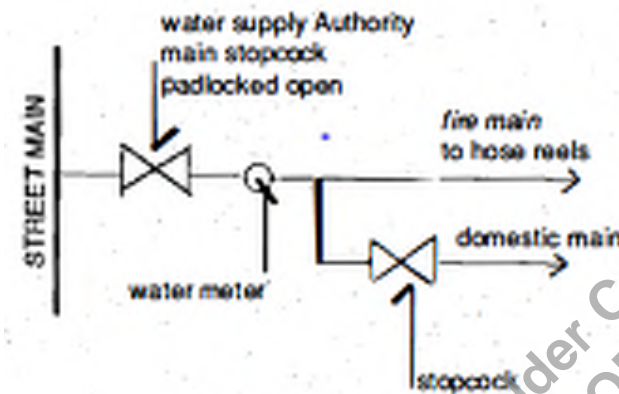
This Specification refers to *fire mains* and water supply services for fire-fighting equipment in buildings.

2. General requirements

A fire main must:

- a) be capable of supplying water at the flow rates and pressures necessary for the satisfactory operation of the *required* fire-fighting equipment
- b) not incorporate plastic pipes above ground, and
- c) not be used for other than fire-fighting purposes except a *fire main* serving only hose reels may be connected to a metered supply if -
 - the *required* flow rate and pressure can be maintained at the most hydraulically disadvantaged hose reel
 - the water meter and street supply to the allotment have a nominal diameter of not less than 32 mm
 - water supply pipework reticulation arrangements comply with Figure 2 or a similar arrangement, and
 - any system valve which can isolate flow in the *fire main* is secured in the open position by a padlocked metal strap.

Figure 2 - Water Supply Reticulation: Combined Services



3. Fire pump enclosures

Fire pumps must be located in a room or enclosure which has a FRL of not less than 60/60/30 and is:

- within the building; or
- external but not within 6 m of the building and any *fire-source feature*.

4. Booster and charged dry riser main connections and cabinets

a) Each *fire brigade booster connection* and the fire service inlet connection for a *charged dry riser main system* must be in locked cabinets accessible only to the fire service. If the system is fitted with a pressure gauge, the gauge must comply with AS 1271, and have a full-scale reading of not less than 25% more than the pressure to which the system has been hydrostatically tested.

b) Cabinets may be located -

- at the *external wall* of a building if they are within sight of the main entrance and for Class 6, 7, 8 or 9b buildings, separated from the building by construction having a FRL of not less than 60/60/30 for not less than 2 m each side of and above the top of the cabinet
- remote from the building if they are at the boundary of the allotment, within sight of the main entrance to the building, adjacent to the principal vehicular access to the allotment and located not less than 10 m. from the *external wall* of any building; or
- in any other suitable position.

c) A permanent fade and water-resistant plan, equal to photo-engraved anodized aluminium, must be displayed in a prominent position within the cabinet, showing the following information -

- the layout of the building and adjacent streets
- the layout of the fire-*hydrant* system
- reticulation, with supply authority street mains and size, location of street and allotment *hydrants*, fire hose reels, booster connections, street and allotment isolating -and non-return valves, pumps and tanks
- the operational discharge pressure and pressure at zero flow of any pump installed in the system
- the capacity of any tank connected to the system
- the height of the highest *hydrant* outlet above the lowest booster inlet connection, and
- the year of installation of the system.

d) Suitable provision must be made for the drainage of water from within a booster or *charged dry riser main system* cabinet.

SPECIFICATION NE1.7

Fire Detection and Alarm Systems

Contents

1. Scope	18
2. Automatic systems.....	18
2.1 Purpose	18
2.2 Connection to Extinguishing Systems	18
2.3 Location of Smoke Detectors	18
2.4 Threshold Levels	19
3. Manually operated evacuation, fire alarm systems.....	19

1. Scope

This Specification describes the installation and operation of automatic fire detection and alarm systems, and manually operated evacuation alarm systems. The *automatic* systems may also be used to operate a smoke control system within a building.

2. Automatic systems

An *automatic* fire detection and alarm system must comply with AS 1670 parts 1, 3, 4 & 5 or NZS 4512 subject to this Specification.

2.1 Purpose

The purpose of a fire detection and alarm system is to:

- a) warn the occupants of any fire within the building
- b) alert the local Fire Service, and
- c) activate any installed *automatic* smoke control system, and
- d) provide for manual operation as an evacuation system.

2.2 Connection to Extinguishing Systems

Systems designed to AS 1670 parts 1, 3, 4 & 5 or NZS 4512 for the actuation of any fire extinguishing system must operate on a dual circuit to permit *automatic* operation of an evacuation alarm.

2.3 Location of Smoke Detectors

Smoke detectors must be:

- a) wherever possible, surface mounted and external to air conditioning and ventilation ducts, unless a point-sampling system with maximum sensitivity level of 0.5% smoke obscuration is used
- b) located at natural collection points for hot smoke having regard to the ceiling geometry and its effects on the migratory path
- c) situated no closer than 3 m from smoke doors or fire doors, and
- d) of the 'photo-electric' type if installed within ducts or atmospheres contaminated with sub-micron dust and other particles likely to set off an ionisation-type detector.

2.4 Threshold Levels

- a) Sampling systems must comply with AS1670, with response times and alarm thresholds maintained at minimum levels and no alarm delay permitted on the highest alarm threshold.
- b) The setting of alarm threshold levels for addressable detectors used within intelligent systems must not exceed the sensitivity levels nominated in -
- AS 1668.1, and
 - AS 1670 parts 1, 3, 4 & 5 or NZS 4512

3. Manually operated evacuation, fire alarm systems

- a) *Required* manually operated evacuation alarm systems must comply with AS 1670 parts 1, 3, 4 & 5 or NZS 4512 for installation, operation and maintenance. The three systems considered are -

Type A: Simple mechanical means

Type B: Simple electrical system, not monitored, and

Type C: Electrical systems continuously monitored by connection to the fire service station.

- b) When Type B systems are installed, the following warning notice must be clearly marked near each manual call point:

NOT CONNECTED TO A FIRE SERVICE IN CASE OF FIRE PHONE

showing the telephone number of the fire authority in the locality.

Type B systems may be substituted with a self-contained battery-operated system, provided care is taken to ensure that the battery has sufficient charge available at all times.

c) Location

Manual call points must be located not more than -

- for Class 3 buildings, 20 m from the doorway of any *sole-occupancy unit*
- for Class 5,6,7, 8 and 9b buildings, 20 m travel distance from any point on the floor, and
- for Class 9a buildings:
 - 12 m from any point of the floor of a *ward area*, or
 - 6 m from the entrance doorway of any room which may be occupied by a, sleeping, sedated or dependent patient.

SPECIFICATION NE1.11

Occupancies of Excessive Fire Hazard

Contents

1. Scope	20
2. Ordinary Hazard Occupancies	20
3. Extra High Hazard Occupancies	20

1. Scope

This specification contains a graded list of examples of excessive fire hazard. The examples do not cover all possibilities and therefore there could be many other occupancies of excessive fire hazard. The Fire Authority having jurisdiction must be consulted in case of any doubt about occupancies not included in this Annexure.

2. Ordinary Hazard Occupancies

Group III Special

Flash fires are likely to occur in these occupancies. These include the following:

- Chemical works and chemists (manufacturing or analytical) producing or using flammable solids, liquids, dusts and the like
- Copra kilns-
- Cork factories
- Cotton mills (preparatory processes)
- Distilleries (stillhouses)
- Exhibitions
- Fibre glass products manufactures
- Film and television studios
- Flax. and hemp scutch mills
- Flax, jute and hemp mills (preparatory processes)
- Match factories
- Oil mills (crushing and solvent extraction)

3. Extra High Hazard Occupancies

Process risks

Examples of extra high hazard process risks are as follows:

- Aircraft hangars
- Celluloid manufacturers and celluloid goods manufacturers
- Fire lighter manufacturers
- Fireworks manufacturers
- Floor cloth and linoleum manufacturers
- Foam plastics and foam plastics goods manufacturers and warehouses
- Foam rubber and foam rubber goods manufacturers and warehouses
- LPG bulk storage
- Paint, colour and varnish works
- Resin, lamp black and turpentine manufacturers
- Rubber substitute manufacturers
- Tar distillers

SECTION NE – SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- Woodwool manufacturers

High Piled Storage Risks

Extra high hazard high piled storage risks are subdivided into four categories. Fires in materials belonging to categories II, III and IV produce exceptionally intense fires with a high rate of heat release. The four categories are:

a) Category I. Category I comprises ordinary *combustible* materials and *non-combustible* materials in *combustible* wrappings, excluding those items specified under Categories II, III and IV, stored in bulk, in pallets or on racking, to heights exceeding 4 m. Examples of Category I storage are as follows:

- Carpets
- Clothing
- Electrical appliances
- Fibreboard (high-density Hardboard)
- Glassware and crockery (in cartons)
- Groceries (items not packaged)
- Metal goods (in cartons)
- Textiles
- All forms of paper storage other than those specified under Categories II and III

b) Category II - Examples of Category II storage are as follows:

- Aerosol packs with flammable contents
- Baled cork
- Baled waste paper
- Cartons and carton flats
- Cartons containing alcohols in cans or bottles
- Cartons of canned lacquers which dry by solvent evaporation
- Chipboard
- Fibreboard (low density soft board)
- Linoleum products.
- Palletised whisky stocks
- Plastics (non-foamed) other than celluloid (horizontal storage) Rolled pulp and paper (horizontal storage)
- Rolled asphalt paper (horizontal storage)
- Veneer sheets
- Wood patterns
- Wooden furniture

c) Category III - Examples of Category III storage are as follows:

- Bitumen coated or wax coated paper
- Celluloid
- Esparto (loose)
- Flammable liquids in *combustible* containers
- Foamed plastics and foamed rubber products (with or without cartons) other than those specified in Category IV
- Rolled pulp and paper (vertical storage)
- Rolled asphalt paper (vertical storage)
- Rubber goods
- Ventilated wood *stacks*
- Waxed or asphalt-coated paper and containers in cartons
- Woodwool
- Wooden pallets and wooden flats (idle)
- All materials having wrappings or preformed containers of foamed plastics

d) Category IV – Examples of Category IV storage are as follows:

- Rolls of sheet foamed plastics or foamed rubber
- Off-cuts and random pieces of foamed plastics or foamed rubber

SPECIFICATION NE2.4

Air Handling Systems in Buildings

Contents

1. Scope	22
2. Commonly used systems	22
3. Action on detection of smoke fire or flame	22
4. Compliance.....	22

1. Scope

This Specification outlines the performance and operation of mechanical ventilation and air conditioning systems as they relate to smoke control in buildings.

2. Commonly used systems

The following commonly used systems may be installed:

- a) small stand-alone or *window* units without ducting;
- b) central chilled water systems with fan coil units located in each *storey* without any ducting;
- c) central chilled water systems with separate air handling plants in each *storey* or *fire compartment* and associated independent ducting for the *storey* or *fire compartment*;
- d) individual packaged plants and associated ducting for each *storey*; or
- e) central plant where all the conditioning is done and with the ducting system connecting several *fire compartments* or *storeys*.

3. Action on detection of smoke fire or flame

In the case of small units the power supply to the units must be switched off manually. With all other systems immediately on activation of any of the detection units:

- a) the total system for the whole building must shut down;
- b) any *required exit* pressurisation system must operate; and
- c) any *required* smoke exhaust system or smoke-and heat vent must operate.

4. Compliance

The action *required* under 3(a), (b) or (c) must be *automatic* and be activated by:

- a) smoke detectors located in each *store/* or *fire compartment* in accordance with Specification NE1.8 and with ducted systems, located just upstream of the supply fan as well as in the main return air duct; or
- b) by any other suitable fire alarm system installed within the building.

SPECIFICATION NE2.6

Smoke Exhaust Systems

Contents

1. Scope	23
2. Fan Capacity	23
3. Compartmentation at Ceiling Level	24
4. Location of Fans and Discharge.....	24
5. Make-up Air	24
6. Operation of Fans	24
7. Protection of Wiring	25
8. Resistance to High Temperatures	25

1. Scope

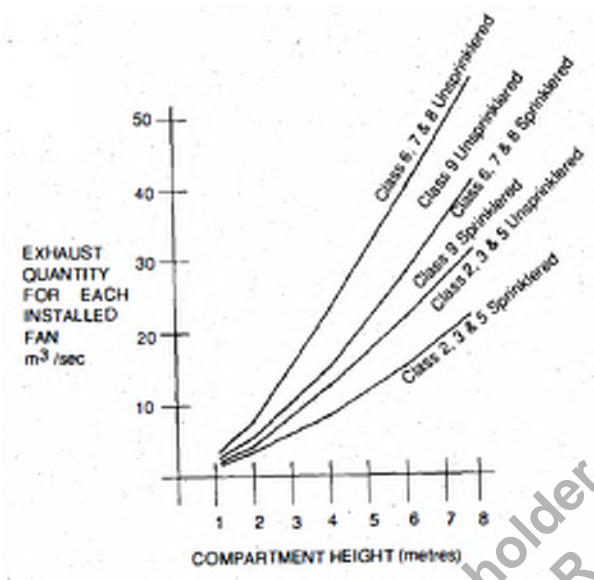
This Specification describes the performance and method of operation of smoke exhaust systems in buildings which are designed to:

- a) remove smoke from within the building using ducted or roof mounted exhaust fans; or
- b) in a shopping centre complex or mall, remove smoke from within pedestrian malls to maintain for as long as possible a tenable escape path for the occupants.

2. Fan Capacity

Fan systems must have an exhaust capacity in accordance with the height of the building as specified in Figure 2.

Figure 3 – Exhaust Capacity of Fans



3. Compartmentation at Ceiling Level

The *storey* or room at ceiling level:

- a) must be divided into compartments not more than 1500 m² in area by smoke curtains in accordance with AS 2665, or
- b) in a shopping centre complex or mall, must have -
 - smoke curtains or, toughened or wired glass or *non-combustible* bulkheads, which extend not less than 1 m beneath an imperforate ceiling, or
 - ceiling coffers not less than 500 mm deep, each containing a smoke exhaust fan,

across the full width of the mall to divide it into lengths of not more than 40 m.

4. Location of Fans and Discharge

Exhaust fans must be located so as not to cause undue turbulence, and:

- a) in a shopping centre complex or mall -
 - be spaced no more than 40 m apart and not more than 20 m from the end of the mall
 - not be at a mall intersection unless there is an open area where the ceiling is raised not less than 2 m above the ceiling in the mall, and
 - be located at natural collection points for the hot smoky gases within each smoke compartment having regard to the ceiling geometry and its effects on the migratory path of the smoke.
- b) in other buildings be located so that each fan must serve not more than one 1500 m² root compartment; and
- c) discharge directly to the outside and in a manner that will not spread fire or smoke to adjacent fire compartments or buildings.

5. Make-up Air

Low-level fresh-air inlet openings or doors must be sized to provide adequate low-velocity fresh air make-up to satisfy the exhaust performance of the installed smoke exhaust fans, care being exercised in the number and location of such openings and their disturbance of the smoke layer due to turbulence created by the incoming air.

6. Operation of Fans

All smoke exhaust fans must start sequentially and be activated by the operation in the area served by the fan of:

- a) a fire detection and alarm system which complies with Specification NE1.7
- b) a detector system comprising -
 - smoke detectors spaced not more than 30 m apart and 15 m from any curtain, bulkhead or wall and with not less than one detector for each 500 m² of *floor area*, or
 - rate-of-rise heat detectors spaced not more than 15m apart and 7.5m from any curtain, bulkhead or wall and with not less than one detector for each 250m² of *floor area*,

and not less than 2 detectors located on opposite sides of each fan inlet, or

- c) in a shopping centre complex or mall -
 - optical smoke detectors in each smoke compartment with at least one detector for each 150m² of *floor area*, arranged in at least 2 groups so that on activation of an alarm group in the respective smoke compartment full exhaust is initiated, and on activation of a second group and following a 30 second check period, an alarm is transmitted to the fire service station, and
 - a manual break-glass alarm at each *exit* from a shop with a *floor area* of more than 1000m² arranged to activate the exhaust system and transmit an alarm to the Fire Brigade.

7. Protection of Wiring

Power supply wiring for roof-mounted exhaust fans must be MIMS (copper) cable or otherwise suitably fire-protected where it passes through other *storeys* and might be affected by fire remote from the floor served by the plant.

8. Resistance to High Temperatures

If not adequately shielded from the airflow:

- a) all parts of exhaust fans and other equipment *required* to operate in a smoke-laden environment; and
- b) parts of the building *required* to be smoke-resisting,

must be capable of withstanding a temperature of 200°C for a period of not less than 1 hour.

Section



HEALTH & AMENITY

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO PUBLIC
BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS
(CLASS 2 to CLASS 9)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES 1	
NFP1 Damp and weatherproofing	1
NFP2 Cooking and sanitary facilities	1
NFP3 Room sizes.....	1
NFP4 Light and ventilation	1
NFP5 Water supply plumbing.....	1
NFP6 Sanitary plumbing	1
NFP7 Roof drainage.....	1
NFP9 Site drainage	1
REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	2
NFP1.1 Damp and weatherproofing.....	2
NFP2.1 Cooking and sanitary facilities	2
NFP3.1 Room sizes.....	2
NFP4.1 Light and ventilation	2
NFP5.1 Water supply plumbing.....	2
NFP6.1 Sanitary plumbing and drainage	2
NFP7.1 Roof drainage	2
NFP8.1 Site drainage	3
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	4
NF1 Damp and Weatherproofing	4
NF 1.1 Floor levels and site drainage	4
NF1 .2 Building on land subject todampness or flooding	4
NF1.4 Weatherproofing of roofs and walls	4
NF1.5 Pliable roof sarking	4
NF1.6 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings	4
NF1.7 Damp-proof courses.....	5
NF1.8 Acceptable damp-proof courses	5
NF1.9 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground	5
NF2 Sanitary and other Facilities	6
NF2.1 Facilities for Residential Buildings Other Than Class 1 and 10	6

SECTION NF – HEALTH AND AMENITY

NF2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and fixtures.....	6
NF2.3 Facilities in class 4 to 9 buildings	7
NF2.4 Facilities for people with disabilities.....	8
NF2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments.....	9
NF2.6 Interpretation: urinals and washbasins.....	9
NF3 Room Sizes	10
NF3.1 Height of rooms.....	10
NF3.2 Reduced height permissible.....	10
NF3.3 Ceiling fans	10
NF 4 Light and Ventilation.....	11
NF4.1 Provision of natural light	11
NF4.2 Methods and Extent of Natural Lighting	11
NF4.3 Natural Light Borrowed from Adjoining Room.....	11
NF4.4 Artificial Lighting.....	11
NF4.5 Ventilation of Rooms	12
NF4.6 Natural Ventilation	12
NF4.7 Ventilation Borrowed from Adjoining Room.....	12
NF4.8 Restriction on Position of WCs and Urinals.....	12
NF4.9 Airlocks.....	13
NF4.10 Sub-floor Ventilation.....	13
NF4.11 Public Carparks	13
NF4.12 Uncovered Space for Class 4 Parts.....	13
NF4.13 Ventilation of Specialised Areas	13
NF4.14 Indoor Air Quality.....	13
NF4.15 Room Temperature.....	14
NF4.16 Ventilation.....	14
NF4.17 Air Conditioning.....	15
NF4.18 Mould Prevention.....	15
NF5 Water Supply Plumbing	16
NF5.1 General Requirements.....	16
NF5.2 Means of compliance.....	16
NF5.3 Pipe which are not easy to access.....	16
NF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters.....	16
NF6 Sanitary Plumbing And Drainage.....	17
NF6.1 General requirements.....	17
NF6.2 Means of compliances.....	17

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

SECTION NF – HEALTH AND AMENITY

NF6.3 Certain floors to be drained	17
NF6.4 Grease trap.....	17
NF7 Sanitary Disposal	18
NF7.1 Specific requirements.....	18
NF7.2 Commercial, Institutional and Large Scale Residential.....	19
NF7.3 Resorts and Hospitals	19
NF7.4 Industrial Sewage and Wastewater Disposal.....	19
NF7.5 Small treatment plants	20
NF8 Roof Drainage.....	21
NF8.1 General Requirements	21
NF8.2 Means of Compliance	21

SPECIFICATIONS

SPECIFICATION NF8.2: Sizing Of Gutters and Downpipes

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES

A building must be designed and constructed to meet the following objectives:

NFP1 Damp and weatherproofing

Suitable damp and weatherproofing must be provided where necessary to prevent:

- a) moisture or damp affecting the stability of the building
- b) the creation of any unhealthy or dangerous condition; or
- c) causing damage to adjoining property.

NFP2 Cooking and sanitary facilities

Adequate toilet and washing facilities must be provided for the occupants of a building, having regard to its use and size. In residential buildings other than those meant for transient occupants suitable facilities must also be available for the preparation and cooking of food, the cleaning of utensils and the laundering of clothes.

NFP3 Room sizes

The *floor area*, plan dimensions and ceiling heights of rooms and other spaces within a building must be adequate for their use or purpose.

NFP4 Light and ventilation

The standard of light and ventilation within a building must be adequate for the occupants, having regard to the use or purpose of the building.

NFP5 Water supply plumbing

An appropriate safe and hygienic system of plumbing for the supply of water for domestic needs must be provided.

NFP6 Sanitary plumbing

An appropriate system of drainage for the hygienic waterborne conveyance of *waste water* must be provided.

NFP7 Roof drainage

Where a roof drainage system is provided, it must give reasonable protection against the overflow of rainwater into the building.

NFP9 Site drainage

Unhealthy ponding of water in the allotment must not be allowed and the erection of the building or any *alteration* to it must not adversely affect the drainage of other allotments or of any public land.

REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

NFP1.1 Damp and weatherproofing

Water and damp conditions must not be allowed to:

- a) affect the stability of buildings
- b) create ill health or discomfort for the occupants
- c) damage or deface buildings as a result of moisture present at the completion of construction; or
- d) cause damage to adjacent property.
- e) pond surface water against buildings or beneath the floor.

NFP2.1 Cooking and sanitary facilities

Any cooking facility provided must not spread smoke which may affect health or create a nuisance to the occupants or neighbours. Washing and clothes laundering facilities provided in residential buildings must be consistent with the size and occupancy of the building. The standard of toilet and washing facilities provided must in any building not create a nuisance or lead to ill health to the occupants or neighbours. These facilities must be located conveniently and the number of units provided must be consistent with the size and class of occupancy. Smoke extraction units from kitchens and other process operations in Class 6, 8 or 9 buildings must ensure that the progressive build-up of soot, grease and the like does not lead to a fire or unhealthy conditions.

NFP3.1 Room sizes

The size and disposition of rooms in a building must be consistent with the requirements of health and hygiene.

NFP4.1 Light and ventilation

Lighting via artificial or natural means shall be adequate for occupants at day or night. Where no mechanical ventilation is provided natural ventilation openings shall be adequate for the intended occupancy of the building.

Where air-handling systems are provided in a building there must be adequate provision for natural ventilation to cater for any prolonged failure of the system.

NFP5.1 Water supply plumbing

Plumbing for potable water supply must use materials which do not react with the water and thereby make it unsuitable. Suitable precautions must be taken to ensure that unsafe or unhygienic materials have no chance of entering the supply system. The installation of hot water systems must not impair the safety of the users. All concealed and difficult-to-access plumbing work must be suitably protected so that there is no likelihood of damage and leakage. The plumbing must take into account the current and anticipated needs of the user and allow for the simultaneous use of the connected system by others.

NFP6.1 Sanitary plumbing and drainage

Sanitary plumbing must be laid to self-cleansing grades consistent with their discharge loading, unless other suitable arrangements are made to ensure that the system is kept free of the accretion of sewage and other waste matter. The size of *drains* and the layout of their connections must reasonably ensure the current and anticipated needs of the users. The connections to sanitary installations must ensure that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions nor create any nuisance to anyone and are suitably vented.

NFP7.1 Roof drainage

The roof drainage system must be capable of handling peak intensities of rainfall as follows:

- a) Eaves gutters and downpipes - a 20-year return intensity.
- b) Internal box gutters, valley gutters and downpipes - a 100-year return intensity.

Any known local variation in rainfall intensity must be taken into account. Sufficient allowance must be made for the possibility of overflow into the building due to ripples and turbulence in the flowing water during cyclonic winds.

NFP8.1 Site drainage

The immediate *site* around the building must have suitable drainage so that no ponding results. Visible water must not be allowed to remain under or around for more than 1 hour after 10 minutes of maximum rainfall resulting from a storm with a return period of 5 years. Flood waters or waves resulting from a storm or cyclone with a return period of 30 years must not be allowed to enter a building.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NF1 Damp and Weatherproofing

NF1.1 Floor levels and site drainage

Floor levels of all new buildings must be a minimum of 500mm above the natural ground level and, where possible, the ground around the building must slope away from the building at a minimum fall of 1 in 100 for two metres.

The construction of the site drainage system and the position and manner of discharge of stormwater drain must not-

- a) result in the entry of water into any building or other allotments;
- b) affect the stability of any building; or
- c) create any unhealthy or dangerous condition within or around any building.

NF1.2 Building on land subject to dampness or flooding

One or all of the following measures must be carried out if it is warranted by the dampness of the building site or proneness to flooding:

- a) The subsoil must be adequately drained.
- b) The ground under the building must be regraded or filled and provided with outlets to prevent accumulation of water.
- c) The surface of the ground under the building must be covered with a suitable damp-resisting material.

The building or structure floor level shall not be less than 500mm above the known flood level at the site plus sea level rise for a median high emissions (SSP3-7.0) projection to the design working life or the flood hazard level as per B1.6.NF1.3 Drainage of land external to building.

A suitable system of drainage must be provided if paving, excavation or any other work on an allotment will cause undue interference with the existing drainage of rainwater falling on the allotment whether the existing drainage is natural or otherwise.

NF1.4 Weatherproofing of roofs and walls

Roofs and *external walls* (including openings for *windows* doors and the like) must be constructed to prevent rain or dampness penetrating to the inner parts of a building, unless it is:

- a) a Class 7, 8 or 10 building and in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance
- b) a garage, tool shed, *sanitary compartment*, or the like, forming part of a building used for other purposes; or
- c) an *open spectator stand* or open deck carpark.

NF1.5 Pliable roof sarking

Pliable roof *sarking-type material* used under roof or wall coverings must comply with AS/NZS 4200.1.

NF1.6 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings

The following parts of a building must be impervious to water:

- a) In any building - the floor surface or substrate in a shower enclosure, or within 1.5 m measured horizontally from a point vertically below the shower fitting if there is no enclosure.
- b) In a Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building the floor surface or substrate in a bathroom or shower room, slop sink compartment, laundry or *sanitary compartment* which is used in common by the occupants.

- c) The wall surface or substrate -
 - of a shower enclosure, or if the shower is not enclosed, within 1.5 m and exposed to a shower fitting, to a height of 1.8 m above the floor
 - immediately adjacent or behind a bath, trough, basin, sink, or similar fixture, to a height of 300 mm above the fixture if it is within 75 mm of the wall.
- d) The junction between the floor and wall if the wall and floor are *required* to be impervious to water.
- e) The junction between the wall and fixture if the wall is *required* to be impervious to water.

NF1.7 Damp-proof courses

Except in a building that is exempt from weatherproofing under NF1.4, moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching:

- a) the lowest floor timbers and the walls above the lowest floor joists
- b) the walls above the damp-proof course; and
- c) the underside of a suspended floor constructed of a material other than timber, and the supporting beams or girders.

NF1.8 Acceptable damp-proof courses

A damp-proof course must consist of:

- a) a material that complies with AS/NZS 2904
- b) suitable termite shields placed on piers; or
- c) other suitable material.

NF1.9 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground

If a floor of a room is laid on the ground or on filling:

- a) moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching the upper surface of the floor and adjacent walls by -
 - the insertion of a vapour barrier in accordance with AS 2870; or
 - other suitable means; and
- b) damp-proofing need not be provided if the building is exempt from weatherproofing under NF1.4.

NF2 Sanitary and other Facilities

NF2.1 Facilities for Residential Buildings Other Than Class 1 and 10

Sanitary and other facilities for Class 2 and 3 buildings, and Class 4 parts of buildings, must be provided in accordance with Table NF2.1.

Table NF2.1 Provision of Sanitary and Other Facilities

CLASS OF BUILDING AND MINIMUM FACILITIES REQUIRED
<p>Class 2 Within each sole-occupancy unit</p> <p>a) A kitchen sink and facilities for the preparation and cooking of food</p> <p>b) A shower; and</p> <p>c) A closet pan and facilities for washing hands.</p> <p>Class 2 For each building</p> <p>a) A separate laundry for each 4 <i>sole-occupancy units</i>, or part without its own clothes washing facilities, comprising at least one washtub and space for a washing machine</p> <p>b) Clothes drying facilities comprising -</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lines or clothes hoists with not less than 7.5 m of line per <i>sole-occupancy unit</i>; or • One heat-operated drying cabinet or appliance for each 4 <i>sole-occupancy units</i>, or part, without its own drying facilities. <p>Class 2 Facilities for employees</p> <p>If the building contains more than 32 <i>sole-occupancy units</i>, or if a group of Class 2 buildings on the one allotment contains in total, more than 32 <i>sole-occupancy units</i>, then provide:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A closet pan and washbasin in a compartment or room at or near ground level and accessible to employees without having to entering a <i>sole-occupancy unit</i>.
<p>Class 3 Facilities for residents</p> <p>For each 10 residents (male and/or female) for whom private facilities are not provided:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A shower; and • A closet pan and washbasin, except that if one urinal is provided for each 25 males up to 50 and one additional urinal for each additional 50 males or part thereof, then one closet pan for each 12 males may be provided. <p>If these facilities are situated outside the building, they should be conveniently accessible.</p>
<p>Class 4 For each sole-occupancy unit</p> <p>a) A kitchen sink and facilities for the preparation and cooking of food</p> <p>b) A shower</p> <p>c) A closet pan and washbasin</p> <p>d) Clothes washing facilities, comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and</p> <p>e) A clothes line or hoist, or space for a heat-operated drying cabinet or similar appliance for the exclusive use of the occupants.</p>

NF2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and fixtures

a) The number of persons accommodated must be calculated according to Table ND1.13 if it cannot be more accurately determined by other means.

b) Unless the premises are predominantly used by one sex or numbers of male and female users are known, sanitary facilities must be provided equally for both sexes.

In addition where the nature of employment of an employee is such that a shower is highly desirable at the end of the work (e.g. cooks and kitchen hands), showers must be provided for each 10 such male or female employee in any one shift.

NF2.3 Facilities in class 4 to 9 buildings

Sanitary facilities must be provided in Class 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings in accordance with Table NF2.3

Table NF2.3 - Sanitary and Other Facilities

Class of building	User	Max number served by:								
		Closet fixture(s)			Urinal(s)			Washbasin(s)		
		1 Up to	2 Up to	Each extra	1 Up to	2 Up to	Each extra	1 Up to	2 Up to	Each extra
5, 6 and 9 other than schools	Employees									
	Males	20	40	20	25	50	50	60	120	60
	Females	15	30	15	-	-	-	60	120	60
7 and 8	Employees									
	Males	20	40	20	25	50	50	30	60	30
	Females	15	30	15	-	-	-	30	60	30
6. Department stores, shopping centres and, individual shops in excess of 900 m ² total floor area	Patrons									
	Males	500	2400	1200	600	1200	1200	1000	4000	2000
	Females	300	600	1200	-	-	-	1000	4000	2000
6. Restaurants, cafes, bars, public halls, function rooms and 9a. Out patients	Patrons									
	Males	50	200	250	50	200	100	50	200	250
	Females	30	70	80	-	-	-	50	200	250
9a. Health-care buildings (Other than for out-patients)	Resident patients									
	Males	-	20	10	-	-	-	16	32	16
	Females	-	20	10	-	-	-	16	32	16
9b. Schools not being early child-hood centres	Staff and employees									
	Males	20	40	20	25	50	50	30	60	30
	Females	20	40	20	-	-	-	30	60	30
	Students at day schools									
	Males	40	80	40	30	70	40	100	200	100
	Females	30	60	30	-	-	-	100	200	100
	Other facilities – Provide 1 tap stand for drinking water for every 50 students.									
	Students at boarding schools									

SECTION NF – HEALTH AND AMENITY

Class of building	User	Max number served by:								
		Closet fixture(s)			Urinal(s)			Washbasin(s)		
		1 Up to	2 Up to	Each extra	1 Up to	2 Up to	Each extra	1 Up to	2 Up to	Each extra
	Males	35	70	35				100	200	100
	Females	25	50	25				100	200	100
	Other facilities – Provide 1 tap stand for drinking water for every 50 students, 1 shower for up to 40 students (separated by gender) and 1 laundry facility for every 50 students. For urban boarding schools allow 1 urinal for every 50 male students.									
9b. Early childhood centres	Children	-	30	15	-	-	-	-	30	15
	Other facilities – One shower must be provided.									
9b. Sporting venues, theatres, cinemas, art galleries or the like and churches, chapels or the like	Participants at sporting venues, theatres or the like									
	Males	20	40	20	10	20	10	20	40	20
	Females	15	30	15	-	-	-	20	40	20
	Other facilities: One shower for each 10 or part, participants.									
	Spectators or patrons									
	Males	250	500	500	100	200	100	250	500	500
	Females	75	250	250	-	-	-	250	500	500

NF2.4 Facilities for people with disabilities

Sanitary facilities must be provided in accordance with Table NF2.4 in every Class 3, 5, 6, 7 and 9 building that is *required* by Part ND3 to be accessible to people with disabilities.

Table NF2.4 - Sanitary Facilities for People with Disabilities

Class of building and minimum facility for use by people with disabilities	
Class 3 – In every <i>sole-occupancy unit</i> to which access for people with disabilities is <i>required</i> : a) One closet pan and washbasin; and b) One shower.	
Class 5, 6, 7 and 9 buildings with <i>floor area</i> more than 1000 m ² and Class 3 if accommodation is other than in <i>sole-occupancy units</i> , or other parts of the building are <i>required</i> to be accessible.	
Number of persons for whom total facilities normally required	Minimum number for use by people with disabilities
Closet pans plus urinals	
1-100	One unisex facility; or One closet pan and washbasin for each sex
101-200	Two unisex facilities; or One closet pan and washbasin for each sex and one unisex facility
More than 200	Two unisex facilities or one closet pan and washbasin for each sex and one unisex facility; and

Class of building and minimum facility for use by people with disabilities	
	One additional unisex facility or one closet pan and washbasin for each sex for each additional 100 person.
In all cases, facilities for females must include adequate means for the disposal of sanitary towels	
Bath or shower	One shower or shower-bath for each 10 or part thereof normally <i>required</i> , but not less than one for use by both sexes.

NF2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments

a) Partitions - Other than in any *early childhood centre*, *sanitary compartments* must have doors and partitions must separate adjacent compartments and extend -

- from floor level to the ceiling in the case of a unisex facility; or
- to a height of not less than 1500 mm above the floor if primary *school* children are the principal users, or 1800 mm above the floor in all other cases.

b) Facilities for people with disabilities - The construction and layout of *sanitary compartments* for use by people with disabilities must comply with the guidelines set out in the Australian Department of Foreign Affairs (DFAT): Accessibility Design Guide: Universal Design principles for Australia's Aid Program - Annex A – Built Environment - (Available free of charge DFAT website).

NF2.6 Interpretation: urinals and washbasins

a) Urinals shall be designed to minimise the exposure of concrete to urine either through the sealing of the concrete and/or through the use of stainless steel, fibreglass and plastic materials. A urinal may be either -

- an individual stall or wall hung urinal
- each 600 mm length of a continuous urinal trough; or
- a closet pan used in place of a urinal.

b) A washbasin may be either -

- an individual basin; or
- a part of a hand wash trough served by a single water tap.

NF3 Room Sizes

NF3.1 Height of rooms

Minimum heights below the ceiling and any framing excluding minor projections such as cornices, are:

- a) Class 2, or 3 buildings, or Class 4 parts -
 - habitable room - 2.4 m
 - laundry or the like - 2.1 m; and
 - corridor or passageway - 2.1 m.
- b) Class 5, 6, 7 and 8 buildings -
 - areas other than in (ii) - 2.4 m; and
 - corridor, passageway, or the like - 2.1 m.
- c) Class 9a building -
 - ward area - 2.4 m
 - operating theatre or delivery room - 3.0 m; and
 - treatment room, clinic, waiting room, passageway, corridor, or the like - 2.4 m.
- d) Class 9b buildings -
 - *school* classroom or other *assembly building* or part that accommodates not more than 100 persons - 2.4 m; and
 - theatre, public hall or other *assembly building* or part that accommodates more than 100 persons - 3.0 m.
- e) Ancillary and other spaces -
 - bathroom, shower room, water closet, toilet room, airlock, tea preparation room, pantry, store room, garage, carparking area, or the like, in any class of building - 2.1 m.

NF3.2 Reduced height permissible

These heights may be reduced if the reduction does not unduly interfere with the proper functioning of the room in:

- attic rooms
- rooms with a sloping ceiling or projection below ceiling line; or
- other rooms or spaces.

NF3.3 Ceiling fans

Ceiling fans and other such appliances must be at a minimum vertical clearance of 2.1 m.

NF 4 Light and Ventilation

NF4.1 Provision of natural light

Natural lighting must be provided in:

- a) Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts - to all *habitable rooms*
- b) Class 3 buildings to all bedrooms and dormitories.
- c) Class 9a buildings - to all rooms used for sleeping purposes.
- d) Class 9b buildings - to all general purpose classrooms in primary or secondary *schools* and all playrooms or the like for the use of children in an *early childhood centre*.

NF4.2 Methods and Extent of Natural Lighting

Direct natural lighting must be provided by *windows* that:

- a) have an aggregate light transmitting area measured excluding framing members, glazing bars or other obstructions of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room
- b) face -
 - a court or other space open to the sky; or
 - an open verandah, open carport, or the like
- c) are not less than a horizontal distance from any adjoining allotment, or a wall of the same building or another building on the allotment that they face, that is the greater of -
 - in a Class 2, 3 or 9 building or a Class 4 part - 1 m
 - in a *ward area* or other room used for sleeping purposes in a Class 9a building - 3 m; and
 - 50% of the square root of the height of the wall in which the *window* is located, measured in metres from its sill.

NF4.3 Natural Light Borrowed from Adjoining Room

Natural lighting to a room in a Class 2 or 4 building, or in a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 3 building may come through a glazed panel or opening from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if:

- a) in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part, both rooms are within the same *sole-occupancy unit* or the enclosed verandah is on common property
- b) the glazed panel or opening has an area of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room to which it provides light; and
- c) the adjoining room has *windows* with an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 10% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms.

The areas specified in (b) and (c) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural light is provided from another source.

NF4.4 Artificial Lighting

Artificial lighting must be provided:

- a) in *required* stairways and ramps by means of separate electrical wiring circuits from the main switchboard for the exclusive use of the stairway or ramp; and
- b) if natural lighting of a standard equivalent to that *required* by NF4.2 is not available and the periods of occupation, or use of the room or space will create undue hazard to occupants seeking egress in an emergency, in -
 - Class 4 parts - to *sanitary compartments*, bathrooms, shower rooms, airlocks and laundries
 - Class 2 buildings - to *sanitary compartments*, bathrooms, shower rooms, airlocks, laundries, common stairways and other spaces used in common by the occupants of the building; and
 - Class 3, 5, 6 7 8 and 9 buildings to all rooms that are frequently occupied and all corridors,

lobbies, internal stairways, other circulation spaces and paths of egress.
Including to and at external sanitation facilities.

NF4.5 Ventilation of Rooms

a) A *habitable room*, office, shop, factory, workroom, *sanitary compartment* bathroom, shower room, laundry and any other room occupied by a person for any purpose must have adequate flow-through or cross-ventilation and air quality, including sufficient air-changes and fresh air quantities.

b) Provision of either -

- natural ventilation complying with NF4.6; or
- a mechanical ventilation or air conditioning system complying with AS 1668.2, with provision for natural ventilation to NF4.6 for use in case of a lengthy failure of the mechanical system, satisfies (a).

Where the *required* ventilation relies on mechanical or air-conditioning systems, *habitable rooms*, offices, shops, factories, workrooms or commercial laundries must have alternate natural ventilation for use in case of a lengthy failure of the mechanical system. The extent of natural ventilation available must be not less than 25% of that *required* under NF4.6. Otherwise, the mechanical system must have a complete stand-by system including for power generation.

NF4.6 Natural Ventilation

Required natural ventilation must be provided by permanent *windows*, openings, doors or other devices:

a) with an aggregate opening or openable size not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room *required* to be ventilated; and

b) which open to -

- a court, or space open to the sky; or
- an open verandah, open carport, or the like.

NF4.7 Ventilation Borrowed from Adjoining Room

Natural ventilation to a room may come through a *window*, opening, ventilating door or other device from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if both rooms are within the same *sole-occupancy unit* or the enclosed verandah is common property, and:

a) in a Class 2 building, a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 3 building or a Class 4 part of a building -

- the room to be ventilated is not a *sanitary compartment*
- ventilation is not borrowed from one bedroom to another or between a bedroom and the kitchen
- the *window*, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room to be ventilated; and
- the adjoining room has a *window*, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms

b) in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building -

- the *window*, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the *floor area* of the room to be ventilated, measured not more than 3.6 m above the floor; and
- the adjoining room has a *window*, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the combined *floor areas* of both rooms; and

c) the ventilating areas specified in (a) and (b) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural ventilation is provided from another source.

NF4.8 Restriction on Position of WCs and Urinals

A room containing a closet pan or urinal must not open directly into:

- a) a kitchen or pantry
- b) a public dining room or restaurant
- c) a dormitory in a Class 3 building

- d) a room used for public assembly; or
- e) a workplace normally occupied by more than one person.

NF4.9 Airlocks

If a room containing a closet pan or urinal is prohibited under NF4.8 from opening directly to another room:

- a) in a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or in a Class 4 part -
 - access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room; or
 - the room containing the closet pan or urinal must be provided with an exhaust fan; and
- b) in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building (which is not an *early childhood centre*, *primary school* or *open spectator stand*) -
 - access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room with a *floor area* of not less than 1.1 m² and fitted with *self-closing* doors at all access doorways; or
 - the room containing the closet pan or urinal must be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation and the doorway to the room adequately screened from view.

NF4.10 Sub-floor Ventilation

- a) Suitable provision must be made to prevent undue deterioration of the lowest floor of a building because of dampness, other conditions on the allotment or the design of the building.
- b) The following would satisfy the requirements of (a):
 - where timber is used, the floor framing must be suspended with an absolute minimum of 250 mm and an average minimum of 400 mm clearance from the ground underneath to the floor and the immediate surrounds of the building. The average clearance must be determined as the average of the clearances at the corners of a 3 m square grid covering the building. Subfloor ventilation must be provided with ventilation openings totalling not less than 3% of the peripheral vertical area between the ground and the boundary of the floor. These openings are to be spaced uniformly and at not more than 1.8 m apart.
 - where other than timber is used:
 - subfloor ventilation must be provided if the floor is suspended
 - an impervious cover provided over the ground surface beneath the building; or the floor members suitably treated.

NF4.11 Public Carparks

Every *storey* of a *public carpark* must have:

- a) a mechanical ventilation system complying with AS 1668.2; or
- b) a suitable system of permanent natural ventilation in accordance with NF4.6

NF4.12 Uncovered Space for Class 4 Parts

Class 4 parts of buildings must have sole access to a space open to the sky of 20 m² minimum area. Of this at least 5 m² must be at the same level as the Class 4 part and the rest may be at either 3 m above or 3 m below.

NF4.13 Ventilation of Specialised Areas

Where the building contains areas or rooms that are not covered elsewhere in this section, systems shall be provided in compliance with AS 1668.2. This includes (but is not limited to) areas such as commercial kitchens, rubbish rooms, cleaners, cupboards, and healthcare rooms.

NF4.14 Indoor Air Quality

Buildings must have a means of collecting and/or removing the following from the rooms in which they are generated:

- a) cooking fumes and odours

- b) excessive water vapor from laundering, utensil washing, bathing and showering
- c) odours from sanitary and waste storage spaces
- d) gaseous by-products and excessive moisture from Commercial or Industrial processes
- e) poisonous fumes and gases
- f) air-borne particles
- g) products of combustion

Contaminated air must be disposed of in a way that avoids creating a nuisance or hazard to people and other property.

NF4.15 Room Temperature

Achieving a comfortable indoor temperature may be achieved through any, some, or all of the following:

- a) insulation in walls, ceilings, floors, attic spaces to prevent heat, electricity, or sound from passing into or out of a room or structure.
- b) high performance window glazing
- c) natural ventilation
- d) external shading of windows and proper window coverings
- e) high-efficiency fans in living and attic spaces
- f) energy efficient mechanical air conditioning system

Release of heated air to the outside must be provided by the use of any, some or all of the following natural ventilation techniques, unless the building is fully air-conditioned by a mechanical system:

- a) high ceilings (greater than 2.2 m)
- b) windows/vents within 250 mm of the ceiling.

NF4.16 Ventilation

Ventilation systems in non-residential buildings must be equipped with:

- a) exhaust outlets and plumbing vents a minimum of 6.0 m away from outdoor air intakes
- b) outdoor air intakes located at least 9.0 m away from sources of pollution including dumpsters, parking areas, driveways, loading docks, natural gas lines, wet cooling towers and garage doors / exhaust outlets
- c) outdoor air intakes must be protected with suitable mesh screens and filters
- d) roof drainage that slopes away from outdoor air intakes

and must:

- (e) account for the demands of any fixed combustion appliances
- (f) be sized and configured to accommodate future expansion of the building

Natural ventilation must consist of permanent openings, windows, doors or other devices which can be opened and are of sufficient size and appropriately placed to provide effective air circulation.

Openings must be placed on all façades, where appropriate to the function and use of the rooms, building, and must be screened to prevent entry of birds, rodents, leaves, and other similar objects.

Larger openings must be placed on the downwind, or leeward, facade, and smaller openings on the breeze, or windward, facade to promote air circulation within the building.

Non-air-conditioned buildings must have the majority of windows consist of louvred panels or other openable panels to promote air flow, as appropriate to occupancy and use.

Enclosed attic spaces and cathedral ceilings must have adequate ventilation that:

- a) provides adequate cross-ventilation of enclosed attic spaces and enclosed cathedral ceilings
- b) provides exhaust fans where needed

NF4.17 Air Conditioning

A mechanical air-handling system installed in a building must control:

- a) the circulation of objectionable odours
- b) the accumulation of harmful contamination by micro-organisms and pathogens
- c) be in accordance with AS 1668.2 and AS/NZS 3666.1

Air conditioning units must have an appropriate energy-savings certificate from a recognised agency, such as Energy Star and must have suitable corrosion protection for the environment it is located in.

Ducts must be appropriately sized for room-to-room cooling requirements and to maximise efficiency, with the layout designed to reduce duct length as much as possible.

Ducts must be properly sealed with low volatile organic compound (VOC) mastic so that ductwork is airtight, duct tape is not permitted.

Rooms must have adequately sized return ducts or doors that are undercut sufficiently to allow air flow to avoid any situation of negative pressure.

Effective delivery of clean supply air must be sufficiently provided to reduce the impact of pollutants generated in the interior spaces.

Mechanical air conditioning systems must have any or all of the following energy-saving equipment to control the volume of cooled air produced daily and promote energy efficiency:

- a) variable speed controls
- b) timer-switches for rooms to control air temperature according to time of day and use of the building
- c) demand-controlled ventilation that adjusts outdoor air intake to maintain optimal indoor air quality
- d) isolate fan motors from supply air streams

Mechanical air handling equipment must have:

- a) air filtration suitable for the application required

All air conditioning systems are to undergo a commissioning process to ensure the functional and environmental performance.

NF4.18 Mould Prevention

Cross-ventilation through the building interior must be provided through appropriate layout of rooms, and placement and size of doors, windows and vents.

Buildings with air conditioning must have positive air pressure to promote proper air circulation.

Methods for prevention of water accumulation listed in NF1 above must be followed.

Stand-alone sanitary compartments not connected to a bathroom, laundry or other sanitary room must provide ventilation through either:

- a) a window
- b) mechanical ventilation (see Section NF4.5).

NF5 Water Supply Plumbing

NF5.1 General Requirements

The plumbing work for water supply must ensure-

- a) the appropriateness of the materials and products used;
- b) the correct sizing of water services for the intended use;
- c) the control of cross-connections and prevention of backflow;
- d) adequate care in the installation of the services;
- e) suitable provision of main and subsidiary storage as required;
- f) adequate connections to sanitary services without endangering health and hygiene; and
- g) the installation of hot water system to provide safe and adequate service.

NF5.2 Means of compliance

The requirements of NF5.1 are satisfied if all plumbing for water supply is carried out to the relevant provision of-

- a) AS 3500 – Part 1 for cold water service; and
- b) AS 3500 – Part 4 for hot water service.
- c) AS/NZS 2845.1 Water Supply Backflow Prevention Devices – Part 1: Materials, Design and Performance Requirements and its amendments.

NF5.3 Pipe which are not easy to access

Particular attention is drawn to the provisions in AS 3500 – Parts 1 and 4 which prohibit the installation of pipes and fittings of certain materials in locations which are concealed or difficult to access. These include pipe made of ABS, galvanised steel, polybutylene and UPVC. Pipes and fittings made of copper, copper alloy, stainless steel, ductile iron, cast iron and polyethylene when used in concealed or difficult to access locations must follow the special precautions specified in AS 3500 – Parts 1 and 4.

NF5.4 Access to domestic-type water heaters.

- a) A household water heater which is installed in a building must-
 - be supported on construction sufficient to carry its full capacity weight and any possible wind or earthquake loads;
 - be positioned to enable adequate access for operation, maintenance and removal; and
 - provide suitably for any overflow, especially if installed in a concealed location.
- b) AS 3500 – Part 4 is the relevant standard for the installation of a household water heater.

NF6 Sanitary Plumbing and Drainage

NF6.1 General requirements

Sanitary plumbing and drainage must ensure-

- a) the appropriateness of the products and materials used;
- b) the correct sizing of drainage services for the intended use;
- c) adequate care in the installation of the services including the provision of appropriate grades;
- d) that foul gases are not allowed to produce unhygienic conditions or any nuisance to anyone ; and
- e) adequate maintenance and sludge removal contracts for commercial, institutional, large developments, resorts and hospital and industrial systems

NF6.2 Means of compliances

The requirements of NF6.1 are satisfied if all sanitary plumbing and drainage works are carried out to the relevant provisions of AS 3500 – Part 2 – Sanitary plumbing and sanitary drainage.

NF6.3 Certain floors to be drained

In a Class 2, 3 or 4 Part building the floor of each bathroom and laundry in a *sole-occupancy unit* which is located at other than the lowest level must be graded to permit drainage to a floor waste gully.

NF6.4 Grease trap

Where the nature of the occupancy is such that the wastewater contains grease, fats or oils to levels unacceptable to the Authority having jurisdiction, a suitable grease trap must be installed. The accumulated grease and oils must be removed at intervals sufficient to prevent their escape into the disposal system. After removal the grease and oils must be suitably disposed off.

NF7 Sanitary Disposal

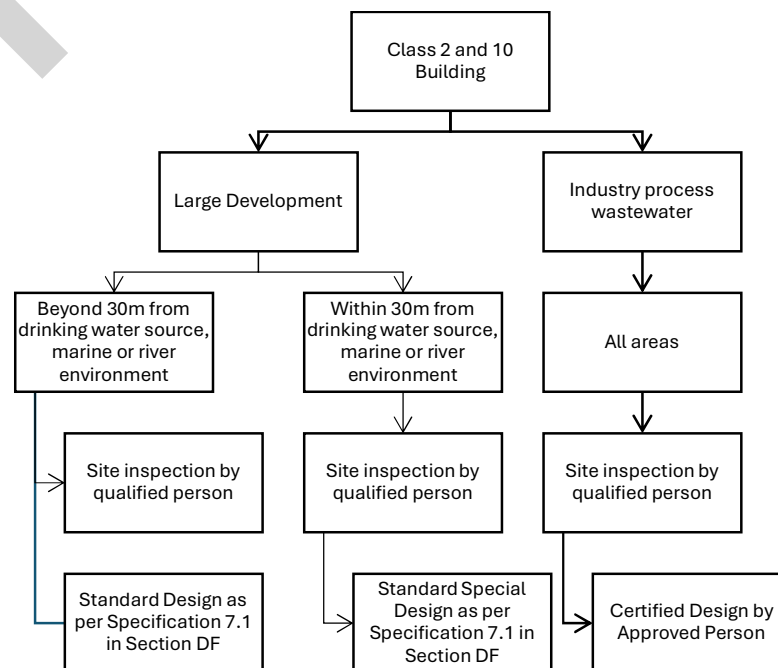
NF7.1 Specific requirements

Sanitation facilities must ensure-

- no discharge of wastewater of any kind to surface water;
- no discharge to a soil surface that is :
 - less than 1.5 metres above maximum groundwater level; or
 - less than 30 metres from a drinking groundwater source.
- Site inspection by a qualified person and standard special designs are required for Class 2 and 10 Buildings, as per Figure NF7.1 below.
- the maximum design loading to a soil surface shall not exceed:
 - 50mm per day for septic tank effluent.
 - 70mm per day for secondary or better treated effluent.
- the effluent distribution system shall achieve a uniform application at or less than the maximum design loading rate.
- system chosen is in accordance with Specifications NF7.1 in this section

percolation tests are mandatory for Institutional Buildings, Resorts and Hospitals and Industrial systems to determine a safe infiltration area

Figure NF 7.1 Decision Matrix



g) For slopes greater than 6° (1:10 vertical to horizontal) that display evidence of any undulations, hummocks, tension cracks, scarps, terraces, soil creep, land slippage, surface erosion, subsurface erosion ("under-runners") or any other form of land movement, land deformation, settlement, subsidence or erosion, a site-specific geotechnical investigation of the SITE proposed for an ON-SITE WASTEWATER MANAGEMENT system must demonstrate that the SITE proposed for the septic tank is unlikely to be subject to slope instability or that the tank will not induce slope instability. Such an assessment must be carried out by a suitably qualified *approved engineer* acceptable to the Government of Vanuatu.

h) Where a sewage treatment plant is designed, a maintenance and sludge removal contract is required.

i) There should be a contract for sludge removal from septic tanks for Commercial and large development, as well as resorts and hospitals.

NF7.2 Commercial, Institutional and Large Scale Residential

The method, design and construction of the treatment plants and disposal facilities for Commercial Institutional and large-scale residential developments shall be certified by an *approved person* and shall include disposal of effluent by means of irrigation onto land where sufficient land is available. NF7.5 provides further information where land is not sufficient.

Considerations to combine urinal wastewater with grey wastewater for public buildings are encouraged in the designs for public buildings.

NF7.2.1 Performance Standards

Effluent from sewage treatment plants referred to NF7.2 shall conform with the following performance standards:

- Five Day Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD₅) shall not exceed 100mg/l (one monthly measurement annual means not to exceed).
- Suspended Solids (SS) shall not exceed 100Mg/l (one monthly measurement annual means not to exceed)
- Faecal Coliforms (FC) shall be less than 10,000 MPN/100ml for 95% of the time. (Based on monthly measurements taken over an annual period).

NF7.2.2 Prohibitions

The following practices shall be prohibited:

- Direct discharge of treated effluent to marine waters.
- Treated effluent shall not be discharged into open pits or trenches.
- Sewage from septic tanks shall not be disposed off to unlined landfill to protect the ground water.

NF7.3 Resorts and Hospitals

The method, design and construction of the treatment plants and disposal facilities for Resort developments and hospitals shall be certified by an *approved engineer* and shall include disposal of effluent by means of irrigation onto land where sufficient land is available. NF7.5 provides further information where land is not sufficient.

Considerations to combine urinal wastewater with grey wastewater for public buildings are encouraged in the designs for public buildings.

NF7.3.1 Performance Standards

Effluent from sewage treatment plants referred to NF7.3 shall conform with the following performance standards:

- Five Day Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD₅) shall not exceed 100mg/l (one monthly measurement annual means not to exceed).
- Suspended Solids (SS) shall not exceed 30Mg/l (one monthly measurement annual means not to exceed)
- Faecal Coliforms (FC) shall be less than 5,000 MPN/100ml for 95% of the time. (Based on monthly measurements taken over an annual period).

NF7.3.2 Prohibitions

The following practices shall be prohibited:

- Direct discharge of treated effluent to marine waters.
- Treated effluent shall not be discharged into open pits or trenches.
- Sewage from septic tanks shall not be disposed off to unlined landfill to protect the ground water.

NF7.4 Industrial Sewage and Wastewater Disposal

All developments shall comply as a minimum with the Approved Treatment and Disposal methods.

Performance Criteria and Prohibitions as specified for Commercial, Institutional and Large-Scale Residential Buildings in Clause NF7.2.

SECTION NF – HEALTH AND AMENITY

In addition to these criteria the following is required:

- the industrial site shall be inspected by a *qualified person*;
- a certified design for the disposal of industrial waste shall be prepared by an approved person;
- there shall be no discharge of industrial wastewater effluent, treated or untreated direct to ground if any adverse environmental effect may occur from such a discharge or if there is uncertainty whether such an adverse environmental effect may or may not occur;
- performance standards for sewage effluent from resorts and hospitals shall be met;
- implementation of the certified design shall be inspected and approved in writing by a *qualified person* during and on completion of construction.

NF7.5 Small treatment plants

The details given in **Specification DF7.1B** may be used for the preliminary design of the main elements of a septic tank system with enhanced effluent soakage / filtering systems, if such a system is considered.

Where a septic tank system does not suit, a qualified person should be engaged to design appropriate treatment system, including:

- Packaged treatment plants such as Innovative / Alternative Onsite Wastewater Treatment System or
- Any other suitable method.

NF8 Roof Drainage

NF8.1 General Requirements

Gutters and downpipes where provided must have sufficient capacity to reasonably prevent the overflow of rain water into the building. The peak intensities of rainfall that the gutters and associated downpipes must be able to handle are as follows;

- a) Eaves gutters – the 20 year return intensity
- b) Box and valley gutters- the 100 year return intensity
- c) Gutters and downpipes for temporary building – the 5 year return intensity of rainfall.

Eaves gutters other than for temporary buildings must have a designed free-board of 25 mm and box gutters, 35 mm.

NF8.2 Means of Compliance

The requirements of NF7.1 are satisfied if the requirements of AS/NZS 2179 - Metal rainwater goods - Specification and AS/NZS 3500 Parts 2 and 3 – Plumbing and Drainage: Stormwater Drainage, are met. **Specification NF8.2** covers some of these requirements.

SPECIFICATION NF8.2

Sizing Of Gutters and Downpipes

Contents

1. Design Criteria.....	23
2. Catchment	23
3. Eaves Gutter.....	24
3.1 Size.....	24
3.2 Slope	25
3.3 Leaf Guards and Overflows.....	25
3.4 Proportion.....	25
4. Internal Box Gutters	25
4.1 Size of Gutter	25
4.2 Size of Downpipe.....	28
4.3 Overflow	29
4.4 Rain Heads	29
4.5 Sumps	29
5. Downpipes.....	30
5.1 Location.....	30
5.2 Swirl	30
5.3 Gratings	30
6. Incompatible Materials	30
7. Expansion Joints for Gutters.....	30
9 Stormwater	30
9.1 Downpipe discharges into a storm water gully.....	30
9.2 Pipe sizes.....	31

1. Design Criteria

The design of a roof-drainage system is based on the following factors:

- Rainfall intensity and risk of flooding
- Catchment area of roof
- Gutter efficiency
- Spacing of downpipes.

Rainfall Intensity

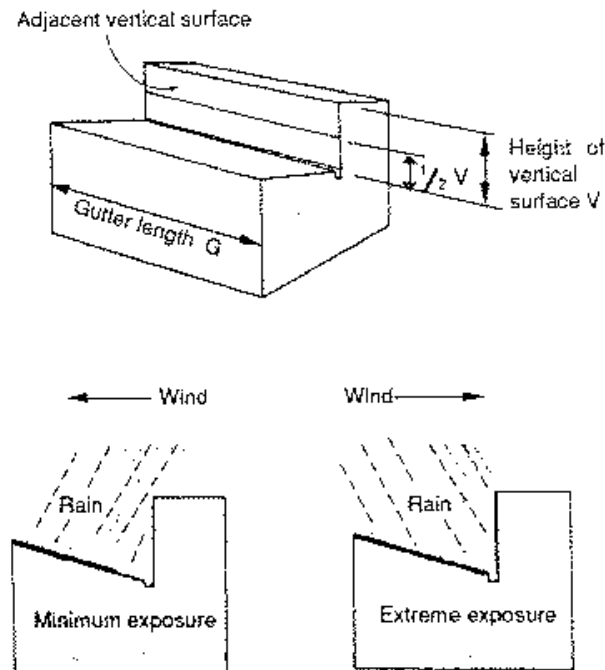
In rainstorms long periods of steady rainfall are interspersed with peak intensities for short periods. The roof-drainage system must be capable of handling the peak intensities without flooding or overflow.

The 5-year return intensity is used in the design of temporary structures of short life. The design of eaves gutters of permanent buildings must be based on the 20-year return intensity and of internal box gutters and valley gutters on the 100-year return intensity. The values of these intensities for representative areas in the country may be ascertained from the Meteorological Department. A freeboard of 25 mm for eaves gutters and of 35 mm for internal box gutters and valley gutters are *required* to provide against overflow into buildings.

2. Catchment

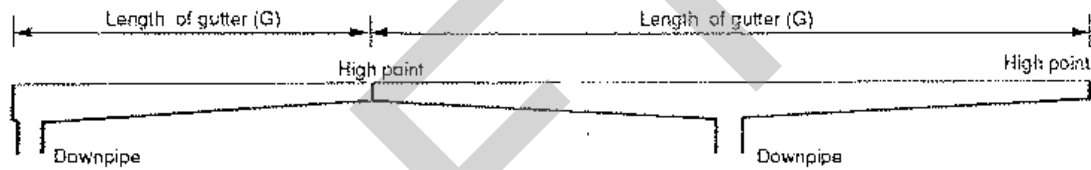
A roof drainage system is best analysed by dividing it into lengths of gutter each sloping down from a high point to an outlet with a downpipe. A long length of roof usually *drains* into several lengths of gutter separated by expansion joints that are also high points. The catchment area for a length of gutter is determined by multiplying the rafter length by the length of gutter (G) and adding a proportion of any vertical surface against which rain can be driven. A reasonable procedure is to add half the area of a very exposed vertical surface and smaller proportions for less extreme conditions (see Figure 2.1).

Figure 2.1 - Effect of Vertical Surface on Catchment



The length G of a gutter is measured as the distance from a high point in the gutter to the downpipe when the downpipe is at the end of the gutter and between high points when the downpipe is not at the end (see Figure 2.2).

Figure 2.2 - Measuring Gutter Length



3. Eaves Gutter

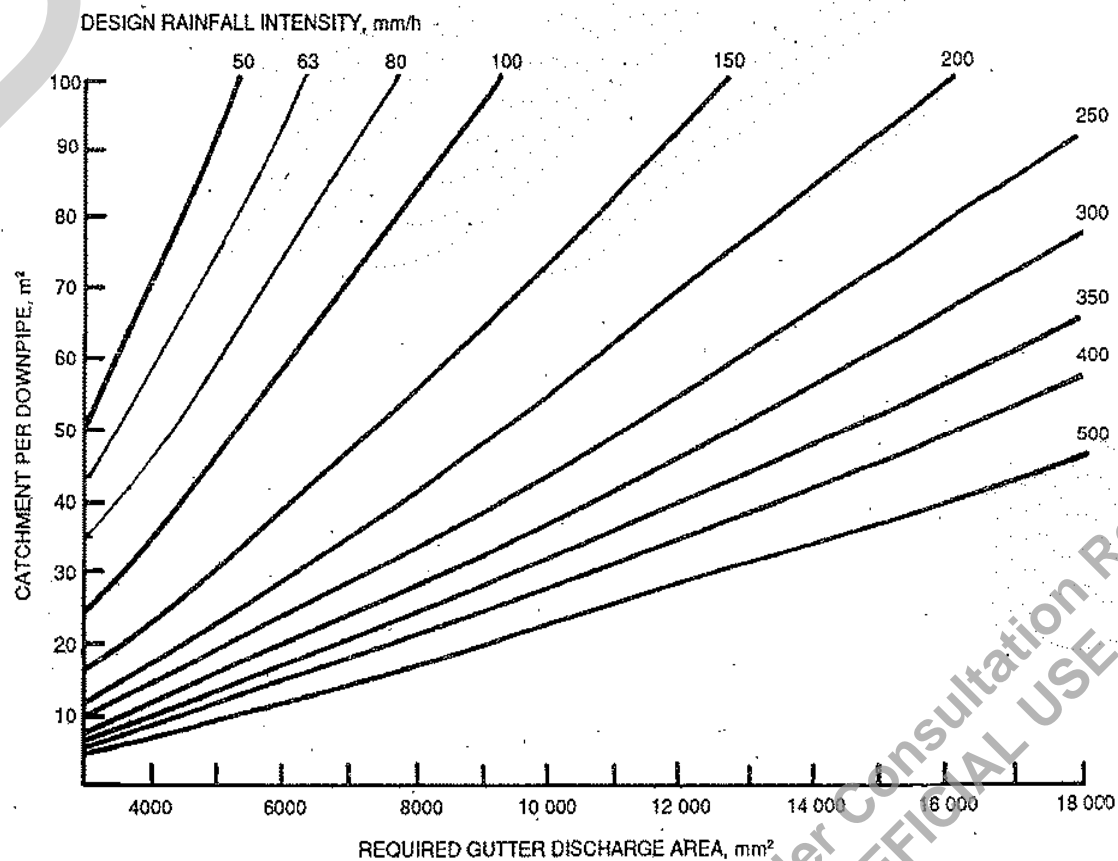
The procedure for the design of eaves gutters is as follows:

3.1 Size

Space the downpipes suitably and calculate the catchment area per downpipe. For eaves gutters of permanent buildings determine the gutter discharge area by matching - the catchment area against the 80 mm/hr intensity line in Figure 3.1. If the gutter discharge area obtained is more - than what is available from a standard gutter after allowing - for a 25 mm freeboard, either reduce the spacing of the downpipes and recalculate or proceed to specify a specially fabricated gutter. With rectangular fabricated gutters an additional allowance of 10 percent of area must be made in addition to the freeboard allowance.

The nett cross-sectional area of each vertical downpipe, including the nozzle must be not less than 50 per cent of the gutter discharge area.

Figure 3.1 - Eaves Gutter Sizing



3.2 Slope

The fall of an eaves gutter must never be less than 1 in 500 but in areas where dust or debris is likely to build up between rain periods the slope must be as steep as 1 in 50.

3.3 Leaf Guards and Overflows

Leaf guards must be fitted to prevent the nozzle to the downpipe from becoming blocked wherever leaves or other debris are likely to collect in the gutter. If the eaves gutter has a fascia front higher than the rear lip, an overflow must be fitted at a level below that of the lowest point in the rear lip.

3.4 Proportion

The nett cross-sectional area of each vertical downpipe, including the nozzle must be not less than 50 per cent of the gutter discharge area.

The proportions of a rectangular eaves gutter are ideal when its width is twice the maximum depth of water flowing in it. Although a narrow deep gutter will provide a greater head of water over the outlet with a consequent improvement in the discharge capacity of the outlet, a shallower gutter is usually easier to maintain.

4. Internal Box Gutters

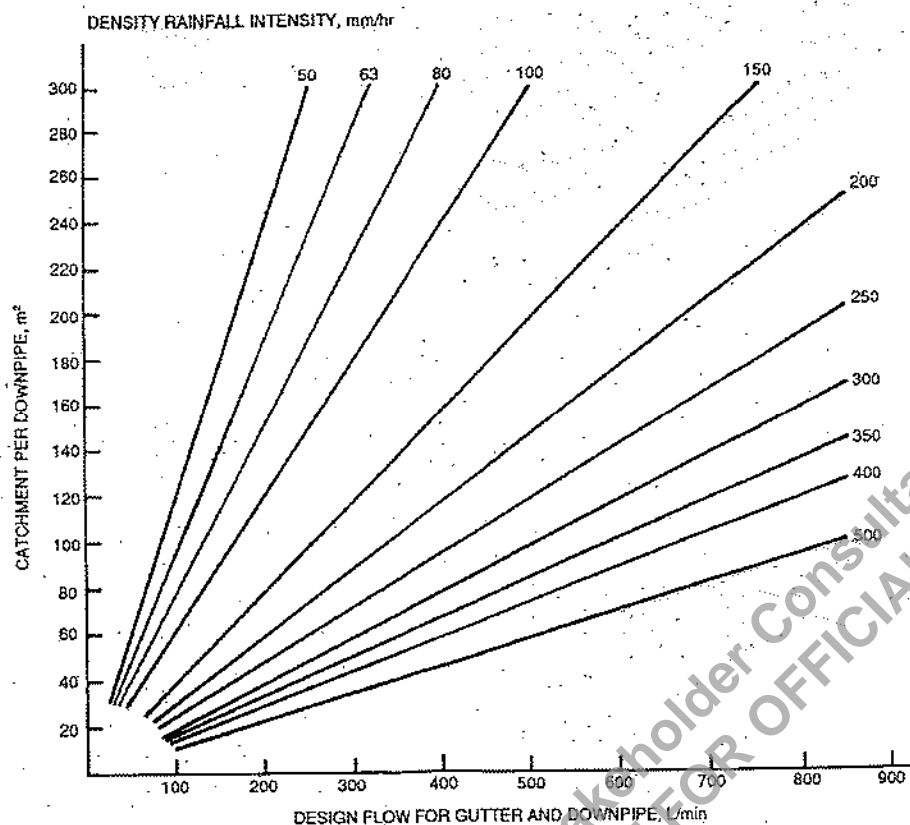
The procedure for the design of box gutters is as follows:

Ideally, box gutters must be straight, at least 300 mm wide, capable of supporting a workman, fixed at a slope of not less than 1 in 200, and provided with an overflow and adequate downpipe outlets not more than 18 m apart. The gutters must have sufficient slope to clear dust and debris and they might need leaf guards.

4.1 Size of Gutter

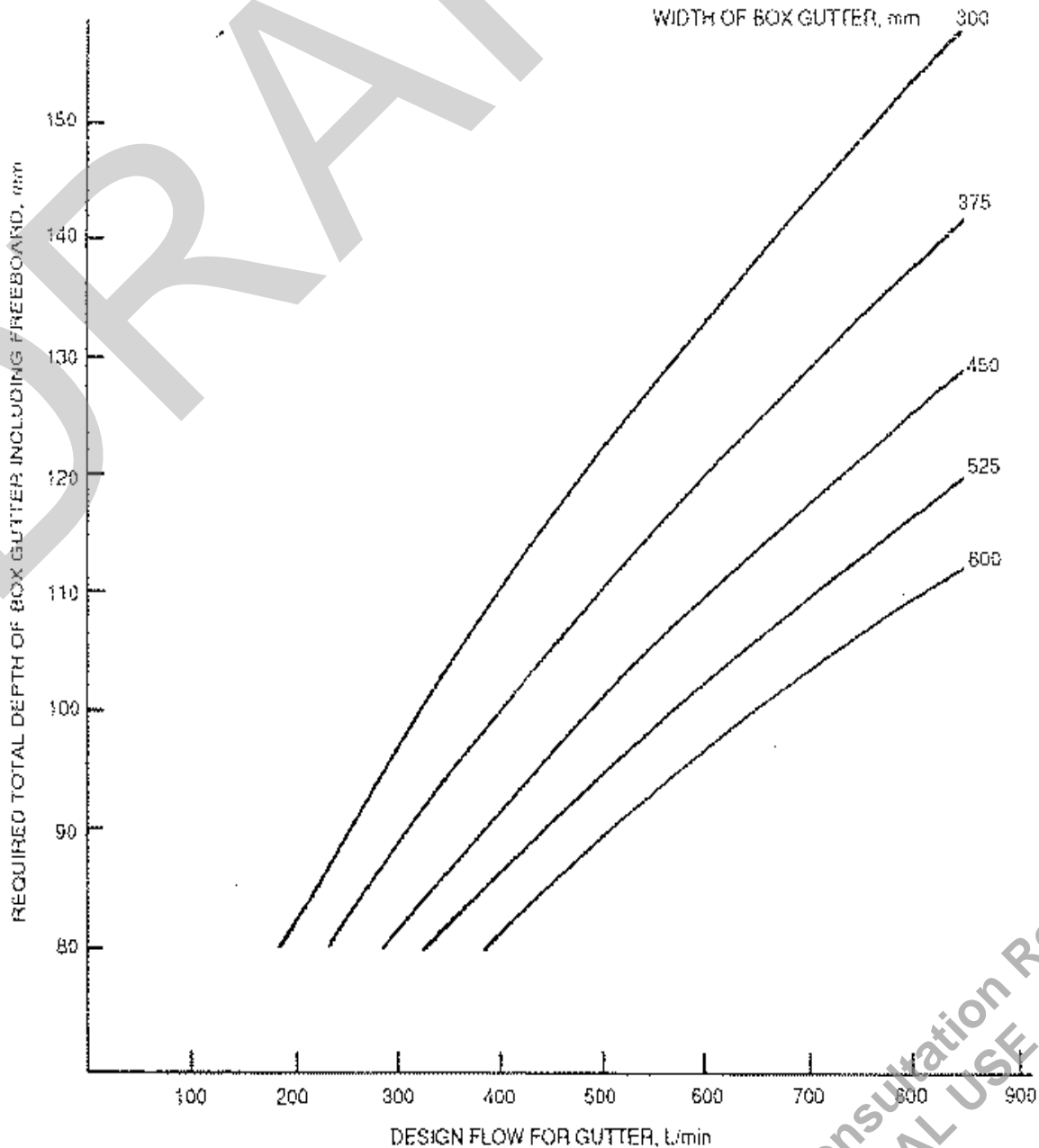
Space the downpipes suitably and calculate the catchment area per downpipe. From Figure 4.1.1 using the calculated catchment area and 100 mm/hr rain intensity, determine the design flow for the gutter and the downpipe. Select a width of not less than 300 mm for the box gutter.

Figure 4.1.1 - Internal Box Gutter Design Flow



The required depth can then be read from Figure 4.1.2 by using the selected width and the design flow. The depth allows for a freeboard of 35 mm which will be necessary during cyclonic winds along with normal turbulence and ripples. The depth thus determined assumes that the gutter is laid to zero slope. To adjust for the slope, use the depth determined from Figure 4.1.2 in Figure 4.1.3 and read off the depth adjusted for slope against the appropriate slope line. The minimum depth must be 80 mm.

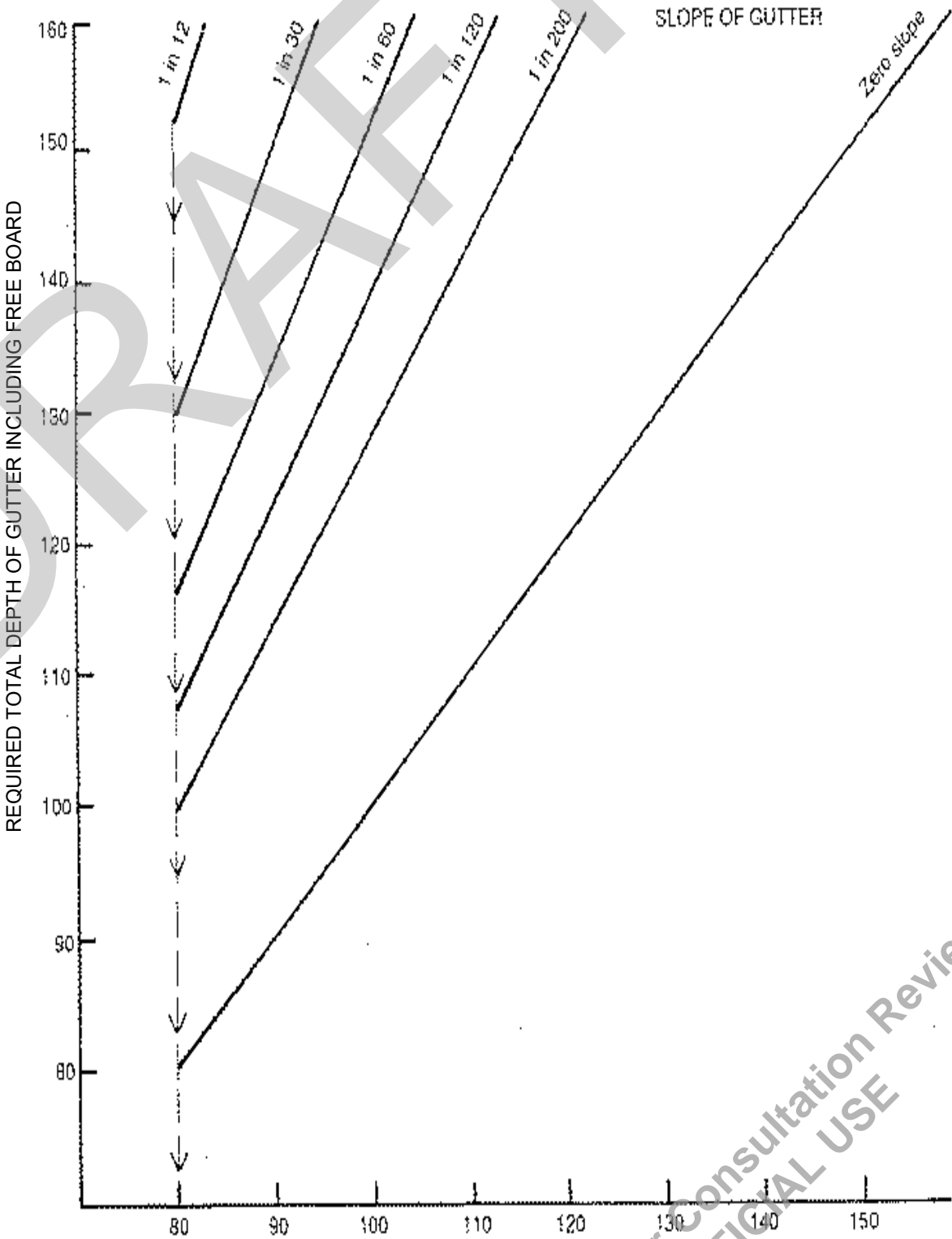
Figure 4.1.2 - Required Depth of Box Gutter for Design Flow



Notes:

- 1 Graph assumes zero slope. To take advantage of slope, see Fig. 4.1.3.
- 2 Graph assumes 35 mm freeboard.

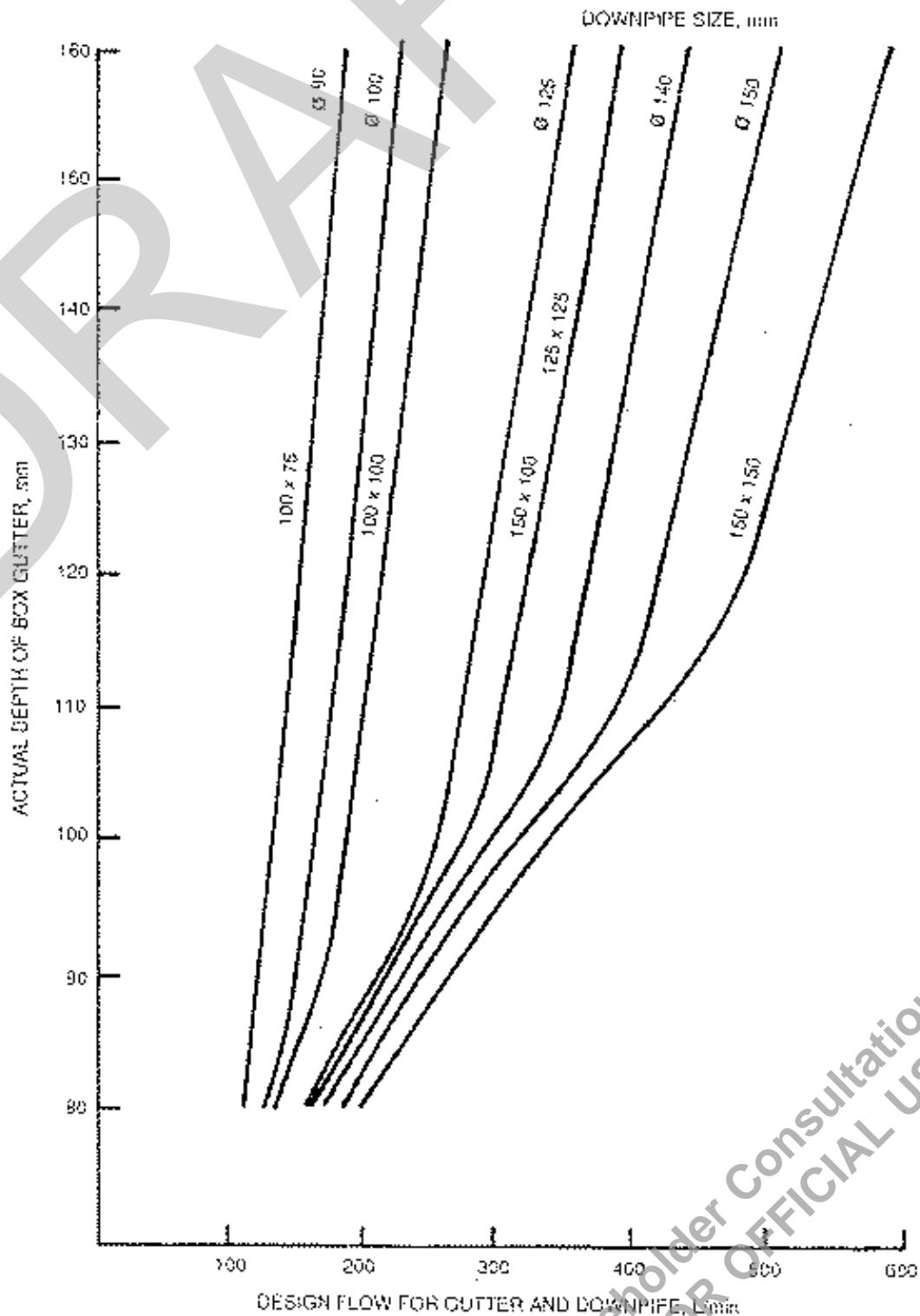
Figure 4.1.3 - Box Gutter Depth: Adjusted for Slope



4.2 Size of Downpipe

The size of the downpipe can be determined from figure 4.2 by reading against the design flow and the actual depth of the gutter determined from using figure 4.1.3. The downpipes can be round or rectangular.

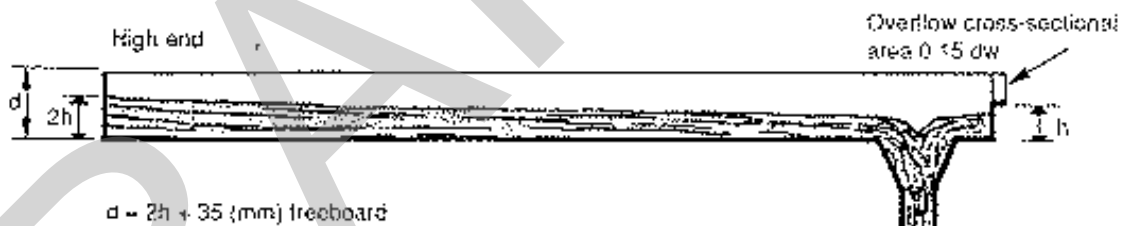
Figure 4.2 - Required Size of Downpipe for Box Gutter (Rain head and Sump Not Considered)



4.3 Overflow

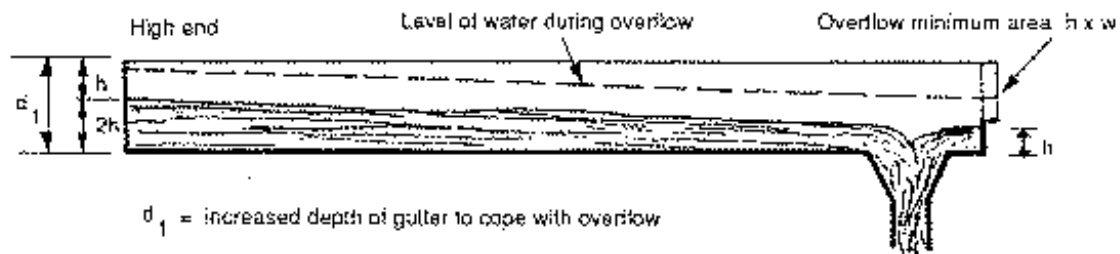
A box gutter discharging directly into a downpipe must have an overflow outlet to allow for blockage and to provide for rainfall intensities greater than those used for design. To cope only with peaks in rainfall it is sufficient for the overflow outlet to have a cross-sectional area equal to 15 percent of the total cross-sectional area of the gutter that is an overflow area of $0.15 \text{ depth} \times \text{width}$ (see Figure 4.3.1).

Figure 4.3.1 - Overflow Outlet



But if the overflow is intended to cope with the effect of a total blockage of the downpipe during a peak period then the cross-sectional area of the overflow outlet must equal the cross-sectional area of the water flow at the outlet of the gutter ($h \times w$ for minimum fall). The overflow should be slightly above level h and if it is the same width as the gutter, the depth of the gutter will have to be further increased by an amount equal to h in order to accommodate the flow of water in a crisis (see Figure 4.3.2). The slope factor must not be taken into account when determining the new depth for the gutter and the amount of freeboard added to the increased gutter depth will depend on the risk the designer wishes to take regarding the possibilities of failure of the roof-drainage system during a peak period. Other methods of preventing overflow due to blocked downpipes are the provision of rain heads and sumps.

Figure 4.3.2 - Overflow with Blocked Downpipe



4.4 Rain Heads

The rain head is a device used to increase the capacity of a downpipe at the end of a box gutter and to allow for overflow in case of a blocked downpipe. The discharge capacity of an outlet increases with the depth of water (head) over the outlet. The rain head is located at the far end of a box gutter and consists of a sump and overflow arrangements. The sump increases the flow through the downpipe by providing an additional head of water. The overflow provides safety against water spilling into the building if the downpipe is blocked. The detailed design of rain heads is given in AS/NZS 3500.3.

4.5 Sumps

Where a sump is fitted to the sole of a gutter it provides a local reservoir and the additional head increases the flow through the downpipe. The detailed design of sumps is given in AS 3500.3.

5. Downpipes

5.1 Location

Downpipes must be located externally, but where it is necessary to locate a downpipe internally the pipe must be accessible so that any blockage can be cleared. Access for cleaning must be provided at the base of all downpipes that are connected directly to a storm water *drain*. Downpipes are most efficient when located at the centre of a length of gutter.

5.2 Swirl

The performance of an outlet with the head of water more than 113 of its diameter will be reduced if swirl occurs at the outlet. This would generally happen only where rain heads or sumps are included in the system. Swirl can be eliminated if the centreline of the downpipe is kept no more than a distance equal to its diameter or the average of its cross-sectional dimensions, away from the nearest vertical side of the rain head or the sump.

5.3 Gratings

Where a grating or strainer is fitted to a rain-water outlet the total area of the perforations in the grating must be at least 1.5 times the cross-sectional area of the outlet. Strainer gratings must project above the calculated level of flow at the outlet and must be cleared of accumulated debris regularly.

6. Incompatible Materials

Dissimilar metals must be separated by a non-conducting gasket or similar device to prevent electro-chemical corrosion. Water draining from copper components must not discharge onto non-copper components for the same reason. However, water can be safely drained from non-copper onto copper components. (The prevention of electro-chemical corrosion between metals will not necessarily prevent atmospheric corrosion of the individual metals).

7. Expansion Joints for Gutters

Metal gutters must be provided with expansion joints to prevent distortion and resulting damage and reduced flow. The maximum length between expansion joints is given in Table 7.

Table 8 Maximum distance between gutter expansion joints

Material	Estimated exposed temperature range (°C)	Distance between 20 mm expansion joints (m)
Aluminium	45	18
Copper	55	21
Stainless Steel	40	30
Steel	50	33
Zinc	50	15

9 Stormwater

9.1 Downpipe discharges into a storm water gully

Where a downpipe discharges into a storm water gully it must terminate below the gully grating, and where the connection is made directly to a stormwater pipe underground the internal diameter of the underground pipe must be greater than that of the downpipe. Underground stormwater pipes draining roof and paved catchments must be laid in straight lines at uniform gradients between sumps or collection pits. Large paved areas and roadways must slope towards drainage points with a minimum cross-fall of 1 in 60 for bitumen or concrete surfaces and 1 in 120 for concrete kerb channels.

9.2 Pipe sizes

Table 9.2 indicates the maximum total catchment area of roof and paving that can be drained by underground pipes laid at different gradients, of various diameters and running half full. Areas shown above the heavy line will have a flow velocity insufficient to flush out debris.

The Table is for a rainfall intensity of 115 mm/h. For other rainfall intensities the horizontal area to be drained must be proportionally adjusted by multiplying the area by 115 and dividing by the *required* rainfall intensity. The proportionally adjusted area can be used in the Table to determine the pipe size.

Table 9.2 Stormwater drain sizes to take flow from downpipes and pavements

Diameter of Pipe (mm)	Maximum horizontal projected areas (m ²) that can be drained at various gradients when the rainfall intensity is 115 mm/h			
	1 in 50	1 in 100	1 in 150	1 in 200
100	220	150	130	110
150	6000	430	350	260
200	1300	950	780	650
250	2350	1650	1300	1130
300	3700	2600	2170	1910
375	6700	4700	3820	3130
450	8800	6950	5650	4600

Section

NG



ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

THIS SECTION APPLIES TO PUBLIC
BUILDINGS AND GROUP DWELLINGS
(CLASS 2 to CLASS 9)

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE

Contents

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS	1
OBJECTIVES & REQUIRED PERFORMANCE	1
NGP1 Minor structures and components	1
NGP1.1 Swimming Pools	1
NGP1.2 Refrigerated Chambers, Strong Rooms and Vaults	1
NGP1.3 Safety at Elevated Places	1
NGP1.4 Use of the Air Space Over Public Places	1
NGP1.5 Aesthetics	1
NGP2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues	1
NGP3 Atrium Construction	1
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS	2
NG1 Minor Structures and Components	2
NG1.1 Swimming Pools	2
NG1.2 Refrigerated Chambers, Strong Rooms and Vaults	2
NG1.3 Parapets on Flat Roofs	2
NG1.4 Projections over Public Places	2
NG1.5 Moveable Awnings or sunshades over public places	2
NG1.6 Fences	3
NG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues	3
NG2.1 General Requirements	3
NG2.2 Open Fireplaces	3
NG2.3 Incinerator Rooms	4
NG3 Atrium Construction	4
NG3.1 Design	4

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

OBJECTIVES & REQUIRED PERFORMANCE

This Section contains more specific requirements for particular parts of buildings or structures.

Parts of buildings and structures must be so designed and constructed that the following objectives, in addition to those listed for Sections B, NC, ND, NE and NF where relevant, are fulfilled:

NGP1 Minor structures and components

NGP1.1 Swimming Pools

- a) Suitable means for the disposal of waste and drainage must be provided to a *swimming pool*.
- b) Access by unsupervised young children to *swimming pools* must be restricted.

NGP1.2 Refrigerated Chambers, Strong Rooms and Vaults

Refrigerated or cooling chambers, strong rooms and vaults, or the like, which are capable of entry by a person must have adequate safety measures to facilitate escape and for alerting persons outside the chamber or vault in the event of an emergency.

NGP1.3 Safety at Elevated Places

Elevated places with regular access such as some flat roofs must have adequate protection to prevent anyone from falling.

NGP1.4 Use of the Air Space Over Public Places

Any use of the air space over public places such as footpaths and roads must be limited to ensure that normal public use of such places is not obstructed.

NGP1.5 Aesthetics

Any minor structure such as fencing, awnings and such like must be suited to the general surroundings and the occupancy of the buildings and the neighbourhood.

NGP2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

Fireplaces, chimneys and flues must be adequately constructed or separated to prevent:

- a) ignition of nearby parts of the building; or
- b) escape or discharge of smoke to the inside of the building or to adjacent *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like.

NGP3 Atrium Construction

The construction of an *atrium* must not unduly increase the danger to occupants from fire or smoke.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NG1 Minor Structures and Components

NG1.1 Swimming Pools

- a) Drainage: A *swimming pool* must have suitable means of drainage.
- b) Safety fencing: A *swimming pool* with a depth of water more than 300 mm must have suitable barriers or safety fencing in accordance with AS 1926.1 and AS1926.2 to restrict access by young children to the immediate pool surrounds if the *swimming pool* is associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or is a public pool.
- c) Water recirculation systems: A *swimming pool* must have suitable means of water reticulation in accordance with AS 1926.3.

NG1.2 Refrigerated Chambers, Strong Rooms and Vaults

- a) A refrigerated or cooling chamber which is of sufficient size for a person to enter must -
- have a door which is in an opening with a clear width of not less than 600 mm and a clear height of not less than 1.5 m; and
 - at all times, be able to be opened from inside without a key.
- b) A strong room or a vault in a building must have -
- internal lighting controllable only from within the room; and
 - a pilot light located outside the room but controllable only by the switch for the internal lighting.
- c) A refrigerated or cooling chamber, strong room or vault must have a suitable alarm device located outside but controllable only from within the chamber, room or vault.

NG1.3 Parapets on Flat Roofs

Where a flat roof or other elevated place has regular access a parapet or balustrade of not less than 1 m height above the surface of the roof or elevated place must be provided. The width of any opening in the parapet or balustrade must not exceed 100 mm.

NG1.4 Projections over Public Places

Buildings must not project beyond the allotment boundary. Architectural features such as eaves cornices clocks lamps ventilating equipment trade signs hoardings flag poles bay or oriel *windows* and such like as well as a platform or balcony to provide additional means of egress from an existing building, may however project over public footpaths or roads with the following minimum clearances:

- a) 3300 mm above existing or intended finished level of footpaths; and
- b) the outer extremity of the feature must be set back 300 mm from the existing or intended kerb.

Any drainage from such architectural features (including drainage from air-conditioning and other ventilating equipment) must be suitably taken down to a *drain* with downpipes which must also satisfy the *required* clearances.

NG1.5 Moveable Awnings or sunshades over public places

Any moveable awnings or sunshades must be firmly fixed so that they do not create any danger obstruction or inconvenience to pedestrians. They must provide the following minimum clearances if they project over public places:

- 2300 mm above the finished levels of the footpath; and
- their outer extremity must be set back 300 mm from the kerb.

NG1.6 Fences

Any fencing or free-standing wall must be suited to the occupancy of the building within. It must not detract from the general aesthetic appearance of the surroundings. If any barbed wire or other such is used it must be at a height of not less than 2 m above the finished level of any existing or intended adjacent footpath.

NG2 Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues

NG2.1 General Requirements

A chimney or flue must be constructed:

- a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance to which it is connected
- b) so that the temperature of the exposed faces will not exceed a level that would cause damage to nearby parts of the building
- c) so that hot products of combustion will not -
 - escape through the walls of the chimney or flue; or
 - discharge in a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby *combustible* materials or allow smoke to penetrate through nearby *windows*, ventilation inlets, or the like
- d) in such a manner as to prevent rainwater penetrating to any part of the interior of the building
- e) such that its termination is not less than -
 - 600 mm above any point of penetration of or contact with the roof; and
 - 900 mm above any opening or openable part in any building, within 3 m horizontal distance of the chimney or flue; and
- f) so that it is accessible for cleaning.

NG2.2 Open Fireplaces

An open fireplace, or solid-fuel burning appliance in which the fuel-burning compartment is not enclosed, satisfies NG2.1 if it has:

- a) a hearth constructed of stone, concrete, masonry or similar *non-combustible* material so that -
 - it extends not less than 300 mm beyond the front of the fireplace opening and not less than 150 mm beyond each side of that opening
 - it extends beyond the limits of the fireplace or appliance not less than 300 mm if the fireplace or appliance is free-standing from any wall of the room
 - its upper surface does not slope away from the grate or appliance; and
 - *combustible* material situated below the hearth (but not below that part *required* to extend beyond the fireplace opening or the limits of the fireplace) is not less than 155 mm from the upper surface of the hearth;
- b) walls forming the sides and back of the fireplace up to not less than 300 mm above the underside of the arch or lintel which -
 - are constructed in 2 separate leaves of solid masonry not less than 180 mm thick, excluding any cavity; and
 - do not consist of concrete block masonry in the construction of the inner leaf
- c) walls of the chimney above the level referred to in (b) -
 - constructed of masonry units with a net volume, excluding cored and similar holes, not less than 75% of their gross volume, measured on the overall rectangular shape of the units, and with an actual thickness of not less than 90 mm; and
 - lined internally to a thickness of not less than 12 mm with rendering consisting of 1 part cement, 3 parts lime, and 10 parts sand by volume, or other suitable material; and
- d) suitable damp-proof courses or flashings to maintain weatherproofing.

NG2.3 Incinerator Rooms

a) If an incinerator is installed in a building any hopper giving access to a charging chute must be -

- non-combustible
- gastight when closed
- designed to automatically return to the closed position after use
- not attached to a chute that connects directly to a flue unless the hopper is located in the open air; and
- not located in a *required exit*.

If an incinerator is in a separate room, that room must be separated from other parts of the building by construction with a FAL of not less than 60/60/60.

NG3 Atrium Construction

NG3.1 Design

The design of an *atrium* along with the attendant life safety provisions such as fire prevention, firefighting, smoke exhaust systems, etc. must fulfil up-to-date and relevant fire engineering principles and practices.

END OF VANUATU NATIONAL BUILDING CODE

DRAFT

Stakeholder Consultation Review Copy
NOT FOR OFFICIAL USE